Alcatel-Lucent 7950

EXTENSIBLE ROUTING SYSTEM | RELEASE 13.0.R4

SYSTEM MANAGEMENT GUIDE

Alcatel-Lucent – Proprietary & Confidential
Contains proprietary/trade secret information which is the property of Alcatel-Lucent. Not to be made available to, or copied or used by anyone who is not an employee of Alcatel-Lucent except when there is a valid non-disclosure agreement in place which covers such information and contains appropriate non-disclosure and limited use obligations.
Copyright 2015 © Alcatel-Lucent. All rights reserved.

Alcatel·Lucent

All specifications, procedures, and information in this document are subject to change and revision at any time without notice. The information contained herein is believed to be accurate as of the date of publication. Alcatel-Lucent provides no warranty, express or implied, regarding its contents. Users are fully responsible for application or use of the documentation.

Alcatel, Lucent, Alcatel-Lucent and the Alcatel-Lucent logo are trademarks of Alcatel-Lucent. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

Copyright 2015 Alcatel-Lucent.

All rights reserved.

Disclaimers

Alcatel-Lucent products are intended for commercial uses. Without the appropriate network design engineering, they must not be sold, licensed or otherwise distributed for use in any hazardous environments requiring fail-safe performance, such as in the operation of nuclear facilities, aircraft navigation or communication systems, air traffic control, direct life-support machines, or weapons systems, in which the failure of products could lead directly to death, personal injury, or severe physical or environmental damage. The customer hereby agrees that the use, sale, license or other distribution of the products for any such application without the prior written consent of Alcatel-Lucent, shall be at the customer's sole risk. The customer hereby agrees to defend and hold Alcatel-Lucent harmless from any claims for loss, cost, damage, expense or liability that may arise out of or in connection with the use, sale, license or other distribution of the products in such applications.

This document may contain information regarding the use and installation of non-Alcatel-Lucent products. Please note that this information is provided as a courtesy to assist you. While Alcatel-Lucent tries to ensure that this information accurately reflects information provided by the supplier, please refer to the materials provided with any non-Alcatel-Lucent product and contact the supplier for confirmation. Alcatel-Lucent assumes no responsibility or liability for incorrect or incomplete information provided about non-Alcatel-Lucent products.

However, this does not constitute a representation or warranty. The warranties provided for Alcatel-Lucent products, if any, are set forth in contractual documentation entered into by Alcatel-Lucent and its customers.

This document was originally written in English. If there is any conflict or inconsistency between the English version and any other version of a document, the English version shall prevail.

Table of Contents

Preface 13
About This Guide 13
Audience 13
List of Technical Publications 14
Searching for Information 15
To search for specific information in this guide 15
To search for specific information in multiple documents 15
Technical Support 17

Getting Started
In This Chapter 19
Alcatel-Lucent 7950 XRS Router Configuration Process 19

Security
In This Chapter 21
Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting 22
Authentication 23
Local Authentication 24
RADIUS Authentication 24
TACACS+ Authentication 29
Authorization 30
Local Authorization 30
RADIUS Authorization 30
TACACS+ Authorization 31
Accounting 34
RADIUS Accounting 34
TACACS+ Accounting 34
Security Controls 36
When a Server Does Not Respond 36
Access Request Flow 37
CPU Protection 38
CPU Protection Extensions ETH-CFM 41
ETH-CFM Ingress Squelching 43
Distributed CPU Protection (DCP) 46
Applicability of Distributed CPU Protection 48
Log Events, Statistics, Status and SNMP support 49
DCP Policer Resource Management 50
Operational Guidelines and Tips 51
Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) 52
Other Security Features 53
Secure Shell (SSH) 53
SSH PKI Authentication 54
Key Generation 55
Per Peer CPM Queuing 55
CPM Filters and Traffic Management 56

Exponential Login Backoff 57
User Lockout 58
Encryption 59
802.1x Network Access Control 59
TCP Enhanced Authentication Option 59
Packet Formats 60
Keychain 62
Configuration Notes 64
General 64
Configuring Security with CLI 65
Setting Up Security Attributes 66
Configuring Authentication 66
Configuring Authorization 67
Configuring Accounting 69
Security Configurations 70
Configuration Tasks 71
Security Configuration Procedures 72
Configuring Management Access Filters 72
Configuring CPM Filters Policy 74
IPSec Certificates Parameters 75
Configuring Profiles 77
Parameters 77
Wildcards 79
CLI Session Resource Management 79
Configuring Users 83
Configuring Keychains 84
Copying and Overwriting Users and Profiles 85
User 85
Profile 87
RADIUS Configurations 89
Configuring RADIUS Authentication 89
Configuring RADIUS Authorization 90
Configuring RADIUS Accounting 91
Configuring 802.1x RADIUS Policies 92
Configuring CPU Protection Policies 93
TACACS+ Configurations 94
Enabling TACACS+ Authentication 94
Configuring TACACS+ Authorization 95
Configuring TACACS+ Accounting 96
Enabling SSH 97
Configuring Login Controls 98
Security Command Reference 99
Command Hierarchies 99
Configuration Commands 99
Security Commands 100
Login Control Commands 114
Show Commands 115
Login Control 116
Clear Commands 116

Debug Commands 116
Tools Commands 116
Configuration Commands 117
Show Commands 231
Clear Commands 275

SNMP
In This Chapter 283
SNMP Overview 284
SNMP Architecture 284
Management Information Base 284
SNMP Protocol Operations 285
SNMP Versions 285
Management Information Access Control 286
User-Based Security Model Community Strings 287
Views 287
Access Groups 287
Users 289
Per-VPRN Logs and SNMP Access 289
Per-SNMP Community Source IP Address Validation 289
Which SNMP Version to Use? 290
Configuration Notes 292
General 292
Configuring SNMP with CLI 293
SNMP Configuration Overview 294
Configuring SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c 294
Configuring SNMPv3 294
Basic SNMP Security Configuration 295
Configuring SNMP Components 296
Configuring a Community String 297
Configuring View Options 297
Configuring Access Options 298
Configuring USM Community Options 299
Configuring Other SNMP Parameters 300
SNMP Command Reference 301
Command Hierarchies 301
Configuration Commands 301
Configuration Commands 303
Show Commands 313

NETCONF
In This Chapter 335
NETCONF Overview 336
NETCONF Introduction 336
NETCONF in SR OS 337
YANG Data Models 338
Transport and Sessions 338
NETCONF Operations 339
Datastores and URLs 342
General NETCONF behavior 343

Establishing a NETCONF Session 353
XML Content Layer 354
<edit-config> with XML Content Layer 355
<get-config> with XML Content Layer 357
XML Content Layer Examples 361
CLI Content Layer 364
CLI Content Layer Examples 365
NETCONF Command Reference 371
Command Hierarchies 371
Configuration Commands 371
Configuration Commands 373
Show Commands 375

Event and Accounting Logs
In This Chapter 379
Logging Overview 380
Log Destinations 382
Console 382
Session 382
Memory Logs 382
Log Files 383
SNMP Trap Group 385
Syslog 385
Event Logs 387
Event Sources 388
Event Control 389
Log Manager and Event Logs 390
Event Filter Policies 391
Event Log Entries 392
Simple Logger Event Throttling 394
Default System Log 395
Event Handling System 395
Accounting Logs 397
Accounting Records 397
Accounting Files 400
Design Considerations 400
Overhead Reduction in Accounting: Custom Record 401
User Configurable Records 401
Changed Statistics Only 401
Configurable Accounting Records 402
Significant Change Only Reporting 402
Immediate Completion of Records 403
AA Accounting per Forwarding Class 403
Configuration Notes 404
Configuring Logging with CLI 405
Log Configuration Overview 406
Log Types 406
Basic Event Log Configuration 407
Common Configuration Tasks 408
Configuring an Event Log 408

Configuring a File ID 410
Configuring an Accounting Policy 411
Configuring Event Control 412
Configuring Throttle Rate 413
Configuring a Log Filter 414
Configuring an SNMP Trap Group 415
Setting the Replay Parameter 416
Shutdown In-Band Port 418
No Shutdown Port 420
Configuring a Syslog Target 422
Configuring an Accounting Custom Record 423
Log Management Tasks 425
Modifying a Log File 426
Deleting a Log File 428
Modifying a File ID 429
Deleting a File ID 430
Modifying a Syslog ID 431
Deleting a Syslog 431
Modifying an SNMP Trap Group 432
Deleting an SNMP Trap Group 433
Modifying a Log Filter 433
Deleting a Log Filter 435
Modifying Event Control Parameters 435
Returning to the Default Event Control Configuration 436
Log Command Reference 439
Command Hierarchies 439
Configuration Commands 449
Show Commands 505
Clear Commands 528

sFlow

In This Chapter 529
sFlow Overview 530
sFlow Features 531
sFlow Counter Polling Architecture 531
sFlow Support on Logical Ethernet Ports 532
sFlow SAP Counter Map 532
sFlow Record Formats 533
sFlow Command Reference 537
Command Hierarchies 537
System Commands 537
Show Commands 537
Configuration Commands 539
Show Commands 543

Facility Alarms

In This Chapter 545
Facility Alarms Overview 546
Facility Alarms vs. Log Events 547
Facility Alarm Severities and Alarm LED Behavior 549

Facility Alarm Hierarchy 550
Facility Alarm List 551

Standards and Protocol Support 559

List of Tables

Table 1: List of Technical Publications 14

Getting Started
Table 2: Configuration Process 19

Security
Table 3: Supported Authorization Configurations 31
Table 4: Security Methods Capabilities 36
Table 5: Ranges versus Levels and OpCodes 41
Table 6: CPU PRotection and Squelching 44
Table 7: Keychain Mapping 62
Table 8: Security Algorithm Support Per Protocol 63
Table 9: Security Configuration Requirements 71
Table 10: Opcode Values 140
Table 11: IP Protocol Names 197
Table 12: Show System Security Access Group Output Fields 231
Table 13: Show System Security Authentication Output Fields 232
Table 14: Show Communities Output Fields 235
Table 15: Show CPM IP Filter Output Fields 236
Table 16: Show CPM IPv6 Filter Output Fields 238
Table 17: Show CPM IPv6 Filter Output Fields 240
Table 18: Show Distributed CPU Protection Output Fields 247
Table 19: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields 248
Table 20: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields 252
Table 21: Show Management Access Filter Output Fields 258
Table 22: Show Password Options Output Fields 260
Table 23: Show Per-Peer-Queuing Output Fields 262
Table 24: Show User Profile Output Fields 263
Table 25: Show Source Address Output Fields 264
Table 26: Pass/Fail Login Attempts 269
Table 27: Show View Output Fields 271
Table 28: Show Users Output Fields 274
Table 29: Output Parameters 281

SNMP
Table 30: Counters Output Fields 313
Table 31: Counters Output Fields 314
Table 32: Show System Information Output Fields 315
Table 33: Show System Security Access-Group Output Fields 320
Table 34: Show Community Output Fields 327
Table 35: Show Source Access List Output Fields 328
Table 36: Show SSH Output Fields 329
Table 37: Show User Output Fields 330
Table 38: Show System Security View Output Fields 332

NETCONF

Event and Accounting Logs

Table 39: Event Severity Levels 380
Table 40: Router to Syslog Severity Level Mappings 386
Table 41: Valid Filter Policy Operators 391
Table 42: Log Entry Field Descriptions 392
Table 43: Policer Stats Field Descriptions 397
Table 44: Queue Group Record Types 399
Table 45: Queue Group Record Type Fields 399
Table 46: Show Accounting Policy Output Fields 505
Table 47: Accounting Policy Output Fields 507
Table 48: Event Log Filter Summary Output Fields 516
Table 49: Event Log Filter Detail Output Fields 517
Table 50: Log Filter Match Criteria Output Fields 517
Table 51: Show Log-Collector Output Fields 519
Table 52: SNMP Trap Group Output Fields 524
Table 53: Show Log Syslog Output Fields 525

sFlow

Table 54: sFlow Record Fields 533

Facility Alarms

Table 55: Alarm, Alarm Name/Raising Event, Sample Details String and Clearing Event 551
Table 56: Alarm Name/Raising Event, Cause, Effect and Recovery 553
Table 57: linkDown Facility Alarm Support 557

List of Figures

Security

Figure 1: RADIUS Requests and Responses 22
Figure 2: Security Flow 37
Figure 3: Profile Marking 39
Figure 4: ETH-CFM Hierarchical Model 43
Figure 5: Per SAP per Protocol Static Rate Limiting with DCP 47
Figure 6: Per Network Interface per Protocol Static Rate Limiting with DCP 47
Figure 7: cli-session-group for a customer classes 80
Figure 8: Heirarchy of cli-session-group profiles 81

SNMP

Figure 9: SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Configuration and Implementation Flow 291

NETCONF

Figure 10: NETCONF RPC Request 336
Figure 11: NETCONF Layers (RFC 6241) 337

Event and Accounting Logs

Figure 12: Event Logging Block Diagram 387
Figure 13: EHS Object Relationships 396

sFlow

Facility Alarms

Figure 14: Log Events, Alarms and LEDs 547

List of Figures

Preface

About This Guide

This guide describes general information you will need to configure router security, SNMP features, as well as configuring event and accounting logs. It covers basic tasks, such as configuring management access filters that control traffic in and out of the CPM, passwords, user profiles, security such as RADIUS, TACACS+, and SSH servers and the router clock.

This guide is organized into functional chapters and provides concepts and descriptions of the implementation flow, as well as Command Line Interface (CLI) syntax and command usage.

Audience

This guide is intended for network administrators who are responsible for configuring the 7950 XRS routers. It is assumed that the network administrators have an understanding of networking principles and configurations. Concepts described in this guide include the following:

- CLI concepts
- System and user access and security
- SNMP
- Event and accounting logs

List of Technical Publications

The 7950 XRS documentation set is composed of the following guides:

Table 1: List of Technical Publications

Guide	Description
7950 XRS Basic System Configuration Guide	This guide describes basic system configurations and operations.
7950 XRS System Management Guide	This guide describes system security and access configurations as well as event logging and accounting logs.
7950 XRS Interface Configuration Guide	This guide describes XMA Control Module (XCM), XRS Media Adaptor (XMA), port and Link Aggregation Group (LAG) provisioning.
7950 XRS Router Configuration Guide	This guide describes logical IP routing interfaces and associated attributes such as an IP address, as well as IP and MAC-based filtering, and VRRP and Cflowd.
7950 XRS Routing Protocols Guide	This guide provides an overview of routing concepts and provides configuration examples for RIP, OSPF, IS-IS, BGP, and route policies.
7950 XRS MPLS Guide	This guide describes how to configure Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) and Label Distribution Protocol (LDP).
7950 XRS Services Guide	This guide describes how to configure service parameters such as service distribution points (SDPs), customer information, and user services.
7950 XRS Layer 2 Services and EVPN Guide: VLL, VPLS, PBB, and EVPN	This guide describes Virtual Leased Lines (VLL), Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS), Provider Backbone Bridging (PBB), and Ethernet VPN (EVPN).
7950 XRS Layer 3 Services Guide: Internet Enhanced Services and Virtual Private Routed Network Services	This guide describes Internet Enhanced Services (IES) and Virtual Private Routed Network (VPRN) services.

Table 1: List of Technical Publications

Guide	Description
7950 XRS OAM and Diagnostics Guide	This guide describes how to configure features such as service mirroring and Operations, Administration and Management (OAM) tools.
7950 XRS Quality of Service Guide	This guide describes how to configure Quality of Service (QoS) policy management.

Searching for Information

You can use Adobe Reader, Release 6.0 or later, to search one or more PDF files for a term.

To search for specific information in this guide

1. From the Adobe Reader main menu, choose Edit > Search or Advanced Search. The Search panel opens.
2. Click on the In the current document radio button.
3. Enter the term to search for.
4. Select the following search criteria, if required:
   - Whole words only
   - Case-Sensitive
   - Include Bookmarks
   - Include Comments
5. Click on the Search button. Adobe Reader displays the search results.

You can expand the entries by clicking on the + symbol.

To search for specific information in multiple documents

Note: The PDF files that you search must be in the same folder.

1. From the Adobe Reader main menu, choose Edit > Search or Advanced Search. The Search panel opens.

2. Click on the All PDF Documents in radio button.
3. Choose the folder in which to search using the drop-down menu.
4. Enter the term to search for.
5. Select the following search criteria, if required:
    - Whole words only
    - Case-Sensitive
    - Include Bookmarks
    - Include Comments
6. Click on the Search button. Adobe Reader displays the search results.

You can expand the entries for each file by clicking on the + symbol.

Technical Support

If you purchased a service agreement for your 7950 SR-Series router and related products from a distributor or authorized reseller, contact the technical support staff for that distributor or reseller for assistance. If you purchased an Alcatel-Lucent service agreement, follow this link to contact an Alcatel-Lucent support representative and to access product manuals and documentation updates:

https://support2.alcatel-lucent.com/portal/olcsHome.do

Getting Started

In This Chapter

This chapter provides process flow information to configure system security and access functions as well as event and accounting logs.

Alcatel-Lucent 7950 XRS Router Configuration Process

Table 2 lists the tasks necessary to configure system security and access functions and logging features. Each chapter in this book is presented in an overall logical configuration flow. Each section describes a software area and provides CLI syntax and command usage to configure parameters for a functional area.

Table 2: Configuration Process

Area	Task	Chapter
System security	Configure system security parameters, such as authentication, authorization, and accounting.	Security on page 21
Network management	Configure SNMP elements.	SNMP on page 283
Secure network management	Configure NETCONF elements.	NETCONF on page 335
Operational functions	Configure event and accounting logs.	Event and Accounting Logs on page 379
Counter management	Configure sFlow elements.	sFlow on page 529

Table 2: Configuration Process

Area	Task	Chapter (Continued)
Reference	List of IEEE, IETF, and other proprietary entities.	Standards and Protocol Support on page 559

Note: In SR OS 12.0.R4 any function that displays an IPv6 address or prefix changes to reflect rules described in RFC 5952, *A Recommendation for IPv6 Address Text Representation*. Specifically, hexadecimal letters in IPv6 addresses are now represented in lowercase, and the correct compression of all leading zeros is displayed. This changes visible display output compared to previous SR OS releases. Previous SR OS behavior can cause issues with operator scripts that use standard IPv6 address expressions and with libraries that have standard IPv6 parsing as per RFC 5952 rules. See the section on IPv6 Addresses in the Router Configuration Guide for more information.

Security

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information to configure security parameters. Topics in this chapter include:

- Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting on page 22
  - → Authentication on page 23
  - → Authorization on page 30
  - → Accounting on page 34
- Security Controls on page 36
  - → When a Server Does Not Respond on page 36
  - → Access Request Flow on page 37
- Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) on page 52
- Other Security Features on page 53
  - → CPM Filters and Traffic Management on page 56
  - → Secure Shell (SSH) on page 53
  - → Encryption on page 59
- Configuration Notes on page 64

Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting

This chapter describes authentication, authorization, and accounting (AAA) used to monitor and control network access on routers. Network security is based on a multi-step process. The first step, authentication, validates a user's name and password. The second step is authorization, which allows the user to access and execute commands at various command levels based on profiles assigned to the user.

Another step, accounting, keeps track of the activity of a user who has accessed the network. The type of accounting information recorded can include a history of the commands executed, the amount of time spent in the session, the services accessed, and the data transfer size during the session. The accounting data can then be used to analyze trends, and also for billing and auditing purposes.

You can configure routers to use local, Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS), or Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) security to validate users who attempt to access the router by console, Telnet, or FTP. You can select the authentication order which determines the authentication method to try first, second, and third.

The router supports the following security features:

- RADIUS can be used for authentication, authorization, and accounting.
- TACACS+ can be used for authentication, authorization, and accounting.
- Local security can be implemented for authentication and authorization.

Figure 1 depicts end user access-requests sent to a RADIUS server. After validating the user names and passwords, the RADIUS server returns an access-accept message to the users on ALA-1 and ALA-2. The user name and password from ALA-3 could not be authenticated, thus access was denied.

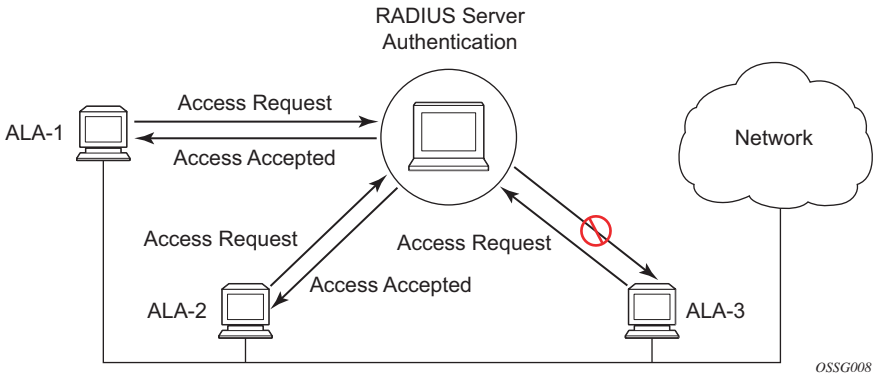


Figure 1: RADIUS Requests and Responses

Authentication

Authentication validates a user name and password combination when a user attempts to log in.

When a user attempts to log in through the console, Telnet, SSH, SCP, or FTP, the client sends an access request to a RADIUS, TACACS+, or local database.

Transactions between the client and a RADIUS server are authenticated through the use of a shared secret. The secret is never transmitted over the network. User passwords are sent encrypted between the client and RADIUS server which prevents someone snooping on an insecure network to learn password information.

If the RADIUS server does not respond within a specified time, the router issues the access request to the next configured servers. Each RADIUS server must be configured identically to guarantee consistent results.

If any RADIUS server rejects the authentication request, it sends an access reject message to the router. In this case, no access request is issued to any other RADIUS servers. However, if other authentication methods such as TACACS+ and/or local are configured, then these methods are attempted. If no other authentication methods are configured, or all methods reject the authentication request, then access is denied.

For the RADIUS server selection, round-robin is used if multiple RADIUS servers are configured. Although, if the first alive server in the list cannot find a user-name, the router does not re-query the next server in the RADIUS server list and denies the access request. It may get authenticated on the next login attempt if the next selected RADIUS server has the appropriate user-name. It is recommended that the same user databases are maintained for RADIUS servers in order to avoid inconsistent behavior.

The user login is successful when the RADIUS server accepts the authentication request and responds to the router with an access accept message.

Implementing authentication without authorization for the routers does not require the configuration of VSAs (Vendor Specific Attributes) on the RADIUS server. However, users, user access permissions, and command authorization profiles must be configured on each router.

Any combination of these authentication methods can be configured to control network access from a router:

- Local Authentication on page 24
- RADIUS Authentication on page 24
- TACACS+ Authentication on page 29

Local Authentication

Local authentication uses user names and passwords to authenticate login attempts. The user names and passwords are local to each router not to user profiles.

By default, local authentication is enabled. When one or more of the other security methods are enabled, local authentication is disabled. Local authentication is restored when the other authentication methods are disabled. Local authentication is attempted if the other authentication methods fail and local is included in the authentication order password parameters.

Locally, user names and password management information can be configured. This is referred to as local authentication. Remote security servers such as RADIUS or TACACS+, are not enabled.

RADIUS Authentication

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) is a client/server security protocol and software that enables remote access servers to communicate with a central server to authenticate dial-in users and authorize access to the requested system or service.

RADIUS allows you to maintain user profiles in a shared central database and provides better security, allowing a company to set up a policy that can be applied at a single administered network point.

RADIUS Server Selection

The RADIUS server selection algorithm is used by different applications:

- RADIUS operator management

In all these applications, up to 5 RADIUS servers pools (per RADIUS policy, if used) can be configured.

The RADIUS server selection algorithm can work in 2 modes, either Direct mode or Round-robin mode.

Direct Mode

The first server is used as the primary server. If this server is unreachable, the next server, based on the server index, of the server pool is used. This continues until either all servers in the pool have been tried or an answer is received.

If a server is unreachable, it will not be used again by the RADIUS application for the next 30 seconds to allow the server to recover from its unreachable state. After 30 seconds the unreachable server is available again for the RADIUS application. If in these 30 seconds the RADIUS application receives a valid response for a previously sent RADIUS packet on that unreachable server, the server will be available for the RADIUS application again, immediately after reception of that response.

Round-Robin Mode

The RADIUS application sends the next RADIUS packet to the next server in the server pool. The same server non-reachability behavior is valid as in the Direct mode.

Server Reachability Detection

A server is reachable, when the operational state UP, when a valid response is received within a timeout period which is configurable by the retry parameter on the RADIUS policy level.

A server is treated as not-reachable, when the operational state down, when the following occurs:

- A timeout — If a number of consecutive timeouts are encountered for a specific server. This number is configurable by the retry parameter on RADIUS policy level.
- A send failed — If a packet cannot be sent to the RADIUS server because the forwarding path towards the RADIUS server is broken (for example, the route is not available, the is interface shutdown, etc.), then, no retry mechanism is invoked and immediately, the next server in line is used.

A server that is down can only be used again by the RADIUS algorithm after 30 seconds, unless, during these 30 seconds a valid RADIUS reply is received for that server. Then, the server is immediately marked UP again.

The operational state of a server can also be “unknown” if the RADIUS application is not aware of the state of the RADIUS server (for example, if the server was previously down but no requests had been sent to the server, thus, it is not certain yet whether the server is actually reachable).

Application Specific Behavior

Operator Management

The server access mode is fixed to Round-Robin (Direct cannot be configured for operator management). A health-check function is available for operator management, which can optionally be disabled. The health-check polls the server once every 10 seconds with an improbable user name. If the server does not respond to this health-check, it will be marked down.

If the first server in the list cannot find a user, the next server in the RADIUS server list is not queried and access is denied. If multiple RADIUS servers are used, it is assumed they all have the same user database.

RADIUS Authentication

If the first server in the list cannot find a user, the next server in the RADIUS server list is not queried and access is denied. If multiple RADIUS servers are used, it is assumed they all have the same user database.

RADIUS Challenge/Response Interactive Authentication

Challenge-response interactive authentication is used for key authentication where the Radius server is asking for the valid response to a displayed challenge. The challenge packet includes a challenge to be displayed to the user, such as a unique generated numeric value unlikely ever to be repeated. Typically this is obtained from an external server that knows what type of authenticator is in the possession of the authorized user and can therefore choose a random or non-repeating pseudorandom number of apropriate length.

The user then enters the challenge into his device (or software) and it calculates a response, which the user enters into the client which forwards it to the RADIUS server via an access request. If the response matches the expected response, the RADIUS server allows the user access, otherwise it rejects the response.

RADIUS challenge/response mode is enabled using the CLI interactive-authentication command in the config>system>security>radius context. RADIUS interactive authentication is disabled by default. The option needs to be enabled via CLI.

Enabling interactive authentication under CLI does not mean that the system uses RADIUS challenge/response mode by default. The configured password authentication-order parameter is used. If the authentication-order parameter is local RADIUS, the system will first attempt to

login the user via local authentication. If this fails, the system will revert to RADIUS and challenge/response mode. The authentication-order will precede the RADIUS interactive-authentication mode.

Even if the authentication-order is RADIUS local, the standard password prompt is always displayed. The user enters a username and password at this prompt. If RADIUS interactive-authentication is enabled the password does not have to be the correct password since authentication is accomplished using the RADIUS challenge/response method. The user can enter any password. The username and password are sent to the RADIUS server, which responds with a challenge request that is transmitted back to the node by the RADIUS server. Once the user enters the challenge response, the response is authenticated by the RADIUS server to allow node access to the user.

For example, if the system is configured with system security authentication-order set to local RADIUS, at the login prompt the user can enter the username “admin” and the corresponding password. If the password for local authentication does not match, the system falls into RADIUS authentication mode. The system checks the interactive-authentication configuration and if it is enabled it enters into challenge/response mode. It sends the username and password to the RADIUS server, and the server sends the challenge request back to the node and to the user where it appears as a challenge prompt onscreen. A challenge received from the RADIUS server typically contains a string and a hardware token that can be used to generate a password on the users’ local personal token generator. For example, the RADIUS server might send the challenge prompt "Enter response for challenge 12345:" to SR OS. The string “12345” can be entered in the local token generator which generates the appropriate challenge response for the entered string. This challenge response can then be entered on the SR-OS prompt for authorization.

Once the user enters the correct challenge response it is authenticated via the RADIUS server. The server authenticates the user and the user gains access to the node.

If session timeout and Idle timeout values are configured on the RADIUS server, these are used to govern the length of time before SR-OS cancels the challenge prompt. If the user is idle longer than the received idle-timeout (seconds) from the RADIUS server, and/or if the user does not press ENTER before the received session-timeout (seconds).

Note: For SSH only the session-timeout value is used. The SSH stack cannot track character input into the login prompt until the enter key is pressed.

Note: If the idle/session attribute is not available or if the value is set to a very large number, SR OS uses the smallest value set in "configure system login-control idle-timeout" and the idle/session timeout attribute value to terminate the prompt. If the “login-control idle-timeout” is set to 0 (equivalent to infinite), the maximum idle-timeout (24-hours) is used for the calculation.

SR-OS displays the log-in attempts/failure per user in the "show system security user user-name" screen. If the RADIUS rejects a challenge response, it counts as a failed login attempt and a new prompt is displayed. The number of failed attempts is limited by the value set for "configure

system security password attempt." An incorrect challenge response results in a failure count against the password attempts.

RADIUS PE-Discovery

If the first server in the list cannot find a user, the next server in the RADIUS server list is not queried and access is denied. If multiple RADIUS servers are used, it is assumed they all have the same user database.

The RADIUS PE-discovery application makes use of a 10 second time period instead of the generic 30 seconds and uses a fixed consecutive timeout value of 2 (see Server Reachability Detection on page 25).

As long as the Session-Timeout (attribute in the RADIUS user file) is specified, it is used for the polling interval. Otherwise, the configured polling interval will be used (60 seconds by default).

TACACS+ Authentication

Terminal Access Controller Access Control System, commonly referred to as TACACS is an authentication protocol that allows a remote access server to forward a user's logon password to an authentication server to determine whether access can be allowed to a given system. TACACS is an encryption protocol and therefore less secure than the later Terminal Access Controller Access Control System Plus (TACACS+) and RADIUS protocols.

TACACS+ and RADIUS have largely replaced earlier protocols in the newer or recently updated networks. TACACS+ uses Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) and RADIUS uses the User Datagram Protocol (UDP). TACACS+ is popular as TCP is thought to be a more reliable protocol. RADIUS combines authentication and authorization. TACACS+ separates these operations.

Authorization

SR OS routers support local, RADIUS, and TACACS+ authorization to control the actions of specific users. Any combination of these authorization methods can be configured to control actions of specific users:

- Local Authorization on page 30
- RADIUS Authorization on page 30
- TACACS+ Authorization on page 31

Local authorization and RADIUS authorization operate by applying a profile based on user name and password configurations once network access is granted. The profiles are configured locally as well as VSAs on the RADIUS server. See Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) on page 52.

Local Authorization

Local authorization uses user profiles and user access information after a user is authenticated. The profiles and user access information specifies the actions the user can and cannot perform.

By default, local authorization is enabled. Local authorization is disabled only when a different remote authorization method is configured, such as TACACS+ or RADIUS authorization.

You must configure profile and user access information locally.

RADIUS Authorization

RADIUS authorization grants or denies access permissions for a router. Permissions include the use of FTP, Telnet, SSH (SCP), and console access. When granting Telnet, SSH (SCP) and console access to the router, authorization can be used to limit what CLI commands the user is allowed to issue and which file systems the user is allowed or denied access.

Once a user has been authenticated using RADIUS (or another method), the router can be configured to perform authorization. The RADIUS server can be used to:

- Download the user profile to the router
- Send the profile name that the node should apply to the router.

Profiles consist of a suite of commands that the user is allowed or not allowed to execute. When a user issues a command, the authorization server looks at the command and the user information and compares it with the commands in the profile. If the user is authorized to issue the command, the command is executed. If the user is not authorized to issue the command, then the command is not executed.

Profiles must be created on each router and should be identical for consistent results. If the profile is not present, then access is denied.

Table 3 displays the following scenarios:

- Remote (RADIUS) authorization cannot be performed if authentication is done locally (on the router).
- The reverse scenario is supported if RADIUS authentication is successful and no authorization is configured for the user on the RADIUS server, then local (router) authorization is attempted, if configured in the authorization order.

When authorization is configured and profiles are downloaded to the router from the RADIUS server, the profiles are considered temporary configurations and are not saved when the user session terminates.

Table 3: Supported Authorization Configurations

	Router	RADIUS Supplied Profile
Routerconfigured user	Supported	Not Supported
RADIUS server configured user	Supported	Supported
TACACS+ server configured user	Supported	Not Supported

When using authorization, maintaining a user database on the router is not required. User names can be configured on the RADIUS server. User names are temporary and are not saved in the configuration when the user session terminates. Temporary user login names and their associated passwords are not saved as part of the configuration.

TACACS+ Authorization

TACACS+ authorization operates in one of three ways:

- All users who authenticate via TACACS+ can use a single common default profile that is configured on the SR OS Router, or
- Each command attempted by a user is sent to the TACACS+ server for authorization

- The operator can configure local profiles and map **tacplus priv-lvl** based authorization to those profiles (the **use-priv-lvl** option)

To use a single common default profile to control command authorization for TACACS+ users, the operator must configure the **tacplus use-default-template** option and configure the parameters in the **user-template tacplus_default** to point to a valid local profile.

If the default template is not being used for TACACAS+ authorization and the **use-priv-lvl** option is not configured, then each CLI command issued by an operator is sent to the TACACS+ server for authorization. The authorization request sent by SR OS contains the first word of the CLI command as the value for the TACACS+ cmd and all following words become a cmd-arg. Quoted values are expanded so that the quotation marks are stripped off and the enclosed value are seen as one cmd or cmd-arg.

Examples

Here is a set of examples, where the following commands are typed in the CLI:

```
- "show"
- "show router"
- "show port 1/1/1"
- "configure port 1/1/1 description "my port"
```

This results in the following AVPairs:

```
cmd=show

cmd=show
cmd-arg=router

cmd=show
cmd-arg=port
cmd-arg=1/1/1

cmd=configure
cmd-arg=port
cmd-arg=1/1/1
cmd-arg=description
cmd-arg=my port
```

For TACACS+ authorization, SR OS sends the entire CLI context in the **cmd** and **cmd-arg** values. Here is a set of examples where the CLI context is different:

```
- *A:dut-c# configure service
- *A:dut-c>config>service# vprn 555 customer 1 create
- *A:dut-c>config>service>vprn$ shutdown
```

This results in the following AVPairs:

```
cmd =configure
cmd-arg=service

cmd=configure
cmd-arg=service
cmd-arg=vprn
cmd-arg="555"
cmd-arg=customer
cmd-arg=1
cmd-arg=create

cmd=configure
cmd-arg=service
cmd-arg=vprn
cmd-arg="555"
cmd-arg=customer
cmd-arg=1
cmd-arg=create
cmd-arg=shutdown
```

Accounting

When enabled, RADIUS accounting sends command line accounting from the router to the RADIUS server. The router sends spars using UDP packets at port 1813 (decimal).

The router issues an accounting request packet for each event requiring the activity to be recorded by the RADIUS server. The RADIUS server acknowledges each accounting request by sending an accounting response after it has processed the accounting request. If no response is received in the time defined in the timeout parameter, the accounting request must be retransmitted until the configured retry count is exhausted. A trap is issued to alert the NMS (or trap receiver) that the server is unresponsive. The router issues the accounting request to the next configured RADIUS server (up to 5).

User passwords and authentication keys of any type are never transmitted as part of the accounting request.

RADIUS Accounting

Accounting tracks user activity to a specified host. When RADIUS accounting is enabled, the server is responsible for receiving accounting requests and returning a response to the client indicating that it has successfully received the request. Each command issued on the router generates a record sent to the RADIUS server. The record identifies the user who issued the command and the timestamp.

Accounting can be configured independently from RADIUS authorization and RADIUS authentication.

TACACS+ Accounting

The OS allows you to configure the type of accounting record packet that is to be sent to the TACACS+ server when specified events occur on the device. The accounting **record-type** parameter indicates whether TACACS+ accounting start and stop packets be sent or just stop packets be sent. Start/stop messages are only sent for individual commands, not for the session.

When a user logs in to request access to the network using Telnet or SSH, or a user enters a command for which accounting parameters are configured, or a system event occurs, such as a reboot or a configuration file reload, the router checks the configuration to see if TACACS+ accounting is required for the particular event.

If TACACS+ accounting is required, then, depending on the accounting record type specified, sends a start packet to the TACACS+ accounting server which contains information about the event.

The TACACS+ accounting server acknowledges the start packet and records information about the event. When the event ends, the device sends a stop packet. The stop packet is acknowledged by the TACACS+ accounting server.

Security Controls

You can configure routers to use RADIUS, TACACS+, and local authentication to validate users requesting access to the network. The order in which password authentication is processed among RADIUS, TACACS+ and local passwords can be specifically configured. In other words, the authentication order can be configured to process authorization through TACACS+ first, then RADIUS for authentication and accounting. Local access can be specified next in the authentication order in the event that the RADIUS and TACACS+ servers are not operational.

Table 4: Security Methods Capabilities

Method	Authentication	Authorization	Accounting*
Local	Y	Y	N
TACACS+	Y	Y	Y
RADIUS	Y	Y	Y

* Local commands always perform account logging using the **config log** command.

When a Server Does Not Respond

A trap is issued if a RADIUS + server is unresponsive. An alarm is raised if RADIUS is enabled with at least one RADIUS server and no response is received to either accounting or user access requests from any server.

Periodic checks to determine if the primary server is responsive again are not performed. If a server is down, it will not be contacted for 5 minutes. If a login is attempted after 5 minutes, then the server is contacted again. When a server does not respond with the health check feature enabled, the server's status is checked every 30 seconds. Health check is enabled by default. When a service response is restored from at least one server, the alarm condition is cleared. Alarms are raised and cleared on Alcatel-Lucent's Fault Manager or other third party fault management servers.

The servers are accessed in order from lowest to highest specified index (from 1 to 5) for authentication requests until a response from a server is received. A higher indexed server is only queried if no response is received, implying a lower indexed server is not available. If a response from the server is received, no other server is queried.

Access Request Flow

In Figure 2, the authentication process is defined in the `config>system>security>password` context. The authentication order is determined by specifying the sequence in which password authentication is attempted among RADIUS, TACACS+, and local passwords. This example uses the authentication order of RADIUS, then TACACS+, and finally, local. An access request is sent to RADIUS server 1. One of two scenarios can occur. If there is no response from the server, the request is passed to the next RADIUS server with the next lowest index (RADIUS server 2) and so on, until the last RADIUS server is attempted (RADIUS server 5). If server 5 does not respond, the request is passed to the TACACS+ server 1. If there is no response from that server, the request is passed to the next TACACS+ server with the next lowest index (TACACS+ server 2) and so on.

If a request is sent to an active RADIUS server and the user name and password is not recognized, access is denied and passed on to the next authentication option, in this case, the TACACS+ server. The process continues until the request is either accepted, denied, or each server is queried. Finally, if the request is denied by the active TACACS+ server, the local parameters are checked for user name and password verification. This is the last chance for the access request to be accepted.

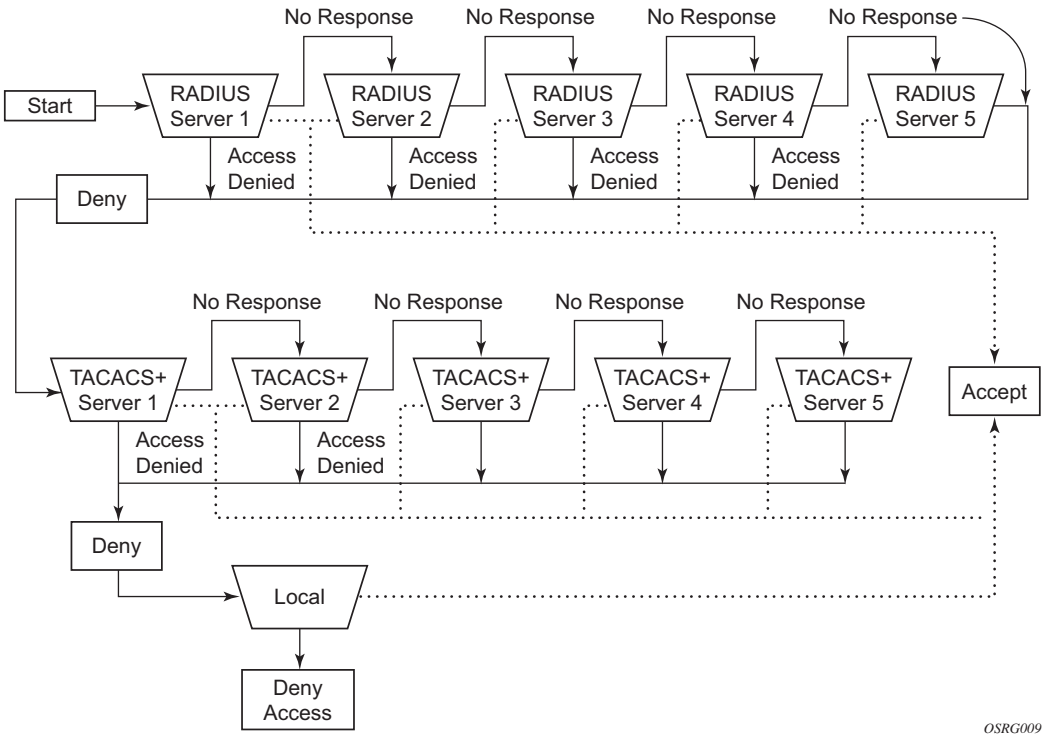


Figure 2: Security Flow

CPU Protection

SR OS provides several rate limiting mechanisms to protect the CPM/CFM processing resources of the router:

- CPU Protection: A centralized rate limiting function that operates on the CPM to limit traffic destined to the CPUs.
- Distributed CPU Protection: A control traffic rate limiting protection mechanism for the CPM/CFM that operates on the line cards (hence 'distributed').

CPU protection protects the CPU of the node that it is configured on from a DOS attack by limiting the amount of traffic coming in from one of its ports and destined to the CPM (to be processed by its CPU) using a combination of the configurable limits.

Some of the limits are configured globally for the node, and some of the limits are configured in CPU Protection profiles which are assigned to interfaces.

The following limits are configured globally for the node:

- link-specific rate — Applies to the link-specific protocols LACP (ethernet LAG control) and LMI (ATM, Ethernet and Frame Relay). The rate is a per-link limit (each link in the system will have LACP/LMI packets limited to this rate).
- port-overall-rate – Applies to all control traffic each port. The rate is a per-port limit (each port in the system will have control traffic destined to the CPM limited to this rate).
- protocol-protection — Blocks network control traffic for unconfigured protocols. If IS-IS is not configured on an IP interface all IS-IS-related traffic will be dropped and not reach the CPU.

The following limits are configured within CPU Protection policies (1-255). CPU Protection policies are created, configured, and then assigned to interfaces.

- overall-rate — Applies to all control traffic destined to the CPM (all sources) received on the interface (only where the policy is applied). This is a per-interface limit. Control traffic received above this rate will be discarded.
- per-source-rate — Used to limit the control traffic destined to the CPM from each individual source. This per-source-rate is only applied when an object (SAP) is configured with a cpu-protection policy and also with the optional mac-monitoring or ip-src-monitoring keywords. A source is defined as a *SAP, Source MAC Address* tuple for mac-monitoring and as a *SAP, Source IP Address* tuples for **ip-src**-monitoring. Only certain protocols (as configured under *included-protocols* in the cpu protection policy) are limited (per source) when the **ip-src**-monitoring keyword is used.
- out-profile-rate – Applies to all control traffic destined to the CPM (all sources) received on the interface (only where the policy is applied). This is a per-interface

limit. Control traffic received above this rate will be marked as discard eligible and is more likely to be discarded if there is contention for CPU resources.

A three-color marking mechanism uses a green, yellow and red marking function. This allows greater flexibility in how traffic limits are implemented. A CLI command within the DoS protection policy called **out-profile-rate** maps to the boundary between the green (accept) and yellow (mark as discard eligible) regions. The **overall-rate** command marks the boundary between the yellow and red (drop) regions point for the associated policy (Figure 3).

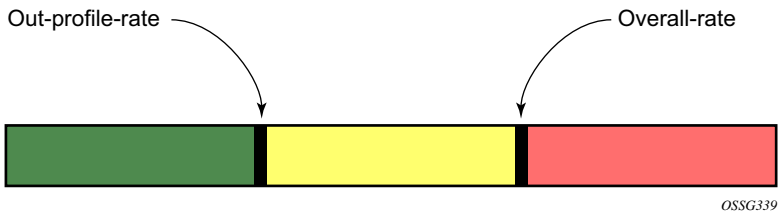


Figure 3: Profile Marking

There are two default CPU protection policies. They are modifiable, but cannot be deleted.

Policy 254:

- This is the default policy that is automatically applied to access interfaces
- Traffic above 6000 pps is discarded
- overall-rate = 6000
- per-source-rate = max
- out-profile-rate = 6000

Policy 255:

- This is the default policy that is automatically applied to Network interfaces
- Traffic above 3000 pps is marked as discard eligible, but is not discarded unless there is congestion in the queueing towards the CPU
- overall-rate = max
- per-source-rate = max
- out-profile-rate = 3000

All traffic destined to the CPM and that will be processed by its CPU will be subject to the limit specified. Therefore, if there is a protocol running on the violating interface, then protocol traffic on that interface will be affected. The objective of CPU protection is to limit the amount of traffic that the CPU will process at an early stage, therefore, the good and bad

traffic coming in cannot be distinguished when it arrives at a rate higher than the user-configured limit.

If the overall rate is set to 1000 pps and as long as the total traffic that is destined to the CPM and intended to be processed by the CPU is less than or equal to 1000 pps, all traffic will be processed. If the rate exceeds 1000 pps, then protocol traffic is discarded (or marked as discard eligible in the case of the out-profile-rate) and traffic on the interface is affected.

This protects all the other interfaces on the system and make sure that a violation from one interface does not affect the rest of the box.

The protocol-protection configuration is not a rate (just an enable/disable configuration). When enabled, this feature causes the network processor on the CPM to discard all packets received for protocols that are not configured on the particular interface. This helps mitigate DoS attacks by filtering invalid control traffic before it hits the CPU. The system automatically populates and maintains a per-interface list of configured (such as valid) protocols (based on interface config, etc). For example, if an interface does not have IS-IS configured, then protocol-protection will discard any IS-IS packets received on that interface.

Some protocols are not bound to a specific interface, for example, BGP. SR-OS will discard packets for these protocols if the protocol is not configured anywhere in the system. Note that protection for the following protocols is achieved using the per-peer-queueing feature of SR-OS: BGP, T-LDP, LDP, MSDP.

Protocols controlled by the protocol-protection mechanism include:

- OSPFv2
- OSPFv3
- IS-IS
- RSVP-TE
- RIP
- PIM
- MLD
- IGMP
- L2TP
- PPP

Note: If PIM or PIM snooping is not configured on any interfaces/SAPs then all PIM packets will be discarded. If PIM or PIM snooping is configured on an interface/SAP, then multicast PIM messages are filter based on PIM being enabled on that particular interface. All unicast PIM messages are sent to the CPU to be processed.

CPU Protection Extensions ETH-CFM

CPU protection has been extended to provide the ability to explicitly limit the amount of ETH-CFM traffic that arrives at the CPU for processing. ETH-CFM packets that are redirected to the CPU by either a Management Endpoint (MEP) or a Management Intermediate Point (MIP) will be subject to the configured limit of the associated policy. Up to four CPU protection policies may include up to ten individual eth-cfm specific entries. The eth-cfm entries allow the operator to apply a packet per second rate limit to the matching combination of level and opcode, for eth-cfm packet that are redirected to the CPU. Any eth-cfm traffic that is redirected to the CPU by a Management Point (MP) that does not match any entries of the applied policy is still subject to the overall rate limit of the policy itself. Any eth-cfm packets that are not redirected to the CPU are not subject to this function and are treated as transit data, subject to the applicable QoS policy.

The operator first creates a CPU Policy and includes the required eth-cfm entries. Overlap is allowed for the entries within a policy, first match logic is applied. This means ordering the entries in the proper sequence is important to ensure the proper behavior is achieved. Even thought the number of eth-cfm entries is limited to ten, the entry numbers have a valid range from 1-100 to allow for ample space to insert policies between one and other.

Ranges are allowed when configuring the Level and the OpCode. Ranges provide the operator a simplified method for configuring multiple combinations. When more than one Level or OpCode is configured in this manner the configured rate limit is applied separately to each combination of level and OpCode match criteria. For example, if the Levels are configured with using a range of 5-7 and the OpCode is configured for 3,5 with a rate of 1. That restricts all possible combinations on that single entry to a rate of 1 packet per second. In this example six different match conditions are programmed behind the scene.

Table 5: Ranges versus Levels and OpCodes

Level	OpCode	Rate
5	3	1
5	5	1
6	3	1
6	5	1
7	3	1
7	5	1

Once the policy is created it must be applied to a SAP/Binding within a service for these rates to take affect. This means the rate is on a per SAP/Binding basis. Only a single policy may be applied to a SAP/Binding. The “eth-cfm-monitoring” option must be configured in order for the eth-cfm entries to be applied when the policy is applied to the SAP/Binding. If this option

is not configured, eth-cfm entries in the policy will be ignored. It is also possible to apply a policy to a SAP/Binding configuring “eth-cfm-monitoring” which does not have an MP. In this case, although these entries are enforced, no packets are being redirect to the CPU due to the lack of an MP.

By default, rates are applied on a per peer basis. This means each individual peer is subject to the rate. However, it is suggested that the “aggregate” option be configured to apply the rate to the sum total of all peers. MIPs for example only respond to Loopback Messages and Linktrace Messages. These are typically on demand functions and per peer rate limiting is likely not required thus making the aggregate function a more appealing model.

“eth-cfm-monitoring” and “mac-monitoring” are mutually exclusive and cannot be configured on the same SAP/Binding “mac-monitoring” is used in combination with the traditional CPU protection and is not specific to the eth-cfm rate limiting feature describe here.

When an MP is configured on a SAP/Binding within a service which allows an external source to communicate with that MP, for example a User to Network Interface (UNI), it is suggested that “eth-cfm-monitoring” with the “aggregate” option be configured on all SAP/Bindings to provide the highest level of rate control.

The example below shows a sample configuration for a policy and the application of that policy to a SAP in a VPLS service configured with a MP.

Policy 1 entry 10 limits all eth-cfm traffic redirected to the CPU for all possible combinations to 1 packet per second. Policy 1 entry 20 limits all possible combinations to a rate of zero, dropping all request which match any combination. If entry 20 did not exist then only rate limiting of the entry 10 matches would occur and any other eth-cfm packets redirected to the CPU would not be bound by a CPU protection rate.

```
config>sys>security>cpu-protection#
  policy 1
    eth-cfm
      entry 10 level 5-7 opcode 3,5 rate 1
      entry 20 level 0-7 opcode 0-255 rate 0

config>service>vpls#
  sap 1/1/4:100
    cpu-protection 1 eth-cfm-monitoring aggregate
    eth-cfm
      mip
    no shutdown
```

ETH-CFM Ingress Squelching

CPU protection provides a granular method to control which ETH-CFM packets are processed. As indicated in the previous section, a unique rate can be applied to ETH-CFM packets classifying on specific MD-Level and specific OpCode and applied to both ingress (Down MEP and ingress MIP) and egress (Up MEP and egress MIP) extraction. That function is to protect the CPU upon extraction when a Management Point (MP) is configured.

It is also important to protect the ETH-CFM architecture deployed in the service provider network. The protection scheme here varies form CPU protection. This model is used to prevent ETH-CFM frames at the service provider MD-levels from gaining access to the network even when extraction is not in place. ETH-CFM squelching allows the operator to achieve this goal using a simple method to drop all ETH-CFM packets at or below the configured MD-level. The ETH-CFM squelch feature is ingress only.

Figure 4 shows a typical ETH-CFM hierarchical model with a Subscriber ME (6), Test ME (5), EVC ME (4) and an Operator ME (2). This model provides the necessary transparency at the different levels of the architecture. For security reasons, it may be necessary to prevent errant levels from entering the service provider network at the UNI, ENNI, or other untrusted interconnection points. Configuring squelching at level four on both UNI-N interconnection ensures that ETH-CFM packets matching the SAP or binding delimited configuration will silently discard ETH-CFM packets at ingress.

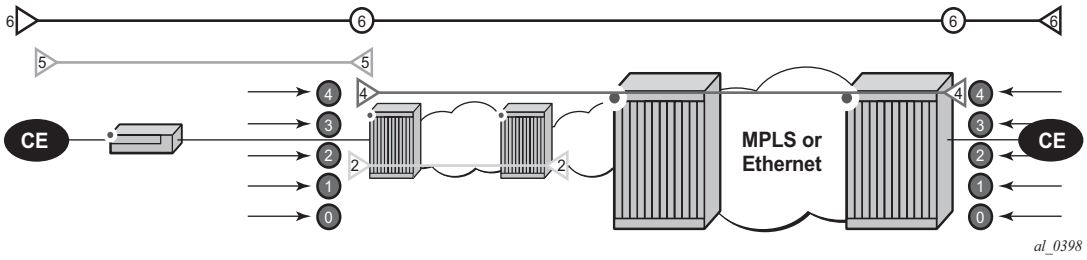


Figure 4: ETH-CFM Hierarchical Model

Squelching configuration uses a single MD-level [0..7] to silently drop all ETH-CFM packets matching the SAP or binding delimited configuration at and below the specified MD-level. In Figure 4, a squelch level is configured at MD-level 4. This means the configuration will silently discard MD-levels 0,1,2,3 and 4, assuming there is a SAP or binding match.

Note: Extreme caution must be used when deploying this feature.

The operator is able to configure Down MEPs and ingress MIPs that conflict with the squelched levels. This also means that any existing MEP or MIP processing ingress CFM

packets on a SAP on Binding where a squelching policy is configured will be interrupted as soon as this command is entered into the configuration. These MPs will not be able to receive any ingress ETH-CFM frames because squelching is processed before ETH-CFM extraction.

CPU Protection Extensions for ETH-CFM are still required in the model above because the Subscriber ME (6) and the Test ME (5) are entering the network across an untrusted connection, the UNI. ETH-CFM squelching and CPU Protection for ETH-CFM can be configured on the same SAP or binding. Squelching is first in the process order followed by CPU Protection for ETH-CFM.

MPs configured to support primary VLAN are not subjected to the squelch function. Primary VLAN based MPs, supported only on Ethernet SAPs, are extractions that take into consideration an additional VLAN beyond the SAP configuration.

The difference in the two protection mechanisms is shown in the Table 6. CPU Protection is used to control access to the CPU resources when processing is required. Squelching is required when the operator is protecting the ETH-CFM architecture from external sources.

Table 6: CPU PRotection and Squelching

Description	CPU Protection Extension for ETH-CFM	ETH-CFM Squelching
Ingress Filtering	Yes	Yes
Egress Filtering	Yes	No
Granularity	Specified Level AND OpCode	Level (At and below)
Rate	Configurable Rate (includes 0=drop all)	Silent Drop
Primary VLAN Support	Rate shared with SAP delineation	Not exposed to squelch
Extraction	Requires MEP or MIP to extract	No MEP or MIP required

As well as including the squelching information under the **show service** *service-id* **all**, display output the **squelch-ingress-level** key has been added to the **sap-using** and **sdp-using show** commands.

```
show service sap-using squelch-ingress-levels
===============================================================================
ETH-CFM Squelching
===============================================================================
PortId             SvcId      Squelch Level
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
6/1/1:100.*        1          0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
lag-1:100.*        1          0 1 2 3 4
6/1/1:200.*        2          0 1 2
lag-1:200.*        2          0 1 2 3 4 5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SAPs: 4
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
show service sdp-using squelch-ingress-levels
===============================================================================
ETH-CFM Squelching
===============================================================================
SdpId              SvcId       Type Far End                Squelch Level
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
12345:4000000000   2147483650   Spok 1.1.1.1                0 1 2 3 4
===============================================================================
```

Extreme caution must be used when deploying this feature.

Distributed CPU Protection (DCP)

SR OS provides several rate limiting mechanisms to protect the CPM/CFM processing resources of the router:

- CPU Protection: A centralized rate limiting function that operates on the CPM to limit traffic destined to the CPUs. This feature is described elsewhere in this guide.
- Distributed CPU Protection: A control traffic rate limiting protection mechanism for the CPM/CFM that operates on the line cards (hence ‘distributed’).

Distributed CPU Protection (DCP) offers a powerful per-protocol-per-object (examples of objects are SAPs and network interfaces) rate limiting function for control protocol traffic that is extracted from the data path and sent to the CPM. The DCP function is implemented on the router line cards that allows for high levels of scaling and granularity of control.

The DCP rate limiting is configured via policies that are applied to objects (for example, SAPs).

The basic types of policers in DCP are:

- Enforcement Policers — An instance of a policer that is policing a flow of packets comprised of a single (or small set of) protocols(s) arriving on a single object (for example, SAP). Enforcement policers perform a configurable action (for example, discard) on packets that exceed configured rate parameters. There are two basic sub-types of enforcement policers:
  - → Static policers — always instantiate.
  - → Dynamic policers — only instantiated (allocated from a free pool of dynamic policers) when a local monitor detects non-conformance for a set of protocols on a specific object.
- Local Monitors — A policer that is primarily used to measure the conformance of a flow comprised of multiple protocols arriving on a single object. Local monitors are used as a trigger to instantiate dynamic policers.

The use of dynamic policers reduces the number of policers required to effectively monitor and control a set of protocols across a large set of objects since the per-protocol-per-object dynamic policers are only instantiated when an attack or misconfiguration occurs, and they are only instantiated for the affected objects.

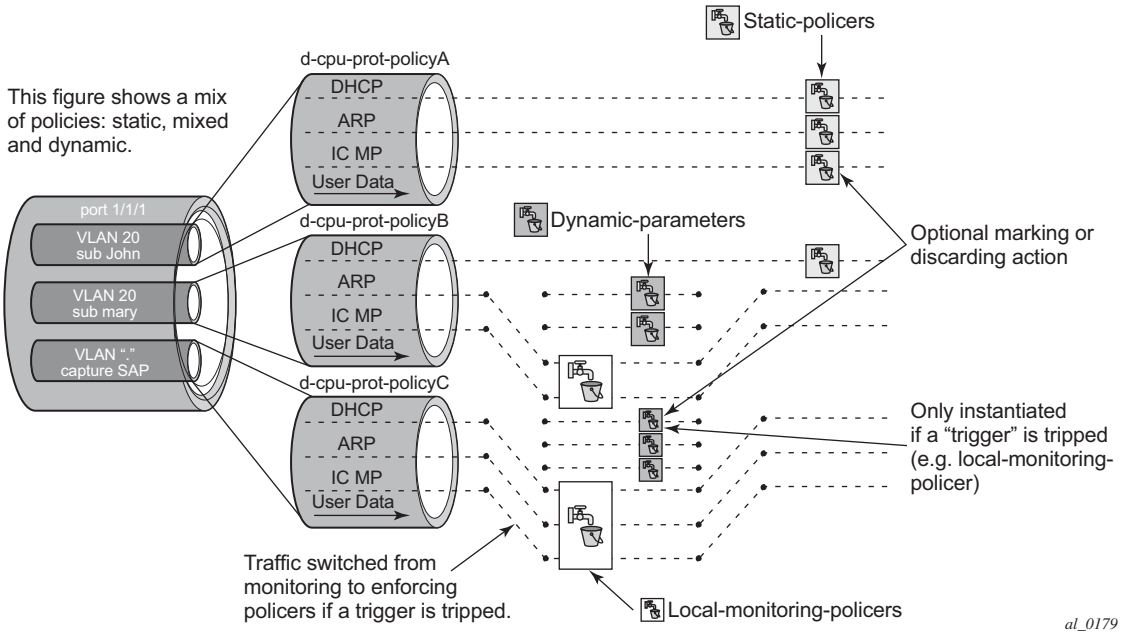


Figure 5: Per SAP per Protocol Static Rate Limiting with DCP

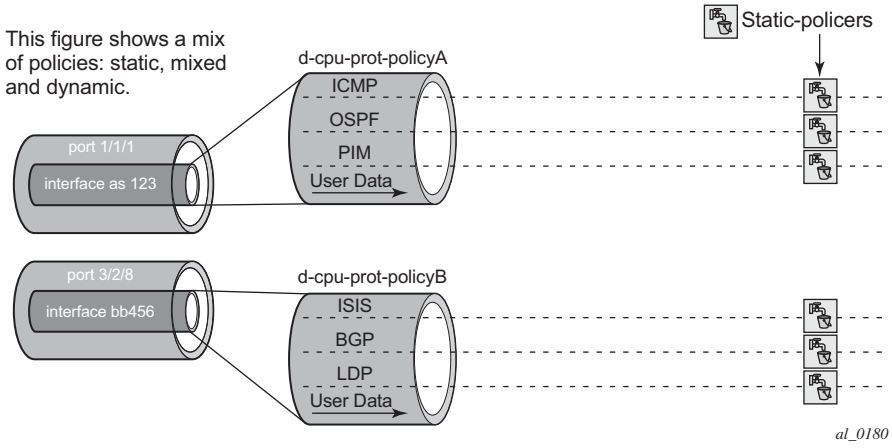


Figure 6: Per Network Interface per Protocol Static Rate Limiting with DCP

Applicability of Distributed CPU Protection

dist-cpu-protection (DCP) policies can be applicable to the following types of objects:

- most types of SAPs, including capture SAPs and SAPs on pseudo wires, but it is not applicable to b-vpls saps (b-saps).
- Network Interfaces, but not to any other type of interface. A DCP policy can be configured at the interface sap instead.

Control packets that are both forwarded (which means they could be subject to normal QoS policy policing) and also copied for extraction are not subject to Distributed CPU Protection (including in the all-unspecified bucket). This includes traffic snooping (for example, PIM in VPLS) as well as control traffic that is flooded in an R-VPLS instance and also extracted to the CPM such as ARP, ISIS and VRRP. Centralized per SAP/interface cpu-protection can be employed to rate limit or mark this traffic if desired.

Control traffic that arrives on a network interface, but inside a tunnel (for example, SDP, LSP, PW) and logically terminates on a service (that is, traffic that is logically extracted by the service rather than the network interface layer itself) will bypass the DCP function. The control packets in this case will not be subject to the DCP policy that is assigned to the network interface on which the packets arrived. This helps to avoid customer traffic in a service from impacting other services or the operator's infrastructure.

Control packets that are extracted in a vprn service, where the packets arrived into the node via a vpls SAP (that is, r-vpls scenario), will use the DCP policy and policer instances associated with the vpls SAP. In this case the DCP policy that an operator creates for use on VPLS SAPs, for VPLSs that have a l3-interface bound to them (r-vpls), may have protocols like OSPF, ARP, configured in the policy.

Log Events, Statistics, Status and SNMP support

A comprehensive set of log events are supported for DCP in order to alert the operator to potential attacks or misconfigurations and to allow tuning of the DCP settings. Refer to the NOTIFICATION-TYPE objects with “Dcp” in the names in the following MIBs for details:

- TIMETRA-CHASSIS-MIB
- TIMETRA-SAP-MIB
- TIMETRA-VRTR-MIB

The log events can also be seen in the CLI using the following **show log event-control | match Dcp** command

DCP throttles the rate of DCP events to avoid event floods when multiple parallel attacks or problems are occurring.

Many of the DCP log events can be individually enabled or disabled at the DCP policy level (in the DCP policy config) as well as globally in the system (in log event-control).

If needed when a DCP log event indicates a SAP, and that SAP is an MSAP, the operator can determine which subscriber(s) is/are on a specific MSAP by using the **show service active-subs** command and then filtering (“| match”) on the msap string.

Statistics and status related to DCP are available both via:

- CLI
- SNMP — See various tables and objects with “Dcp” or “DCpuProt” in their name in the TIMETRA-CHASSIS-MIB, TIMETRA-SECURITY-MIB, TIMETRA-SAP-MIB and TIMETRA-VRTR-MIB

DCP Policer Resource Management

The policer instances are a limited h/w resource on a given forwarding plane. DCP policers (static, dynamic, local-monitor) are consumed from the overall forwarding plane policer resources (from the ingress resources if ingress and egress are partitioned). Each per-protocol policer instantiated reduces the number of FP child policers available for other purposes.

When DCP is configured with dynamic enforcement, then the operator must set aside a pool of policers that can be instantiated as dynamic enforcement policers. The number of policers reserved for this function are configurable per card/fp. The policers in this pool are not available for other purposes (normal SLA enforcement).

Static enforcement policers and local monitoring policers use policers from the normal/global policer pool on the card/fp. Once a static policer is configured in a DCP policy and it is referenced by a protocol in the policy, then this policer will be instantiated for each object (SAP or network interface) that is created and references the policy. If there is no policer free on the associated card/fp, then the object will be blocked from being created. Similarly for local monitors: once a local monitoring policer is configured and referenced by a protocol, then this policer will be instantiated for each object that is created and references the policy. If there is no policer free, then the object will be blocked from being created.

Dynamic enforcement policers are allocated as needed (when the local monitor detects non-conformance) from the reserved dynamic-enforcement-policer-pool.

When a DCP policy is applied to an object on a LAG, then a set of policers is allocated on each forwarding plane (on each line card that contains a member of the LAG). The LAG mode is ignored and the policers are always shared by all ports in the LAG on that forwarding plane on the SAP/interface. In other words, with link-mode lag a set of DCP policers are not allocated per port in the LAG on the SAP.

In order to support large scale operation of DCP, and also to avoid overload conditions, a polling process is used to monitor state changes in the policers. This means there can be a delay between when an event occurs in the data plane and when the relevant state change or event notification occurs towards an operator, but in the meantime the policers are still operating and protecting the control plane.

Operational Guidelines and Tips

The following points offer various optional guidelines that may help an operator decide how to leverage Distributed CPU Protection.

- The rates in a policy assigned to a capture SAP should be higher than those assigned to MSAPs that will contain a single subscriber. The rates for the capture sap policy should allow for a burst of MSAP setups.
- To completely block a set of specific protocols on a given SAP, create a single static policer with a rate of 0 and map the protocols to that policer. Dynamic policers and local monitors can't be used to simultaneously allow some protocols but block others (the non-zero rates in the monitor would let all protocols slip through at a low rate).
- During normal operation it is recommended to configure "log-events" (no verbose keyword) for all static-policers, in the dynamic-parameters of all protocols and for all local-monitoring-policers. he verbose keyword can be used selectively during debug, testing, tuning and investigations.
- Packet based rate limiting is generally recommended for low rate subscriber based protocols whereas kbps rate limiting is recommended for higher rate infrastructure protocols (such as BGP).
- It is recommended to configure an exceed-action of low-priority for routing and infrastructure protocols. Marked packets are more likely to be discarded if there is congestion in the control plane of the router, but will get processed if there is no contention for CPU resources allowing for a work-conserving behavior in the CPM.
- In order to assign a different dist-cpu-protection policy to a specific MSAP (instance) or to all MSAPs for a specific msap policy, the operator can assign a new dist-cpu-protection policy to the MSAP policy and then use the **eval-msap** tool:

  A:nodeA>tools>perform# subscriber-mgmt eval-msap
  - eval-msap { policy <msap-policy-name> | msap <sap-id> }

  Note that any new MSAPs will also be assigned the new dist-cpu-protection policy.
- If needed, an operator can determine which subscriber is on a specific MSAP by using the **show service active-subs** command and then filtering ("| match") on the msap string.
- If protocol X is trusted, and using the "all-unspecified" protocol is not required, then simply avoid creating protocol X in the policy configuration.
- If protocol X is trusted, but the all-unspecified bucket is required, then there are two options:
  - → avoid creating protocol X so that it is treated as part of the all-unspecified bucket (but account for the packets from X in the all-unspecified rate and local-mon rate), or
  - → create protocol X and configure it to bypass.

Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs)

The software supports the configuration of Alcatel-Lucent-specific RADIUS attributes. These attributes are known as vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) and are discussed in RFC 2138. VSAs must be configured when RADIUS authorization is enabled. It is up to the vendor to specify the format of their VSA. The attribute-specific field is dependent on the vendor's definition of that attribute. The Alcatel-Lucent-defined attributes are encapsulated in a RADIUS vendor-specific attribute with the vendor ID field set to 6527, the vendor ID number.

Note that the PE-record entry is required in order to support the RADIUS Discovery for Layer 2 VPN feature. Note that a PE-record is only relevant if the RADIUS Discovery feature is used, not for the standard RADIUS setup.

The following RADIUS vendor-specific attributes (VSAs) are supported by Alcatel-Lucent.

- `timetra-access <ftp> <console> <both>` — This is a mandatory command that must be configured. This command specifies if the user has FTP and /or console (serial port, Telnet, and SSH) access.
- `timetra-profile <profile-name>` — When configuring this VSA for a user, it is assumed that the user profiles are configured on the local router and the following applies for local and remote authentication:

  1. The `authentication-order` parameters configured on the router must include the `local` keyword.
  2. The user name may or may not be configured on the router.
  3. The user must be authenticated by the RADIUS server
  4. Up to 8 valid profiles can exist on the router for a user. The sequence in which the profiles are specified is relevant. The most explicit matching criteria must be ordered first. The process stops when the first complete match is found.

  If all the above mentioned conditions are not met, then access to the router is denied and a failed login event/trap is written to the security log.
- `timetra-default-action <permit-all|deny-all|none>` — This is a mandatory command that must be configured even if the `timetra-cmd` VSA is not used. This command specifies the default action when the user has entered a command and no entry configured in the `timetra-cmd` VSA for the user resulted in a match condition.
- `timetra-cmd <match-string>` — Configures a command or command subtree as the scope for the match condition.

  The command and all subordinate commands in subordinate command levels are specified.

Other Security Features

Secure Shell (SSH)

Secure Shell Version 1 (SSH) is a protocol that provides a secure, encrypted Telnet-like connection to a router. A connection is always initiated by the client (the user). Authentication takes places by one of the configured authentication methods (local, RADIUS, or TACACS+). With authentication and encryption, SSH allows for a secure connection over an insecure network.

The OS allows you to configure Secure Shell (SSH) Version 2 (SSH2). SSH1 and SSH2 are different protocols and encrypt at different parts of the packets. SSH1 uses server as well as host keys to authenticate systems whereas SSH2 only uses host keys. SSH2 does not use the same networking implementation that SSH1 does and is considered a more secure, efficient, and portable version of SSH.

SSH runs on top of a transport layer (like TCP or IP), and provides authentication and encryption capabilities.

The OS has a global SSH server process to support inbound SSH and SCP sessions initiated by external SSH or SCP client applications. The SSH server supports SSHv1. Note that this server process is separate from the SSH and SCP client commands on the routers which initiate outbound SSH and SCP sessions.

Inbound SSH sessions are counted as inbound telnet sessions for the purposes of the maximum number of inbound sessions specified by Login Control. Inbound SCP sessions are counted as inbound ftp sessions by Login Control.

When SSH server is enabled, an SSH security key is generated. The key is only valid until either the node is restarted or the SSH server is stopped and restarted (unless the preserve-key option is configured for SSH). The key size is non-configurable and set at 1024 bits. When the server is enabled, both inbound SSH and SCP sessions will be accepted provided the session is properly authenticated.

When the global SSH server process is disabled, no inbound SSH or SCP sessions will be accepted.

When using SCP to copy files from an external device to the file system, the SCP server will accept either forward slash (“/”) or backslash (“\”) characters to delimit directory and/or filenames. Similarly, the SCP client application can use either slash or backslash characters, but not all SCP clients treat backslash characters as equivalent to slash characters. In particular, UNIX systems will often times interpret the backslash character as an “escape” character which does not get transmitted to the SCP server. For example, a destination

directory specified as “cf1:\dir1\file1” will be transmitted to the SCP server as “cf1:dir1file1” where the backslash escape characters are stripped by the SCP client system before transmission. On systems where the client treats the backslash like an “escape” character, a double backslash “\\” or the forward slash “/” can typically be used to properly delimit directories and the filename.

Two cipher lists, the client-cipher-list and the server-cipher-list, can be configured for negotiation of the best compatible ciphers between the the client and server. The two cipher lists can be created and managed under the security ssh sub menu. The client-cipher-list is used when SR OS is acting as ssh client and the server-cipher-list is used when the SR OS is acting as a server. The first cipher matched on the lists between the client and server is the preferred cipher for the session.

SSH PKI Authentication

The SR OS supports Secure Shell Version 2, but user authentication appears to be limited to using a username and password.

Note: SSHv1 is not supported when the node is running in FIPS-140-2 mode.

SSH also supports public key authentication whereby the client can provide a signed message that has been encrypted by his private key. As long as the server has been previously configured to know the client's public key, the server can authenticate the client.

Using Public Key authentication (also known as Public Key Infrastructure - PKI) can be more secure than the existing username/password method for a few reasons:

- A user will typical re-use the same password with multiple servers. If the password is compromised, the user must reconfigure the password on all affected servers.
- A password is not transmitted between the client and server using PKI. Instead the sensitive information (the private key) is kept on the client. Therefore it is less likely to be compromised.

This feature includes server side support for SSHv2 public key authentication. It does not include a key generation utility.

Support for PKI should be configured in the system level configuration where one or more public keys may be bound to a username. It should not affect any other system security or login functions.

Key Generation

Before SSH can be used with PKI, someone must generate a public/private key pair. This is typically supported by the SSH client software. For example, PuTTY supports a utility called PuTTYgen that will generate key pairs.

SSHv2 supports both RSA and DSA keys. The Digital Signature Algorithm is a U.S Federal Government standard for digital signatures. PuTTYGen can be used to generate either type of key. The SR OS currently supports only RSA keys.

Assume the client is using PuTTY. First the user generates a key pair using PuTTYgen. The user sets the key type (SSH-1 RSA, SS-2 RSA, or SSH-2 DSA) and sets the number of bits to be used for the key (default = 1024). The user can also configure a passphrase that will be used to store the key locally in encrypted form. If the passphrase is configured the user must enter the passphrase in order to use the private key. Thus, it is a password for the private key. If the passphrase is not used the key is stored in plaintext locally.

Next the user must configure the server to use his public key. This typically requires the user to add the public key to a file on the server. For example, if the server is using OpenSSH, the key must be added to the ssh/authorized_keys file. On the SR OS, the user can program the public Key via Telnet/SSH or SNMP.

Per Peer CPM Queuing

System-level security is crucial in service provider networks to address the increased threat of Denial-of-Service (DoS) attacks.

Control Processor Module Queuing (CPMQ) implements separate hardware-based queues which are allocated on a per-peer basis. CPMQ allocates a separate queue for each LDP and BGP peer and ensures that each queue is served in a round-robin fashion. This mechanism guarantees fair and “non-blocking” access to shared CPU resources across all peers. This would ensure, for example, that an LDP-based DoS attack from a given peer would be mitigated and compartmentalized so that not all CPU resources would be dedicated to the otherwise overwhelming control traffic sent by that specific peer.

CPMQ, using the “per-peer-queuing” command, ensures that service levels would not (or only partially be) impacted in case of an attack from a spoofed LDP or BGP peer IP address.

CPM Filters and Traffic Management

Alcatel-Lucent routers have traffic management and queuing hardware dedicated to protecting the control plane.

CPM/CFM filters are supported on the following platforms: 7950 XRS, 7750 SR-7/SR-12/SR-c12, and 7710 SR-c4/SR-c12. The filters can be used to drop or accept packets, as well as allocate dedicated hardware shaping (CPM) queues for traffic directed to the control processors.

CPM queueing is supported on the following platforms: 7950 XRS, 7750 SR-7/SR-12, and 7750 SR-c12.

CPM filters and queues control all traffic going in to the CPM from IOMs/XMAs, including all routing protocols. CPM filters apply to packets from all network and access ports, but not to packets from a management Ethernet port. CPM packet filtering and queuing is performed by network processor hardware using no resources on the main CPUs.

There are three filters that can be configured as part of the CPM filter policy: IP (v4) fitter, IPv6 filter and MAC filter.

The SROS filter implementation exits the filter when the first match is found and execute the actions according to the specified action. For this reason, entries must be sequenced correctly from most to least explicit. When both mac-filter and ip-filter/ipv6-filter are to be applied to a given traffic, mac-filter is applied first.

An entry of an IP(v4), IPv6, MAC CPM filters must have at least one match criteria defined to be active. A default action can be specified for CPM filter policy that applies to each of IP, IPv6, MAC filters that are in a **no shutdown** state as long as the CPM filter policy has at least one active filter entry in any of the IP(v4), IPv6, and MAC filters.

Exponential Login Backoff

A malicious user may attempt to gain CLI access by means of a dictionary attack using a script to automatically attempt to login as an “admin” user and using a dictionary list to test all possible passwords. Using the exponential-backoff feature in the **config>system>login-control** context the OS increases the delay between login attempts exponentially to mitigate attacks.

A malicious user may attempt to gain CLI access by means of a dictionary attack using a script to automatically attempt to login as an “admin” user and using a dictionary list to test all possible passwords. Using the exponential-backoff feature in the config>system>login-control context the OS increases the delay between login attempts exponentially to mitigate attacks.

When a user tries to login to a router using a Telnet or an SSH session, there are a limited number of attempts allowed to enter the correct password. The interval between the unsuccessful attempts change after each try (1, 2 and 4 seconds). If the system is configured for user lockout, then the user will be locked out when the number of attempts is exceeded.

However, if lockout is not configured, there are three password entry attempts allowed after the first failure, at fixed 1, 2 and 4 second intervals, in the first session, and then the session terminates. Users do not have an unlimited number of login attempts per session. After each failed password attempt, the wait period becomes longer until the maximum number of attempts is reached.

The OS terminates after four unsuccessful tries. A wait period will never be longer than 4 seconds. The periods are fixed and will restart in subsequent sessions.

Note that the **config>system>login-control>**[**no**] **exponential-backoff** command works in conjunction with **the config>system>security>password>attempts** command which is also a system wide configuration.

For example:

```
*A:ALA-48>config>system# security password attempts
  - attempts <count> [time <minutes1>] [lockout <minutes2>]
  - no attempts

 <count>              : [1..64]
 <minutes1>           : [0..60]
 <minutes2>           : [0..1440]
```

Exponential backoff applies to any user and by any login method such as console, SSH and Telnet.

Refer to Configuring Login Controls on page 98. The commands are described in Login, Telnet, SSH and FTP Commands on page 125.

User Lockout

When a user exceeds the maximum number of attempts allowed (the default is 3 attempts) during a certain period of time (the default is 5 minutes) the account used during those attempts will be locked out for a pre-configured lock-out period (the default is 10 minutes).

An security event log will be generated as soon as a user account has exceeded the number of allowed attempts and the **show>system>security>user** command can be used to display the total number of failed attempts per user.

The account will be automatically re-enabled as soon as the lock-out period has expired. The list of users who are currently locked-out can be displayed with *show system security user lockout*.

A lock-out for a specific user can be administratively cleared using the *admin user x clear-lockout*.

Encryption

Data Encryption Standard (DES) and Triple DES (3DES) are supported for encryption.

- DES is a widely-used method of data encryption using a private (secret) key. Both the sender and the receiver must know and use the same private key.
- 3DES is a more secure version of the DES protocol.

802.1x Network Access Control

The Alcatel-Lucent OS supports network access control of client devices (PCs, STBs, etc.) on an Ethernet network using the IEEE. 802.1x standard. 802.1x is known as Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) over a LAN network or EAPOL.

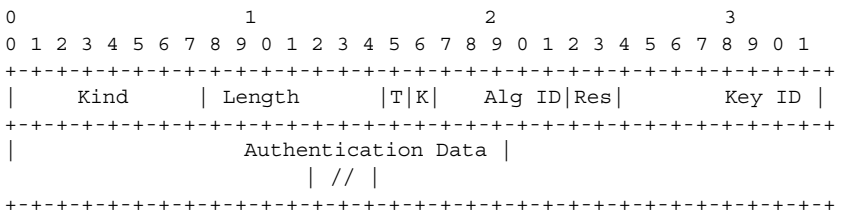
TCP Enhanced Authentication Option

The TCP Enhanced Authentication Option, currently covered in draft-bonica-tcp-auth-05.txt, *Authentication for TCP-based Routing and Management Protocols*, extends the previous MD5 authentication option to include the ability to change keys without tearing down the session, and allows for stronger authentication algorithms to be used.

The TCP Enhanced Authentication Option is a TCP extension that enhances security for BGP, LDP and other TCP-based protocols. This includes the ability to change keys in a BGP or LDP session seamlessly without tearing down the session. It is intended for applications where secure administrative access to both the end-points of the TCP connection is normally available.

TCP peers can use this extension to authenticate messages passed between one another. This strategy improves upon current practice, which is described in RFC 2385, *Protection of BGP Sessions via the TCP MD5 Signature Option*. Using this new strategy, TCP peers can update authentication keys during the lifetime of a TCP connection. TCP peers can also use stronger authentication algorithms to authenticate routing messages.

Packet Formats



Option Syntax

- Kind: 8 bits

  The Kind field identifies the TCP Enhanced Authentication Option. This value will be assigned by IANA.
- Length: 8 bits

  The Length field specifies the length of the TCP Enhanced Authentication Option, in octets. This count includes two octets representing the Kind and Length fields.

  The valid range for this field is from 4 to 40 octets, inclusive.

  For all algorithms specified in this memo the value will be 16 octets.
- T-Bit: 1 bit

  The T-bit specifies whether TCP Options were omitted from the TCP header for the purpose of MAC calculation. A value of 1 indicates that all TCP options other than the Extended Authentication Option were omitted. A value of 0 indicates that TCP options were included.

  The default value is 0.
- K-Bit: 1 bit

  This bit is reserved for future enhancement. Its value MUST be equal to zero.
- Alg ID: 6 bits

  The Alg ID field identifies the MAC algorithm.

- Res: 2 bits

  These bits are reserved. They MUST be set to zero.

  Key ID: 6 bits

  The Key ID field identifies the key that was used to generate the message digest.
- Authentication Data: Variable length
- The Authentication Data field contains data that is used to authenticate the TCP segment. This data includes, but need not be restricted to, a MAC. The length and format of the Authentication Data Field can be derived from the Alg ID.
- The Authentication for TCP-based Routing and Management Protocols draft provides and overview of the TCP Enhanced Authentication Option. The details of this feature are described in draft-bonica-tcp-auth-04.txt.

Keychain

The keychain mechanism allows for the creation of keys used to authenticate protocol communications. Each keychain entry defines the authentication attributes to be used in authenticating protocol messages from remote peers or neighbors, and it must include at least one key entry to be valid. Through the use of the keychain mechanism, authentication keys can be changed without affecting the state of the associated protocol adjacencies for OSPF, IS-IS, BGP, LDP, and RSVP-TE.

Each key within a keychain must include the following attributes for the authentication of protocol messages:

- key identifier
- authentication algorithm
- authentication key
- direction
- start time

In addition, additional attributes can be optionally specified, including:

- end time
- tolerance

Table 7 shows the mapping between these attributes and the CLI command to set them.

Table 7: Keychain Mapping

Definition	CLI
The key identifier expressed as an integer (0...63)	config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry
Authentication algorithm to use with key[i]	config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry with algorithm *algorithm* parameter. config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry with algorithm *algorithm* parameter. config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry with algorithm *algorithm* parameter.
Shared secret to use with key[i].	config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry with shared secret parameter config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry with shared secret parameter config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry with shared secret parameter

Table 7: Keychain Mapping (Continued)

Definition	CLI
A vector that determines whether the key[i] is to be used to generate MACs for inbound segments, outbound segments, or both.	config>system>security>keychain>direction
Start time from which key[i] can be used.	config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry>begin-time config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry >begin-time
End time after which key[i] cannot be used by sending TCPs.	Inferred by the begin-time of the next key (youngest key rule).
Start time from which key[i] can be used.	config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry>begin-time config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry>tolerance config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry >begin-time config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry >tolerance
End time after which key[i] cannot be used	config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry>end-time

The following table details which authentication algorithm can be used in association with specific routing protocols.

Table 8 shows the mapping between these attributes and the CLI command to set them.

Table 8: Security Algorithm Support Per Protocol

Protocol	Clear Text	MD5	HMAC-MD5	HMAC-SHA-1-96	HMAC-SHA-1	HMAC-SHA-256	AES-128-CMAC-96
OSPF	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
IS-IS	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No
RSVP	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No
BGP	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	Yes
LDP	No	Yes	No	Yes	No	No	Yes

Configuration Notes

This section describes security configuration caveats.

General

- If a RADIUS or a TACACS+ server is not configured, then password, profiles, and user access information must be configured on each router in the domain.
- If a RADIUS authorization is enabled, then VSAs must be configured on the RADIUS server.

Configuring Security with CLI

This section provides information to configure security using the command line interface.

Topics in this section include:

- Setting Up Security Attributes on page 66
  - → Configuring Authorization on page 67
  - → Configuring Authorization on page 67
  - → Configuring Accounting on page 69
- Configuration Tasks on page 71
- Security Configuration Procedures on page 72
  - → Configuring Management Access Filters on page 72
  - → Configuring CPM Filters Policy on page 74
  - → Configuring Profiles on page 77
  - → Configuring Users on page 83
  - → Copying and Overwriting Users and Profiles on page 85
  - → Enabling SSH on page 97
  - → Configuring Login Controls on page 98
  - → RADIUS Configurations on page 89
    - – Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 89
    - – Configuring RADIUS Authorization on page 90
    - – Configuring RADIUS Accounting on page 91
  - → TACACS+ Configurations on page 94
    - – Enabling TACACS+ Authentication on page 94
    - – Configuring TACACS+ Authorization on page 95
    - – Configuring TACACS+ Accounting on page 96

Setting Up Security Attributes

Configuring Authentication

Refer to the following sections to configure authentication:

- Local authentication

  → Configuring Profiles on page 77

  → Configuring Users on page 83

- RADIUS authentication (only)

  By default, authentication is enabled locally. Perform the following tasks to configure security on each participating router:

  → Configuring Profiles on page 77

  → Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 89

  → Configuring Users on page 83

- RADIUS authentication

  To implement only RADIUS authentication, *with* authorization, perform the following tasks on each participating router:

  → Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 89

  → Configuring RADIUS Authorization on page 90

- TACACS+ authentication

  To implement only TACACS+ authentication, perform the following tasks on each participating router:

  → Configuring Profiles on page 77

  → Configuring Users on page 83

  → Enabling TACACS+ Authentication on page 94

Configuring Authorization

Refer to the following sections to configure authorization.

- Local authorization

  For local authorization, configure these tasks on each participating router:

  → Configuring Profiles on page 77

  → Configuring Users on page 83

- RADIUS authorization (only)

  For RADIUS authorization (without authentication), configure these tasks on each participating router:

  → Configuring RADIUS Authorization on page 90

  → Configuring Profiles on page 77

  For RADIUS authorization, VSAs must be configured on the RADIUS server. See Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) on page 52.

- RADIUS authorization

  For RADIUS authorization (with authentication), configure these tasks on each participating router:

  → Configuring RADIUS Authorization on page 90

  For RADIUS authorization, VSAs must be configured on the RADIUS server. See Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) on page 52.

  → Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 89

  → Configuring Profiles on page 77

- TACACS+ authorization (only)

  For TACACS+ authorization (without authentication), configure these tasks on each participating router:

  → Configuring TACACS+ Authorization on page 95

- TACACS+ authorization

  For TACACS+ authorization (with authentication), configure these tasks on each participating router:

  → Enabling TACACS+ Authentication on page 94

  → Configuring TACACS+ Authorization on page 95

Configuring Accounting

Refer to the following sections to configure accounting.

- Local accounting is not implemented. For information about configuring accounting policies, refer to Configuring Logging with CLI on page 405
- Configuring RADIUS Accounting on page 91
- Configuring TACACS+ Accounting on page 96

Security Configurations

This section provides information to configure security and configuration examples of configuration tasks.

To implement security features, configure the following components:

- Management access filters and CPM filters
- Profiles
- User access parameters
- Password management parameters
- Enable RADIUS and/or TACACS+
  - → One to five RADIUS and/or TACACS+ servers
  - → RADIUS and/or TACACS+ parameters

Configuration Tasks

This section provides a brief overview of the tasks that must be performed to configure security and provides the CLI commands. Table 9 depicts the capabilities of authentication, authorization, and accounting configurations. For example, authentication can be enabled locally and on RADIUS and TACACS+ servers. Authorization can be executed locally, on a RADIUS server, or on a TACACS+ server. Accounting can be performed on a RADIUS or TACACS+ server.

Table 9: Security Configuration Requirements

Authentication	Authorization	Accounting
Local	Local	None
RADIUS	Local and RADIUS	RADIUS
TACACS+	Local	TACACS+

Security Configuration Procedures

- Configuring Management Access Filters on page 72
- Configuring CPM Filters Policy on page 74
- Configuring Profiles on page 77
- Configuring Users on page 83
- Copying and Overwriting Users and Profiles on page 85
- Enabling SSH on page 97

Configuring Management Access Filters

Creating and implementing management access filters is optional. Management access filters are software-based filters that control all traffic going in to the , including all routing protocols. They apply to packets from all ports. The filters can be used to restrict management of the router by other nodes outside either specific (sub)networks or through designated ports. By default, there are no filters associated with security options. The management access filter and entries must be explicitly created on each router. These filters also apply to the management Ethernet port.

The OS implementation exits the filter when the first match is found and execute the actions according to the specified action. For this reason, entries must be sequenced correctly from most to least explicit. When both **mac-filter** and **ip-filter/ipv6-filter** are to be applied to a given traffic, **mac-filter** is applied first.

An entry may not have any match criteria defined (in which case, everything matches) but must have at least an action keyword specified to be considered active . Entries without the action keyword are considered incomplete and will be rendered inactive. Management Access Filter must have at least one active entry defined for the filter to be active.

The following is an example of a management access filter configuration that accepts packets matching the criteria specified in IP, IPv6 and MAC entries. Non-matching packets are denied for IPv4 filter and permitted for IPv6 and MAC filters.

```
*A:Dut-C>config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter# info
----------------------------------------------
                ip-filter
                    default-action deny
                    entry 10
                        description "Accept SSH from mgmnt subnet"
                        src-ip 192.168.5.0/26
                        protocol tcp
                        dst-port 22 65535
                        action permit
                    exit
                exit
```

```
                ipv6-filter
                    default-action permit
                    entry 10
                        src-ip 3FFE::1:1/128
                        next-header rsvp
                        log
                        action deny
                    exit
                exit
                mac-filter
                    default-action permit
                    entry 12
                        match frame-type ethernet_II
                            svc-id 1
                            src-mac 00:01:01:01:01:01 ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
                        exit
                        action permit
                    exit
                exit
-------------------------------------------
*A:Dut-C>config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter#
```

Configuring CPM Filters Policy

The following displays an CPM filter configuration example:

```
*A:Dut-C>config>sys>security>cpm-filter# info
ip-filter
                    shutdown
                    entry 100 create
                        action queue 50
                        log 110
                        match protocol icmp
                            fragment true
                            icmp-type dest-unreachable
                            icmp-code host-unreachable
                            multiple-option false
                            option-present true
                            src-ip 192.100.2.0/24
                        exit
                    exit
                ipv6-filter
                    shutdown
                    entry 30 create
                        action drop
                        log 190
                        match next-header tcp
                            dscp ef
                            dst-ip 3FFE::2:2/128
                            src-port 100 100
                            tcp-syn true
                            tcp-ack false
                            flow-label 10
                        exit
                    exit
                mac-filter
                    shutdown
                    entry 40 create
                        action accept
                        log 101
                        match frame-type ethernet_II
                            svc-id 12
                            dst-mac 00:03:03:03:01:01 ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
                            etype 0x8902
                            cfm-opcode gt 100
                        exit
                    exit
                exit
*A:Dut-C>config>sys>security>cpm-filter#
```

CPM queues can be used to provide rate limit capabilities for traffic destined to CPM as described in an earlier section of this document.

IPSec Certificates Parameters

The following is an example to importing a certificate from a pem format:

```
*A:SR-7/Dut-A# admin certificate import type cert input cf3:/pre-import/R1-0cert.pem out-
put R1-0cert.der format pem
```

The following is an example for exporting a certificate to pem format:

```
*A:SR-7/Dut-A#  admin certificate export type cert input R1-0cert.der output cf3:/R1-
0cert.pem format pem
```

The following displays an example of profile output:

```
*A:SR-7/Dut-A>config>system>security>pki# info
----------------------------------------------
                ca-profile "Root" create
                    description "Root CA"
                    cert-file "R1-0cert.der"
                    crl-file "R1-0crl.der"
                    no shutdown
                exit
----------------------------------------------
*A:SR-7/Dut-A>config>system>security>pki#
```

The following displays an example of an ike-policy with cert-auth output:

```
:SR-7/Dut-A>config>ipsec>ike-policy# info
----------------------------------------------
            ike-version 2
            auth-method cert-auth
            own-auth-method psk
----------------------------------------------
```

The following displays an example of a static lan-to-lan configuration using cert-auth:

interface "VPRN1" tunnel create

```
        sap tunnel-1.private:1 create
            ipsec-tunnel "Sanity-1" create
                security-policy 1
               local-gateway-address 30.1.1.13 peer 50.1.1.15 delivery-service 300
                dynamic-keying
                    ike-policy 1
                    pre-shared-key "Sanity-1"
                    transform 1
                    cert
                        trust-anchor "R1-0"
                        cert "M2cert.der"
                        key "M2key.der"
                    exit
                exit
                no shutdown
            exit
        exit
    exit
```

Configuring Profiles

Profiles are used to deny or permit access to a hierarchical branch or specific commands. Profiles are referenced in a user configuration. A maximum of sixteen user profiles can be defined. A user can participate in up to sixteen profiles. Depending on the the authorization requirements, passwords are configured locally or on the RADIUS server.

The following example displays a user profile output:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
            profile "ghost"
                default-action permit-all
                entry 1
                    match "configure"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 2
                    match "show"
                exit
                entry 3
                    match "exit"
                exit
            exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Parameters

Matching in authorization profiles allows the use of parameters and optional parameters. A set of angle brackets <...> indicates matching on a parameter and/or optional parameter.

The following rules govern parameter matching in the CLI:

Rule 1

Any parameter and/or optional parameter can be present in the match string.

Rule 2

When a parameter and/or optional parameter is present in the user-profile match string, all parameters or optional parameters to its left must also be stated/present.

Rule 3

The user can either specifically state or completely omit unnamed parameters in the match string, as required. However, all unnamed parameter in the CLI command must be present in the match string when matching on an unnamed parameter is used.

For example, consider the **OSPF** command:

```
*A:SwSim14# configure router ospf
  - no ospf [<ospf-instance>]
  - ospf [<ospf-instance>] [<router-id>]

<ospf-instance>      : [0..31]
<router-id>          : <ip-address>
```

In this case, the user can match on OSPF to allow or deny the command per user-profile, as follows:

```
Match "configure router ospf" action deny
```

Or the user can decide to only allow a certain OSPF instance for a user, as follows:

```
Match "configure router ospf <ospf-instance-value> <router-id-value>"
```

Note that although the user's matching is based on <ospf-instance-value> that is "an unnamed value", all other unnamed values in the OSPF command (such as the <router-id-value>) must also be present in the match string.

Rule 4

When multiple unnamed parameters are present in the match string, the parameters must be provided in the correct order as described in the command **help** to generate the correct match behavior. For example, using the order of parameters described in the **OSPF** command usage in Rule 3 above, use the following statement for a user-profile match:

```
match "configure router ospf <ospf-instance-value> <router-id-value>
```

The desired match behavior might not be achieved if the unnamed parameters <ospf-instance-value> and <router-id-value> are out of order with respect to the help screen.

The following displays a parameter matching output:

```
config>system>security>profile# info
                entry 10
                    match "show router <22> route-table "
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 20
                    match "configure service vprn <22>"
                    action read-only
                exit
                entry 30
                    match "show service id <22>"
```

```
        action permit
    exit
    entry 40
        match "configure router interface <system>"
        action deny
    exit
```

Wildcards

In addition, parameter configuration is facilitated by the availability of wildcards (.*) in the OAM subtree and for commands such as “ping”, “trace-route” and “m-trace”. For example, consider the following command:

```
ping <ip-address> router 10
```

Instead of listing all the permitted IP addresses in the policy, as shown in the following example,

```
Match ping <10.0.0.1> router <10>
     Action permit
Match ping <10.0.0.2> router <10>
     Action permit
```

The wildcard<ip-address> parameter allows a a simpler search criterion. In the following example, the use of <.*> wildcard enables you to ping any address in the router 10 context, that is, any address in VRF 10:

```
Match ping <.*> router <10>
     Action permit
```

Note: While wildcards are available and allowed for all parameters in the OAM subtree, Alcatel-Lucent recommends that you must exercise caution when using wildcards and limit their use to commands such as ‘ping’, ‘trace-route’ and ‘m-trace’. The use of wildcards in certain formats may be a security concern and result in making the IP addresses in the VRF, including the base routing table, unreachable. Or it could allow the customer to ping any IP address in the VRF, including the base routing table. This may be a potential security concern and should be avoided. For example, the following usage is not advised:

```
Match ping <.*> router <.*>
     Action permit
```

CLI Session Resource Management

SR-OS has the capability to manage telnet/ssh sessions per user and at a higher level per system. At the system level, the user can configure a **cli-session-group** for different customer priorities. The **cli-session-group** is a container that sets the maximum number of CLI sessions for a class of customers, with a unique session limit for each customer. For example, as depicted in Figure 7, “Gold” category customers can have a **cli-session-group** that allows them more telnet/ssh sessions compared to “Silver” category customers.

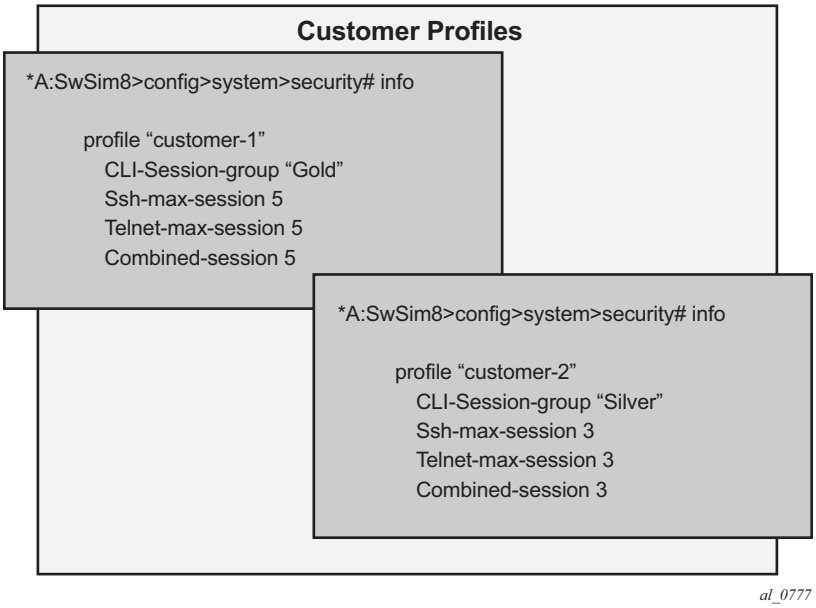


Figure 7: cli-session-group for a customer classes

The configured **cli-session-group** can be assigned to user-profiles. At the user profile level, each profile can be configured with its own max ssh/telnet session and it will be policed/restricted by the higher order **cli-session-group** that is assigned to it.

As depicted in Figure 8, the final picture is a hierarchical configuration with top-level cli-session-groups that control each customer’s total number of ssh/telnet sessions and the user-profile for each user for that customer.

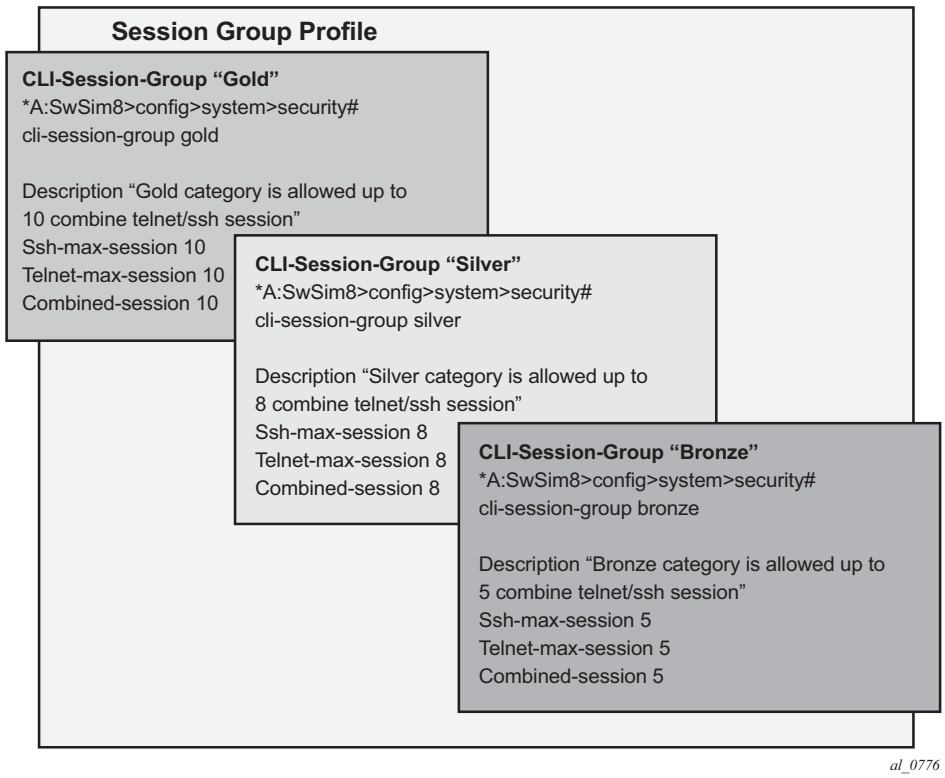


Figure 8: Heirarchy of cli-session-group profiles

Every profile will subtract one from it's corresponding **max-session** when a TELNET or SSH session is established in the following cases:

- where multiple profiles are configured under a user
- where multiple profiles arrive from different AAA servers (Local Profile, Radius Profile or Tacacs Profile)

The first profile to run out of corresponding **max-session** will limit future TELNET or SSH sessions. In other words, while each profile for the user can have its independent **max-session**, only the lowest one will be honored. If the profile with the lowest **max-session** is removed, the next lower profile **max-session** will be honored and so on. All profiles for a user are updated when a TELNET or SSH session is established.

For information about login control, see Configuring Login Controls on page 98.

Use the following CLI commands to configure CLI session resources:

CLI Syntax: `config>system>security>profile <name>`
`[no] ssh-max-sessions session-limit`

```
[no] telnet-max-sessions session-limit
[no]combined-max-session session-limit
[no] cli-session-group session-group-name
```

Configuring Users

Configure access parameters for individual users. For user, define the login name for the user and, optionally, information that identifies the user. The following displays a user configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
            user "49ers"
                password "$2y$10$pFoehOg/tCbBMPDJ/kqpu.8af0AoVGY2xsR7WFqyn5fVTnwRzGmOK"
                access console ftp snmp
                restricted-to-home
                console
                    member "default"
                    member "ghost"
                exit
            exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Configuring Keychains

The following displays a keychain configuration.

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
            keychain "abc"
                direction
                    bi
                        entry 1 key "ZcvSElJzJx/wBZ9biCtOVQJ9YZQvVU.S" hash2 alg
orithm aes-128-cmac-96
                            begin-time 2006/12/18 22:55:20
                        exit
                    exit
                exit
            exit
            keychain "basasd"
                direction
                    uni
                        receive
                            entry 1 key "Ee7xdKlYO2DOm7v3IJv/84LIu96R2fZh" hash2
 algorithm aes-128-cmac-96
                                tolerance forever
                            exit
                        exit
                    exit
                exit
            exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Copying and Overwriting Users and Profiles

You can copy a profile or user. You can copy a profile or user or overwrite an existing profile or user. The **overwrite** option must be specified or an error occurs if the destination profile or user name already exists.

User

CLI Syntax: config>system>security# copy {user *source-user* | profile *source-profile*} to *destination* [overwrite]

Example:
```
config>system>security# copy user testuser to testuserA
MINOR: CLI User "testuserA" already exists - use overwrite
flag.
config>system>security#
config>system>security# copy user testuser to testuserA
overwrite
config>system>security#
```

The following output displays the copied user configurations:

```
A:ALA-12>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
            user "testuser"
                password "$2y$10$pFoehOg/tCbBMPDJ/kqpu.8af0AoVGY2xsR7WFqyn5fVTnwRzGmOK"
                access snmp
                snmp
                    authentication hash md5 e14672e71d3e96e7a1e19472527ee969 privacy none
                    group "testgroup"
                exit
            exit
            user "testuserA"
                password ""
                access snmp
                console
                    new-password-at-login
                exit
                snmp
                    authentication hash md5 e14672e71d3e96e7a1e19472527ee969 privacy none
                    group "testgroup"
                exit
            exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>system>security# info
```

Note that the cannot-change-password flag is not replicated when a copy user command is performed. A new-password-at-login flag is created instead.

```
A:ALA-12>config>system>security>user# info
----------------------------------------------
     password "$2y$10$pFoehOg/tCbBMPDJ/kqpu.8af0AoVGY2xsR7WFqyn5fVTnwRzGmOK"
     access snmp
     console
          cannot-change-password
     exit
     snmp
          authentication hash md5 e14672e71d3e96e7a1e19472527ee969 privacy none
          group "testgroup"
     exit
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>system>security>user# exit
A:ALA-12>config>system>security# user testuserA
A:ALA-12>config>system>security>user# info
----------------------------------------------
     password ""
     access snmp
     console
          new-password-at-login
     exit
     snmp
          authentication hash md5 e14672e71d3e96e7a1e19472527ee969 privacy none
          group "testgroup"
     exit
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>system>security>user#
```

Profile

CLI Syntax: config>system>security# copy {user *source-user* | profile *source-profile*} to *destination* [overwrite]

Example: config>system>security# copy profile default to testuser

The following output displays the copied profiles:

```
A:ALA-49>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
A:ALA-49>config>system>security# info detail
----------------------------------------------
...
            profile "default"
                default-action none
                entry 10
                    no description
                    match "exec"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 20
                    no description
                    match "exit"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 30
                    no description
                    match "help"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 40
                    no description
                    match "logout"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 50
                    no description
                    match "password"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 60
                    no description
                    match "show config"
                    action deny
                exit
                entry 70
                    no description
                    match "show"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 80
                    no description
                    match "enable-admin"
```

```
                    action permit
                exit
            exit
            profile "testuser"
                default-action none
                entry 10
                    no description
                    match "exec"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 20
                    no description
                    match "exit"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 30
                    no description
                    match "help"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 40
                    no description
                    match "logout"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 50
                    no description
                    match "password"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 60
                    no description
                    match "show config"
                    action deny
                exit
                entry 70
                    no description
                    match "show"
                    action permit
                exit
                entry 80
                    no description
                    match "enable-admin"
                    action permit
                exit
            exit
            profile "administrative"
                default-action permit-all exit
...
-------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>system>security#
```

RADIUS Configurations

- Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 89
- Configuring RADIUS Authorization on page 90
- Configuring RADIUS Accounting on page 91
- Configuring 802.1x RADIUS Policies on page 92

Configuring RADIUS Authentication

RADIUS is disabled by default and must be explicitly enabled. The mandatory commands to enable RADIUS on the local router are **radius** and `server` *`server-index`* `address` *`ip-address`* `secret` *`key`*.

Also, the system IP address must be configured in order for the RADIUS client to work. See Configuring a System Interface of the 7950 XRS Router Configuration Guide.

The other commands are optional. The server command adds a RADIUS server and configures the RADIUS server's IP address, index, and key values. The index determines the sequence in which the servers are queried for authentication requests.

On the local router, use the following CLI commands to configure RADIUS authentication:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
    radius
        port port
        retry count
        server server-index address ip-address secret key
        timeout seconds
        no shutdown
```

The following displays a RADIUS authentication configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
               retry 5
               timeout 5
               server 1 address 10.10.10.103 secret "test1"
               server 2 address 10.10.0.1 secret "test2"
               server 3 address 10.10.0.2 secret "test3"
               server 4 address 10.10.0.3 secret "test4"
...
----------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Configuring RADIUS Authorization

In order for RADIUS authorization to function, RADIUS authentication *must* be enabled first. See Configuring RADIUS Authentication on page 89.

In addition to the local configuration requirements, VSAs must be configured on the RADIUS server. See Vendor-Specific Attributes (VSAs) on page 52.

On the local router, use the following CLI commands to configure RADIUS authorization:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
    radius
        authorization
```

The following displays a RADIUS authorization configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
            radius
                authorization
                retry 5
                timeout 5
                server 1 address 10.10.10.103 secret "test1"
                server 2 address 10.10.0.1 secret "test2"
                server 3 address 10.10.0.2 secret "test3"
                server 4 address 10.10.0.3 secret "test4"
            exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Configuring RADIUS Accounting

On the local router, use the following CLI commands to configure RADIUS accounting:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
    radius
        accounting
```

The following displays RADIUS accounting configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
...
           radius
               shutdown
               authorization
               accounting
               retry 5
               timeout 5
               server 1 address 10.10.10.103 secret "test1"
               server 2 address 10.10.0.1 secret "test2"
               server 3 address 10.10.0.2 secret "test3"
               server 4 address 10.10.0.3 secret "test4"
           exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Configuring 802.1x RADIUS Policies

Use the following CLI commands to configure generic authentication parameters for clients using 802.1x EAPOL. Additional parameters are configured per Ethernet port. Refer to the 7950 XRS Interface Configuration Guide

To configure generic parameters for 802.1x authentication, enter the following CLI syntax.

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
 dot1x
    radius-plcy policy-name
       server server-index address ip-address secret key [port
          port]
       source-address ip-address
       no shutdown
```

The following displays a 802.1x configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
            dot1x
                radius-plcy "dot1x_plcy" create
                   server 1 address 1.1.1.1 port 65535 secret "a"
                   server 2 address 1.1.1.2 port 6555 secret "a"
                   source-address 1.1.1.255
                no shutdown
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system#
```

Configuring CPU Protection Policies

For more information about CPU protection, see “CPU Protection” and “Monitoring Attacks on the 7750 SR” sections in *SR OS Security Best Practices*.

TACACS+ Configurations

- Enabling TACACS+ Authentication on page 94
- Configuring TACACS+ Authorization on page 95
- Configuring TACACS+ Accounting on page 96

Enabling TACACS+ Authentication

To use TACACS+ authentication on the router, configure one or more TACACS+ servers on the network.

Use the following CLI commands to configure profiles:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
        tacplus
           server server-index address ip-address secret key
           timeout seconds
           no shutdown
```

The following displays a TACACS+ authentication configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>tacplus# info
----------------------------------------------
               timeout 5
               server 1 address 10.10.0.5 secret "test1"
               server 2 address 10.10.0.6 secret "test2"
               server 3 address 10.10.0.7 secret "test3"
               server 4 address 10.10.0.8 secret "test4"
               server 5 address 10.10.0.9 secret "test5"
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>tacplus#
```

Configuring TACACS+ Authorization

In order for TACACS+ authorization to function, TACACS+ authentication *must* be enabled first. See Enabling TACACS+ Authentication on page 94.

On the local router, use the following CLI commands to configure RADIUS authorization:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
    tacplus
        authorization
        no shutdown
```

The following displays a TACACS+ authorization configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>tacplus# info
----------------------------------------------
                authorization
                timeout 5
                server 1 address 10.10.0.5 secret "test1"
                server 2 address 10.10.0.6 secret "test2"
                server 3 address 10.10.0.7 secret "test3"
                server 4 address 10.10.0.8 secret "test4"
                server 5 address 10.10.0.9 secret "test5"
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>tacplus#
```

Configuring TACACS+ Accounting

On the local router, use the following CLI commands to configure TACACS+ accounting:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
    tacplus
        accounting
```

The following displays a TACACS+ accounting configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>tacplus# info
----------------------------------------------
        accounting
        authorization
        timeout 5
        server 1 address 10.10.0.5 secret "test1"
        server 2 address 10.10.0.6 secret "test2"
        server 3 address 10.10.0.7 secret "test3"
        server 4 address 10.10.0.8 secret "test4"
        server 5 address 10.10.0.9 secret "test5"
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>tacplus#
```

Enabling SSH

Use the SSH command to configure the SSH server as SSH1, SSH2 or both. The default is SSH2 (`SSH version 2`). This command should only be enabled or disabled when the SSH server is disabled. This setting should not be changed while the SSH server is running since the actual change only takes place after SSH is disabled or enabled.

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security
 ssh
    preserve-key
    no server-shutdown
    version ssh-version
```

The following displays a SSH server configuration as both SSH and SSH2 using a host-key:

```
A:sim1>config>system>security>ssh# info
----------------------------------------------
               preserve-key
               version 1-2
----------------------------------------------
A:sim1>config>system>security>ssh#
```

Configuring Login Controls

Configure login control parameters for console, Telnet, and FTP sessions.

To configure login controls, enter the following CLI syntax.

CLI Syntax:

```
config>system
            login-control
               exponential-backoff
               ftp
                  inbound-max-sessions value
               telnet
                  inbound-max-sessions value
                  outbound-max-sessions value
               idle-timeout {minutes |disable}
               pre-login-message login-text-string [name]
               login-banner
               motd {url url-prefix: source-url|text motd-text-string}
```

The following displays a login control configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system# info
----------------------------------------------
...
       login-control
           ftp
               inbound-max-sessions 5
           exit
           telnet
               inbound-max-sessions 7
               outbound-max-sessions 2
           exit
           idle-timeout 1440
           pre-login-message "Property of Service Routing Inc. Unauthorized access prohib-
ited."
           motd text "Notice to all users: Software upgrade scheduled 3/2 1:00 AM"
       exit
     no exponential-backoff
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system#
```

Security Command Reference

Command Hierarchies

Configuration Commands

- Security Commands
  - LLDP Commands on page 100
  - Management Access Filter Commands on page 101
  - CLI Script Authorization Commands on page 102
  - CPM Filter Commands on page 102
  - CPM Queue Commands on page 106
  - CPU Protection Commands on page 107
  - Distributed CPU Protection Commands on page 108
  - Security Password Commands on page 109
  - Profile Commands on page 110
  - CLI Session Commands on page 110
  - RADIUS Commands on page 111
  - SSH Commands on page 111
  - TACPLUS Commands on page 111
  - User Commands on page 112
  - User Template Commands on page 112
  - Dot1x Commands on page 112
  - Keychain Commands on page 113
  - TTL Security Commands on page 113
- Login Control Commands on page 114
- Show Commands on page 115
- Clear Commands on page 116
- Debug Commands on page 116
- Tools Commands on page 116

Security Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — copy {user source-user | profile source-profile} to destination [overwrite]
            — [no] ftp-server
            — hash-control [read-version {1 | 2 | all}] [write-version {1 | 2}]
            — no hash-control
            — source-address
                — application app [ip-int-name | ip-address]
                — no application app
                — application6 app ipv6-address
                — no application6
            — [no] telnet-server
            —
```

LLDP Commands

```
configure
    — system
        — lldp
            — message-fast-tx time
            — no message-fast-tx
            — message-fast-tx-init count
            — no message-fast-tx-init
            — notification-interval time
            — no notification-interval
            — reinit-delay time
            — no reinit-delay
            — tx-credit-max count
            — no tx-credit-max
            — tx-hold-multiplier multiplier
            — no tx-hold-multiplier
            — tx-interval interval
            — no tx-interval
```

Management Access Filter Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] management-access-filter
                — [no] ip-filter
                    — default-action {permit | deny
                    — [no] entry entry-id
                        — action {permit | deny | deny-host-unreachable}
                        — no action
                        — description description-string
                        — no description
                        — dst-port value [mask]
                        — no dst-port
                        — [no] log
                        — protocol  protocol-id
                        — no protocol
                        — router {router-instance}
                        — no router
                        — src-ip {ip-prefix/mask | ip-prefix netmask}
                        — no src-ip
                        — src-port {port-id | cpm | lag lag-id }
                        — no src-port
                        — src-port old-entry-number new-entry-number
                    — renum old-entry-number new-entry-number
                    — [no] shutdown
                — [no] ipv6-filter
                    — default-action {permit | deny | deny-host-unreachable}
                    — [no] entry entry-id
                        — action {permit | deny | deny-host-unreachable}
                        — no action
                        — description description-string
                        — no description
                        — dst-port value [mask]
                        — no dst-port
                        — flow-label value
                        — no flow-label
                        — [no] log
                        — next-header next-header
                        — no next-header
                        — router {router-instance}
                        — no router
                        — src-ip {ip-prefix/mask | ip-prefix netmask}
                        — no src-ip
                        — src-port {port-id | cpm | lag lag-id }
                        — no src-port
                    — renum old-entry-number new-entry-number
                    — [no] shutdown
                — [no] mac-filter
                    — default-action {permit | deny}
                    — [no] entry entry-id
                        — action {permit | deny | deny-host-unreachable}
                        — no action
```

```
                                    — description description-string
                                    — no description
                                    — [no] log
                                    — match frame-type frame-type
                                    — no match
                                        — cfm-opcode {lt | gt | eq} opcode
                                        — cfm-opcode range start end
                                        — no cfm-opcode
                                        — dot1p dot1p-value [dot1p-mask]
                                        — dsap dsap-value [dsap-mask]
                                        — dst-mac ieee-address [ieee-address-mask]
                                        — no dst-mac
                                        — etype 0x0600..0xffff
                                        — no etype
                                        — snap-oui {zero | non-zero}
                                        — snap-pid snap-pid
                                        — no snap-pid
                                        — src-mac ieee-address [ieee-address-mask]
                                        — no src-mac
                                        — ssap ssap-value [ssap-mask]
                                        — no ssap
                                        — svc-id service-id
                                        — no svc-id
                                — renum old-entry-number new-entry-number
                                — [no] shutdown
```

CLI Script Authorization Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — cli-script
                — authorization
                    — cron
                        — cli-user user-name
                        — [no] cli-user
                    — vsd
                        — cli-user user-name
                        — [no] cli-user
                    — event-handler
                        — cli-user user-name
                        — no cli-user
```

CPM Filter Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] cpm-filter
                — default-action {accept | drop}
                — [no] ip-filter
                    — [no] entry entry-id
                        — action [accept | drop | queue queue-id]}
                        — no action
                        — description description-string
                        — no description
```

```
            — log log-id
            — no log
            — match [protocol protocol-id]
            — no match
                — dscp dscp-name
                — no dscp
                — dst-ip {ip-address/mask | ip-address netmask | ip-
                  prefix-list prefix-list-name}
                — no dst-ip
                — dst-port [tcp/udp port-number] [mask]
                — no dst-port
                — fragment {true | false}
                — no fragment
                — icmp-code icmp-code
                — no icmp-code
                — icmp-type icmp-type
                — no icmp-type
                — ip-option [ip-option-value] [ip-option-mask]
                — no ip-option
                — multiple-option {true | false}
                — no multiple-option
                — option-present {true | false}
                — no option-present
                — port port-number
                — port -list port-list-name
                — port-range start end
                — no port
                — router
                — src-ip {ip-address/mask | ip-address netmask | ip-
                  prefix-list prefix-list-name}
                — no src-ip
                — src-port[src-port-number] [mask]
                — no src-port
                — tcp-ack {true | false}
                — no tcp-ack
                — tcp-syn {true | false}
                — no tcp-syn
            — renum old-entry-id new-entry-id
            — [no] shutdown
    — [no] ipv6-filter
        — [no] entry entry-id
            — action [accept | drop | queue queue-id]}
            — no action
            — description description-string
            — no description
            — log log-id
            — no log
            — match [next-header next-header]
            — no match
                — dscp dscp-name
                — no dscp
                — dst-ip ipv6-address/prefix-length
                — dst-ip ipv6-prefix-list ipv6-prefix-list-name
                — no dst-ip
                — dst-port [tcp/udp port-number] [mask]
```

- **dst-port port-list** *port-list-name*
- **dst-port range** *tcp/udp port-number tcp/udp port-number*
- **no dst-port**
- **flow-label** *value*
- **no flow-label**
- **fragment** {**true** | **false**}
- **no fragment**
- **hop-by-hop-opt** {**true** | **false**}
- **no hop-by-hop-opt**
- **icmp-code** *icmp-code*
- **no icmp-code**
- **icmp-type** *icmp-type*
- **no icmp-type**
- **port** *tcp/udp port-number* [*mask*]
- **port port-list** *port-list-name*
- **port range** *start end*
- **no port**
- **router service-name** *service-name*
- **router** *router-instance*
- **no router**
- **src-ip** [*ipv6-address/prefix-length*] [**ipv6-prefix-list** *ipv6-prefix-list-name*]
- **no src-ip**
- **src-port** [*src-port-number*] [*mask*]
- **no src-port**
- **tcp-ack** {**true** | **false**}
- **no tcp-ack**
- **tcp-syn** {**true** | **false**}
- **no tcp-syn**

- **renum** *old-entry-id new-entry-id*
- [**no**] **shutdown**

- [**no**] **mac-filter**
  - [**no**] **entry** *entry-id*
    - **action** [**accept** | **drop** | **queue** *queue-id*]}
    - **no action**
    - **description** *description-string*
    - **no description**
    - **log** *log-id*
    - **no log**
    - **match** [**frame-type** *frame-type*]
    - **no match**
      - **cfm-opcode** {**lt** | **gt** | **eq**} *opcode*
      - **cfm-opcode range** *start end*
      - **no cfm-opcode**
      - **dsap** *dsap-value* [*dsap-mask*]
      - **dst-mac** *ieee-address* [*ieee-address-mask*]
      - **no dst-mac**
      - **etype** *0x0600..0xffff*
      - **no etype**
      - **src-mac** *ieee-address* [*ieee-address-mask*]
      - **no src-mac**
      - **ssap** *ssap-value* [*ssap-mask*]

- **no ssap**
- **svc-id** *service-id*
- **no svc-id**

— **renum** *old-entry-number new-entry-number*
— [**no**] **shutdown**

CPM Queue Commands

config
- **system**
  - **security**
    - [**no**] **cpm-queue**
      - [**no**] **queue** *queue-id*
        - **cbs** *cbs*
        - **no cbs**
        - **mbs** *mbs*
        - **no mbs**
        - **rate** *rate* [**cir** *cir*]
        - **no rate**

CPU Protection Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — cpu-protection
                — ip-src-monitoring
                    — included-protocols
                        — [no] dhcp
                        — [no] gtp
                        — [no] icmp
                        — [no] igmp
                — link-specific-rate packet-rate-limit
                — no link-specific-rate
                — policy cpu-protection-policy-id [create]
                — no policy cpu-protection-policy-id
                    — [no] alarm
                    — description description-string
                    — no description
                    — eth-cfm entry entry levels levels opcodes opcodes rate packet-rate-limit
                    — no eth-cfm
                    — out-profile-rate packet-rate-limit [log-events]
                    — no out-profile-rate
                    — overall-rate packet-rate-limit
                    — no overall-rate
                    — per-source-rate packet-rate-limit
                    — no per-source-rate
                — port-overall-rate packet-rate-limit [action-low-priority]
                — no port-overall-rate
                — [no] protocol-protection [allow-sham-links][block-pim-tunneled]
```

Refer to the OS Services Guidefor command, syntax, and usage information about applying CPU Protection policies to interfaces.

CPU protection policies are applied by default (and customer policies can be applied) to a variety of entities including interfaces and SAPs. Refer to the appropriate guides (See Preface for document titles) for command syntax and usage for applying CPU protection policies. Examples of entities that can have CPU protection policies applied to them include:

configure>router>interface>cpu-protection *policy-id*

configure>service>epipe>sap>cpu-protection *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]

configure>service>epipe>spoke-sdp>cpu-protection *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]

configure>service>ies>interface>cpu-protection *policy-id*

configure>service>ies>interfac>sap>cpu-protection *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]

configure>service>template>vpls-sap-template>cpu-protection *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]

configure>service>vpls>sap>cpu-protection *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]

configure>service>vprn>interface>cpu-protection *policy-id*

configure>service>vprn >interface>sap>cpu-protection *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]

configure>service>vprn>network-interface>cpu-protection *policy-id*

Distributed CPU Protection Commands

config
- **system**
  - **security**
    - **dist-cpu-protection**
      - **policy** *policy-name* [**create**]
      - **no policy**
        - **description** *description-string*
        - **no description**
        - [**no**] **local-monitoring-policer** *policer-name* **[create]**
          - [**no**] **description** *"description-string"*
          - **rate** {**packets** {**ppi** | **max**} **within** *seconds* [**initial-delay** *packets*] | **kbps** {*kilobits-per-second* | **max**} [**mbs** *size*] [**bytes**|**kilobytes**]}
          - **no rate**
          - [**no**] **log-events** [**verbose**]
        - **protocol** *name* [**create**]
        - **no protocol** *name*
          - **dynamic-parameters**
            - **detection-time** *seconds*
            - **exceed-action** {**discard** [**hold-down** *seconds*] | **low-priority** [**hold-down** *seconds*] | **none**}
            - **log-events** [**verbose**]
            - **no log-events**
            - **rate** {**packets** {**ppi** | **max**} **within** *seconds* [**initial-delay** *packets*] | **kbps** {*kilobits-per-second* | **max**} [**mbs** *size*] [**bytes**|**kilobytes**]}
          - **enforcement** {**static** *policer-name* | **dynamic** {*mon-policer-name* | **local-mon-bypass** }}
        - **static-policer** *policer-name* [**create**]
        - **no static-policer** *policer-name*
          - **description** *description-string*
          - **no description**
          - **detection-time** *seconds*
          - **no detection-time**
          - **exceed-action** {**discard** [**hold-down** *seconds*] | **low-priority** [**hold-down** *seconds*] | **none**}
          - **log-events** [**verbose**]
          - **no log-events**
          - **rate** {**packets** {**ppi** | **max**} **within** *seconds* [**initial-delay** *packets*] | **kbps** {*kilobits-per-second* | **max**} [**mbs** *size*] [**bytes**|**kilobytes**]}
          - **no rate**

config card x fp y
- **dist-cpu-protection**
  - [**no**] **dynamic-enforcement-policer-pool** *number-of-policers*

Security Password Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — password
                — admin-password password [hash | hash2]
                — no admin-password
                — aging days
                — no aging
                — attempts count [time minutes1] [lockout minutes2]
                — no attempts
                — authentication-order [method-1] [method-2] [method-3] [exit-on-reject]
                — no authentication-order
                — complexity-rules
                    — [no] allow-user-name
                    — credits [lowercase credits] [uppercase credits] [numeric credits]
                      [special-character credits]
                    — no credits
                    — minimum-classesminimum
                    — no minimum-classes
                    — minimum-length length
                    — no minimum-length
                    — repeated-characters count
                    — no repeated-characters
                    — required [lowercase count] [uppercase count] [numeric count]
                      [special-character count]
                    — no required
                — dynsvc-password password [hash|hash2]
                — no dynsvc-password
                — enable-admin-control
                — tacplus-map-to-priv-lvl admin-priv-lvl
                — no tacplus-map-to-priv-lvl
                — health-check [interval interval]
                — no health-check
                — history size
                — no history
                — minimum-age [days days] [hrs hours] [min minutes] [sec seconds]
                — no minimum-age
                — minimum-change distance
                — no minimum-change
```

```
admin
    — certificate
        —
        — display type {cert|key|crl|cert-request} url-string format {pkcs10|pkcs12|pkcs7-der|pkcs7-pem|pem|der} [password [32 chars max]]
        — gen-keypair url-string [size {512|1024|2048}] [type {rsa|dsa}]
        —
        — secure-nd-export
        — secure-nd-import input url-string format input-format [password password] [key-rollover]
```

Profile Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] profile user-profile-name
                — default-action {deny-all | permit-all | none}
                — [no] entry entry-id
                    — action {deny | permit}
                    — description description-string
                    — no description
                    — security command-string
                    — no security
                — renum old-entry-number new-entry-number
                — ssh-max-sessions session-limit
                — no ssh-max-sessions
                — telnet-max-sessions session-limit
                — no telnet-max-sessions
                — combined-max-sessions session-limit
                — no combined-max-sessions
```

CLI Session Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — cli-session-group session-group-name [create]
                — ssh-max-sessions session-limit
                — no ssh-max-sessions
                — telnet-max-sessions session-limit
                — no telnet-max-sessions
                — combined-max-sessions
                — no combined-max-sessions
```

RADIUS Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] radius
                — access-algorithm {direct | round-robin}
                — no access-algorithm
                — [no] accounting
                — accounting-port port
                — no accounting-port
                — [no] authorization
                — [no] interactive-authentication
                — port port
                — no port
                — retry count
                — no retry
                — server server-index address ip-address secret key [hash | hash2]
                — no server server-index
                — [no] shutdown
                — timeout seconds
                — no timeout
                — [no] use-default-template
```

SSH Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — ssh
                — client-cipher-list protocol-version version
                    — cipher index name cipher-name
                    — no cipher index
                — [no] preserve-key
                — server-cipher-list protocol-version version
                    — cipher index name cipher-name
                    — no cipher index
                — [no] server-shutdown
                — [no] version SSH-version
```

TACPLUS Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] tacplus
                — accounting [record-type {start-stop | stop-only}]
                — no accounting
                — [no] authorization [use-priv-lvl]
                — [no] interactive-authentication
                — [no] priv-lvl-map
                    — priv-lvl priv-lvl user-profile-name
                    — no priv-lvl priv-lvl
                — server server-index address ip-address secret key [hash | hash2]
                — no server server-index
```

```
— [no] shutdown
— timeout seconds
— no timeout
— [no] use-default-template
```

User Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] user user-name
                — [no] access [ftp] [snmp] [console] [netconf]
                — console
                    — [no] cannot-change-password
                    — login-exec url-prefix::source-url
                    — no login-exec
                    — member user-profile-name [user-profile-name...(up to 8 max)]
                    — no member user-profile-name
                    — [no] new-password-at-login
                — home-directory url-prefix [directory] [directory/directory...]
                — no home-directory
                — password [password]
                — [no] restricted-to-home
                — rsa-key public-key-value key-id
                — no rsa-key key-id
                — snmp
                    — authentication {[none] | [[hash] {md5 key-1 | sha key-1 } privacy
                      {none|des-key|aes-128-cfb-key key-2}]}
                    — group group-name
                    — no group
```

User Template Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — user-template {tacplus_default | radius_default}
                — [no] access [ftp] [console]
                — console
                    — login-exec url-prefix:source-url
                    — no login-exec
                — home-directory url-prefix [directory][directory/directory..]
                — no home-directory
                — profile user-profile-name
                — no profile
                — [no] restricted-to-home
```

Dot1x Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — dot1x
                — radius-plcy name
                    — retry count
                    — no retry
```

```
                                    — server (dot1x) server-index address ip-address secret key [port port]
                                    — source-address ip-address
                                    — [no] shutdown
                                    — timeout seconds
                                    — no timeout
                                — [no] shutdown
```

Keychain Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] keychain keychain-name
                — description description-string
                — no description
                — direction {uni | bi}
                    — bi
                        — entry entry-id key [authentication-key | hash-key | hash2-key] [hash | hash2] algorithm algorithm
                            — begin-time [date] [hours-minutes] [UTC] [now] [forever]
                            — [no] shutdown
                            — option {basic | isis-enhanced}
                            — tolerance [seconds | forever]
                    — uni
                        — receive
                        — entry entry-id key [authentication-key | hash-key | hash2-key] [hash | hash2] algorithm algorithm
                            — begin-time [date] [hours-minutes] [UTC] [now] [forever]
                            — end-time [date][hours-minutes] [UTC] [now] [forever]
                            — [no] shutdown
                            — tolerance [seconds | forever]
                        — send
                            — entry entry-id key [authentication-key | hash-key | hash2-key] [hash | hash2] algorithm algorithm
                            — begin-time [date] [hours-minutes] [UTC] [now] [forever]
                            — [no] shutdown
                            — option {basic | isis-enhanced}
                — [no] shutdown
                — tcp-option-number
                    — receive option-number
                    — send option-number
```

TTL Security Commands

```
config
    — router
        — bgp
            — group
                — ttl-security min-ttl-value
                — neighbor
                    — ttl-security min-ttl-value
```

```
config
    — router
        — ldp
            — peer-parameters
                — peer
                    — ttl-security min-ttl-value
config
    — system
        — login-control
            — ssh
                — ttl-security

config
    — system
        — login-control
            — telnet
                — ttl-security
```

Login Control Commands

```
config
    — system
        — login-control
            — [no] exponential-backoff
            — ftp
                — inbound-max-sessions number-of-sessions
                — no inbound-max-sessions
            — idle-timeout {minutes | disable}
            — no idle-timeout
            — [no] login-banner
            — motd {url url-prefix: source-url | text motd-text-string}
            — no motd
            — pre-login-message login-text-string [name]
            — no pre-login-message
            — ssh
                — disable-graceful-shutdown
                — inbound-max-sessions
                — outbound-max-sessions
                — ttl-security
            — telnet
                — enable-graceful-shutdown
                — inbound-max-sessions value
                — no inbound-max-sessions
                — outbound-max-sessions value
                — no outbound-max-sessions
                — ttl-security
```

Show Commands

Security

```
show
    — system
        — security
            — access-group [group-name]
            — authentication [statistics]
            — communities
            — cpm-filter
                — ip-filter [entry entry-id]
                — ipv6-filtermac-filter [entry entry-id]
            — cpm-queue queue-id
            — cpu-protection
                — eth-cfm-monitoring [ {service-id service-id sap-id sap-id} | {service-id service-id sdp-id sdp-id:vc-id} ]
                — excessive-sources [service-id service-id sap-id sap-id]
                — policy [policy-id] association
                — protocol-protection
                — violators [port] [interface] [sap] [video] [sdp]
            — dist-cpu-protection
                — policy [policy-id] [association detail]
            — keychain keychain-name [detail]
            — management-access-filter
                — ip-filter [entry entry-id]
                — ipv6-filtermac-filter [entry entry-id]
            — password-options
            — per-peer-queuing [detail]
            — per-peer-queuing
            — profile [user-profile-name]
            — source-address
            — ssh
            — user [user-name] [detail]
            — user [user-name] lockout
            — view [view-name] [detail]
    — certificate
        — ca-profile
        — ca-profile name [association]
        — ocsp-cache [entry-id]
        — statistics

show
    — card
        — fp
            — dist-cpu-protection
show
    — service
        — id
            — sap
                — dist-cpu-protection [detail]
```

```
show
    — router
        — interface
            — dist-cpu-protection [detail]
```

Login Control

```
show
    — user
```

Clear Commands

```
clear
    — router
        — authentication
            — statistics [interface ip-int-name | ip-address]
        — radius-proxy-server server-name statistics
    — cpm-filter
        — ip-filter [entry entry-id]
        — ipv6-filter [entry entry-id]
        — mac-filter [entry entry-id]
    — cpu-protection
        — excessive-sources
        — protocol-protection
        — violators [port] [interface] [sap]
    — cpm-queue queue-id
admin
    — user
        — user
            — clear lockout {name | all}
            — clear password-history {name | all}
```

Debug Commands

```
debug
    — radius [detail] [hex]
    — no radius
    — [no] ocsp
        — [no] ocsp profile-name
```

Tools Commands

```
tools
    — dump
        — security
            — dist-cpu-protection
                — violators enforcement {sap|interface} card slot-number [fp fp-number]
                — violators local-monitor {sap|interface} card slot-number [fp fp-number]
    — perform
        — security
            — dist-cpu-protection
                — release-hold-down interface interface-name [protocol protocol] [static-
                  policer name]
                — release-hold-down sap sap-id [protocol protocol] [static-policer name]
```

Configuration Commands

General Security Commands

description

Syntax **description** *description-string*
no description

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter>entry
config>sys>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry
config>system>security>pki>ca-profile
config>sys>security>cpu-protection>policy
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry
config>system>security>cpm-filter>mac-filter>entry

Description This command creates a text description stored in the configuration file for a configuration context. This command associates a text string with a configuration context to help identify the context in the configuration file.

The **no** form of the command removes the string.

Default No description associated with the configuration context.

Parameters *string* — The description character string. Allowed values are any string up to 80 characters long composed of printable, 7-bit ASCII characters. If the string contains special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.), the entire string must be enclosed within double quotes.

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter
config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter
config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry

config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry
config>system>security>pki>ca-profile
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter>entry

Description The **shutdown** command administratively disables the entity. When disabled, an entity does not change, reset, or remove any configuration settings or statistics. Many entities must be explicitly enabled using the **no shutdown** command. The operational state of the entity is disabled as well as the operational state of any entities contained within. Many objects must be shut down before they may be deleted.

The **no** form of the command puts an entity into the administratively enabled state.

Default no shutdown

security

security

Context config>system

Description This command creates the context to configure security settings.

Security commands manage user profiles and user membership. Security commands also manage user login registrations.

ftp-server

Syntax [**no**] **ftp-server**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables FTP servers running on the system.

FTP servers are disabled by default. At system startup, only SSH server are enabled.

The **no** form of the command disables FTP servers running on the system.

hash-control

Syntax **hash-control** [**read-version** {**1 | 2 | all**}] [**write-version** {**1 | 2**}]
no hash-control

Context config>system>security

Description Whenever the user executes a **save** or **info** command, the system will encrypt all passwords, MD5 keys, etc., for security reasons. At present, two algorithms exist.

The first algorithm is a simple, short key that can be copied and pasted in a different location when the user wants to configure the same password. However, because it is the same password and the hash key is limited to the password/key, even the casual observer will notice that it is the same key.

The second algorithm is a more complex key, and cannot be copied and pasted in different locations in the configuration file. In this case, if the same key or password is used repeatedly in different contexts, each encrypted (hashed) version will be different.

Default all — read-version set to accept both versions 1 and 2

Parameters **read-version** {**1 | 2 | all**} — When the read-version is configured as "all," both versions 1 and 2 will be accepted by the system. Otherwise, only the selected version will be accepted when reading configuration or exec files. The presence of incorrect hash versions will abort the script/startup.

write-version {**1 | 2**} — Select the hash version that will be used the next time the configuration file is saved (or an info command is executed). Be careful to save the read and write version correctly, so that the file can be properly processed after the next reboot or exec.

per-peer-queuing

Syntax [**no**] **per-peer-queuing**

Context config>system>security

Description This commandenables CPM hardware queuing per peer. This means that when a peering session is established, the router will automatically allocate aseparate CPM hardware queue for that peer.

The **no** form of the command disables CPM hardware queuing per peer.

Default per-peer-queuing

source-address

Syntax **source-address**

Context config>system>security

Description This command specifies the source address that should be used in all unsolicited packets sent by the application.

This feature only applies on inband interfaces and does not apply on the out of band management interface. Packets going out the management interface will keep using that as source IP address. In other words, when the RADIUS server is reachable through both the management interface and a network interface, the management interface is used despite whatever is configured under the source-address statement.

When a source address is specified for the **ptp** application, the port-based 1588 hardware timestamping assist function will be applied to PTP packets matching the IPv4 address of the router interface used to ingress the SR/ESS or IP address specified in this command. If the IP address is removed, then the port-based 1588 hardware timestamping assist function will only be applied to PTP packets matching the IPv4 address of the router interface.

application

Syntax **application** *app* [*ip-int-name*|*ip-address*]
no application *app*

Context config>system>security>source-address

Description This command specifies the use of the source IP address specified by the **source-address** command.

Parameters *app* — Specify the application name.

Values cflowd, dns, ftp, ntp, ping, ptp, radius, snmptrap, sntp, ssh, syslog, tacplus, telnet, traceroute, mcreporter, icmp-error

ip-int-name | *ip-address* — Specifies the name of the IP interface or IP address. If the string contains special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.), the entire string must be enclosed within double quotes.

application6

Syntax **application6** *app ipv6-address*
no application6

Context config>system>security>source-address

Description This command specifies the application to use the source IPv6 address specified by the **source-address** command.

Parameters *app* — Specify the application name.

Values cflowd, dns, ftp, ntp, ping, radius, snmptrap, syslog, tacplus, telnet, traceroute, icmp6-error

ipv6-address — Specifies the IPv6 address.

telnet-server

Syntax [**no**] **telnet-server**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables Telnet servers running on the system.

Telnet servers are off by default. At system startup, only SSH servers are enabled.

Telnet servers in networks limit a Telnet clients to three retries to login. The Telnet server disconnects the Telnet client session after three retries.

The **no** form of the command disables Telnet servers running on the system.

telnet6-server

Syntax [**no**] **telnet6-server**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables Telnet IPv6 servers running on the system.

Telnet servers are off by default. At system startup, only SSH server are enabled.

The **no** form of the command disables Telnet IPv6 servers running on the system.

vprn-network-exceptions

Syntax **vprn-network-exceptions** *number seconds*

Context config>system>security

Description This command configures the rate to limit ICMP replies to packets with label TTL expiry received within all VPRN sentences in the system and from all network IP interfaces. This includes labeled user packets, ping and traceroute packets within VPRN.

This feature currently also limits the same packets when received within the context of an LSP short-cut.

This feature does not rate limit MPLS and service OAM packets such as vprn-ping, vprn-trace, lsp-ping, lsp-trace, vccv-ping, and vccv-trace.

The **no** form of the command disables the rate limiting of the reply to these packets.

Default no security vprn-network-exceptions

Parameters *number* — 10 — 10,000

seconds — 1 — 60

LLDP Commands

lldp

Syntax **lldp**

Context config>system

Description This command enables the context to configure system-wide Link Layer Discovery Protocol parameters.

message-fast-tx

Syntax **message-fast-tx** *time*
no message-fast-tx

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the duration of the fast transmission period.

Parameters *time* — Specifies the fast transmission period in seconds.

Values 1 — 3600

Default 1

message-fast-tx-init

Syntax **message-fast-tx-init** *count*
no message-fast-tx-init

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the number of LLDPDUs to send during the fast transmission period.

Parameters *count* — Specifies the number of LLDPDUs to send during the fast transmission period.

Values 1 — 8

Default 4

notification-interval

Syntax **notification-interval** *time*
no notification-interval

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the minimum time between change notifications.

Parameters *time* — Specifies the minimum time, in seconds, between change notifications.

Values 5 — 3600

Default 5

reinit-delay

Syntax **reinit-delay** *time*
no reinit-delay

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the time before re-initializing LLDP on a port.

Parameters *time* — Specifies the time, in seconds, before re-initializing LLDP on a port.

Values 1 — 10

Default 2

tx-credit-max

Syntax **tx-credit-max** *count*
no tx-credit-max

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the maximum consecutive LLDPDUs transmitted.

Parameters *count* — Specifies the maximum consecutive LLDPDUs transmitted.

Values 1 — 100

Default 5

tx-hold-multiplier

Syntax **tx-hold-multiplier** *multiplier*
no tx-hold-multiplier

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the multiplier of the tx-interval.

Parameters *multiplier* — Specifies the multiplier of the tx-interval.

Values 2 — 10

Default 4

tx-interval

Syntax **tx-interval** *interval*
no tx-interval

Context config>system>lldp

Description This command configures the LLDP transmit interval time.

Parameters *interval* — Specifies the LLDP transmit interval time.

Values 1 — 100

Default 5

Login, Telnet, SSH and FTP Commands

exponential-backoff

Syntax [**no**] **exponential-backoff**

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command enables the exponential-backoff of the login prompt. The exponential-backoff command is used to deter dictionary attacks, when a malicious user can gain access to the CLI by using a script to try **admin** with any conceivable password.

The **no** form of the command disables exponential-backoff.

Default no exponential-backoff

ftp

Syntax **ftp**

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command creates the context to configure FTP login control parameters.

idle-timeout

Syntax **idle-timeout** {*minutes* | **disable**}
no idle-timeout

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command configures the idle timeout for FTP, console, or Telnet sessions before the session is terminated by the system.

By default, an idle FTP, console, SSH or Telnet session times out after 30 minutes of inactivity. This timer can be set per session.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default **30** — Idle timeout set for 30 minutes.

Parameters *minutes* — The idle timeout in minutes. Allowed values are 1 to 1440. 0 implies the sessions never timeout.

Values 1 — 1440

disable — When the **disable** option is specified, a session will never timeout. To re-enable idle timeout, enter the command without the disable option.

inbound-max-sessions

Syntax **inbound-max-sessions** *value*
no inbound-max-sessions

Context config>system>login-control>ftp

Description This command configures the maximum number of concurrent inbound FTP sessions.

This value is the combined total of inbound and outbound sessions.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 3

Parameters *value* — The maximum number of concurrent FTP sessions on the node.

Values 0 — 5

inbound-max-sessions

Syntax **inbound-max-sessions** *number-of-sessions*
no inbound-max-sessions

Context config>system>login-control>telnet
config>system>login-control>ssh

Description This parameter limits the number of inbound Telnet and SSH sessions. A maximum of 30 telnet and ssh connections can be established to the router. The local serial port cannot be disabled.

Telnet and SSH maximum sessions can also use the combined total of both inbound sessions (ssh+telent). While it is acceptable to continue to internally limit the combined total of SSH and Telnet sessions to N, either SSH or Telnet sessions can use the inbound maximum sessions, if so required by the Operator.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 5

Parameters *number-of-sessions* — The maximum number of concurrent inbound Telnet sessions, expressed as an integer.

Values 0 — 50 (default = 5)
or 0 — N where N is the new total number of SSH+Telent sessions if they are scaled

login-banner

Syntax [**no**] **login-banner**

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command enables or disables the display of a login banner. The login banner contains the copyright and build date information for a console login attempt.

The **no** form of the command causes only the configured pre-login-message and a generic login prompt to display.

login-control

Syntax **login-control**

Context config>system

Description This command creates the context to configure the session control for console, Telnet and FTP.

motd

Syntax **motd** {**url** *url-prefix***:** *source-url* | **text** *motd-text-string*}
no motd

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command creates the message of the day displayed after a successful console login. Only one message can be configured.

The **no** form of the command removes the message.

Default No **motd** is defined.

Parameters **url** *url-prefix***:** *source-url* — When the message of the day is present as a text file, provide both url-prefix and the source-url of the file containing the message of the day. The URL prefix can be local or remote.

text *motd-text-string* — The text of the message of the day. The *motd-text-string* must be enclosed in double quotes. Multiple text strings are not appended to one another.

Some special characters can be used to format the message text. The "\n" character creates multi-line MOTDs and the "\r" character restarts at the beginning of the new line. For example, entering "\n\r" will start the string at the beginning of the new line, while entering "\n" will start the second line below the last character from the first line.

outbound-max-sessions

Syntax **outbound-max-sessions** *value*
no outbound-max-sessions

Context config>system>login-control>telnet

Description This parameter limits the number of outbound Telnet and SSH sessions. A maximum of 15 telnet and ssh connections can be established from the router. The local serial port cannot be disabled.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 5

Parameters *value* — The maximum number of concurrent outbound Telnet sessions, expressed as an integer.

Values 0 — 15

pre-login-message

Syntax **pre-login-message** *login-text-string* [**name**]
no pre-login-message

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command creates a message displayed prior to console login attempts on the console via Telnet.

Only one message can be configured. If multiple **pre-login-messages** are configured, the last message entered overwrites the previous entry.

It is possible to add the name parameter to an existing message without affecting the current **pre-login-message**.

The **no** form of the command removes the message.

Default No **pre-login-message** is defined.

Parameters *login-text-string* — The string can be up to 900 characters. Any printable, 7-bit ASCII characters can be used. If the string contains special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.), the entire string must be enclosed within double quotes. Some special characters can be used to format the message text. The **\n** character creates multiline messages and the **\r** character restarts at the beginning of the new line. For example, entering **\n\r** will start the string at the beginning of the new line, while entering **\n** will start the second line below the last character from the first line.

name — When the keyword *name* is defined, the configured system name is always displayed first in the login message. To remove the name from the login message, the message must be cleared and a new message entered without the name.

ssh

Syntax **ssh**

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command enables the context to configure the SSH parameters.

client-cipher-list protocol-version

Syntax **client-cipher-list protocol-version** *version*

Context config>system>security>ssh

Description This command enables configuration the list of allowed ciphers by the SSH client.

Parameters *version* — Specifies the SSH version.

Values 1 — Specifies that the SSH server will only accept connections from clients that support SSH protocol version 1
2 — Specifies that the SSH server will accept connections from clients supporting either SSH protocol version 2

cipher

Syntax **cipher** *index* **name** *cipher-name*
no cipher *index*

Context config>system>security>ssh>client-cipher-list
config>system>security>ssh>server-cipher-list

Description This command enables configuration of a cipher. Client-ciphers are used when the SR OS is acting as an SSH client. Server-ciphers are used when the SR OS is acting as an SSH server.

Parameters *index* — Specifies the index of the cipher in the list.

Values 1 — 255

cipher-name — Specifies the algorithm for performing encryption or decryption.

Values For SSHv1:
Client ciphers: des, 3des, blowfish
Server ciphers: 3des, blowfish
The following default ciphers are used for SSHv1:

Cipher index value	Cipher name
10	3des
20	blowfish
30	des

Note: blowfish and des are not permitted in FIPS-140-2 mode.

Values For SSHv2:
Client ciphers: 3des-cbc, blowfish-cbc, cast128-cbc, arcfour, aes128-cbc, aes192-cbc, aes256-cbc, rijndael-cbc, aes128-ctr, aes192-ctr, aes256-ctr
Server ciphers: 3des-cbc, blowfish-cbc, cast128-cbc, arcfour, aes128-cbc, aes192-

cbc, aes256-cbc, rijndael-cbc, aes128-ctr, aes192-ctr, aes256-ctr
The following default ciphers are used for SSHv2:

Cipher index value	Cipher name
190	aes256-ctr
192	aes192-ctr
194	aes128-ctr
200	aes128-cbc
205	3des-cbc
210	blowfish-cbc
215	cast128-cbc
220	arcfour
225	aes192-cbc
230	aes256-cbc
235	rijndael-cbc

Note: blowfish-cbc, cast128-cbc, arcfour, and rijndael-cbc are not permitted in FIPS-140-2 mode.

Default no cipher *index*

disable-graceful-shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **disable-graceful-shutdown**

Context config>system>login-control>ssh

Description This command enables graceful shutdown of SSH sessions.

The **no** form of the command disables graceful shutdown of SSH sessions.

preserve-key

Syntax [**no**] **preserve-key**

Context config>system>security>ssh

Description After enabling this command, private keys, public keys, and host key file will be saved by the server. It is restored following a system reboot or the ssh server restart.

The **no** form of the command specifies that the keys will be held in memory by the SSH server and is not restored following a system reboot.

Default no preserve-key

server-cipher-list protocol-version

Syntax **client-cipher-list protocol-version** *version*

Context config>system>security>ssh

Description This command enables configuration the list of allowed ciphers by the SSH server.

Parameters *version* — Specifies the SSH version.

Values 1 — Specifies that the SSH server will only accept connections from clients that support SSH protocol version 1
2 — Specifies that the SSH server will accept connections from clients supporting either SSH protocol version 2

server-shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **server-shutdown**

Context config>system>security>ssh

Description This command enables the SSH servers running on the system.

Default At system startup, only the SSH server is enabled.

version

Syntax **version** *ssh-version*
no version

Context config>system>security>ssh

Description Specifies the SSH protocol version that will be supported by the SSH server.

Default 2

Parameters *ssh-version* — Specifies the SSH version.

Values 1 — Specifies that the SSH server will only accept connections from clients that support SSH protocol version 1
2 — Specifies that the SSH server will accept connections from clients supporting either SSH protocol version 2
1-2 — Specifies that the SSH server will accept connections from clients supporting either SSH protocol version 1, or SSH protocol version 2 or both.

Note: "1" and "1-2" are not permitted in FIPS-140-2 mode.

telnet

Syntax **telnet**

Context config>system>login-control

Description This command creates the context to configure the Telnet login control parameters.

enable-graceful-shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **enable-graceful-shutdown**

Context config>system>login-control>telnet

Description This command enables graceful shutdown of telnet sessions.

The no form of the command disables graceful shutdown of telnet sessions.

Management Access Filter Commands

management-access-filter

Syntax [**no**] **management-access-filter**

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates the context to edit management access filters and to reset match criteria.

Management access filters control all traffic in and out of the . They can be used to restrict management of the router by other nodes outside either specific (sub)networks or through designated ports.

Management filters, as opposed to other traffic filters, are enforced by system software.

The **no** form of the command removes management access filters from the configuration.

Default No management access filters are defined.

ip-filter

Syntax [**no**] **ip-filter**

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter

Description This command enables the context to configure management access IP filter parameters.

ipv6-filter

Syntax [**no**] **ipv6-filter**

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter

Description This command enables the context to configure management access IPv6 filter parameters.

mac-filter

Syntax [**no**] **mac-filter**

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter

Description This command configures a management access MAC-filter.

action

Syntax **action** {**permit** | **deny** | **deny-host-unreachable**}
no action

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command creates the action associated with the management access filter match criteria entry.

The **action** keyword is required. If no **action** is defined, the filter is ignored. If multiple action statements are configured, the last one overwrites previous configured actions.

If the packet does not meet any of the match criteria the configured **default action** is applied.

Default none — The action is specified by default-action command.

Parameters *permit* — Specifies that packets matching the configured criteria will be permitted.

deny — Specifies that packets matching the configured selection criteria will be denied and that a ICMP host unreachable message will not be issued.

deny-host-unreachable — Specifies that packets matching the configured selection criteria will be denied and that a host unreachable message will not be issued.
Note: deni-host-unreachable only applies to ip-filter and ipv6filter.

default-action

Syntax **default-action** {**permit** | **deny** | **deny-host-unreachable**}

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command creates the default action for management access in the absence of a specific management access filter match.

The **default-action** is applied to a packet that does not satisfy any match criteria in any of the management access filters. Whenever management access filters are configured, the **default-action** must be defined.

Default No default-action is defined.

Parameters **permit —** Specifies that packets not matching the configured selection criteria in any of the filter entries will be permitted.

deny — Specifies that packets not matching the selection criteria be denied and that an ICMP host unreachable message will not be issued.

deny-host-unreachable — Specifies that packets not matching the selection criteria be denied access and that an ICMP host unreachable message will be issued. **Note:** deni-host-unreachable only applies to ip-filter and ipv6filter.

dst-port

Syntax [**no**] **dst-port** *value* [*mask*]

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command configures a source TCP or UDP port number or port range for a management access filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the source port match criterion.

Default No dst-port match criterion.

Parameters *value* — The source TCP or UDP port number as match criteria.

Values 1 — 65535 (decimal)

mask — Mask used to specify a range of source port numbers as the match criterion.

This 16 bit mask can be configured using the following formats:

Format Style	Format Syntax	Example
Decimal	DDDDD	63488
Hexadecimal	0xHHHH	0xF800
Binary	0bBBBBBBBBBBBBBBBB	0b1111100000000000

To select a range from 1024 up to 2047, specify 1024 0xFC00 for value and mask.

Default **65535** (exact match)

Values 1 — 65535 (decimal)

entry

Syntax [**no**] **entry** *entry-id*

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command is used to create or edit a management access IP(v4), IPv6, or MAC filter entry. Multiple entries can be created with unique *entry-id* numbers. The OS exits the filter upon the first match found and executes the actions according to the respective action command. For this reason, entries must be sequenced correctly from most to least explicit.

An entry may not have any match criteria defined (in which case, everything matches) but must have at least the keyword **action** defined to be considered complete. Entries without the **action** keyword are considered incomplete and inactive.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified entry from the management access filter.

Default No entries are defined.

Parameters *entry-id* — An entry ID uniquely identifies a match criteria and the corresponding action. It is recommended that entries are numbered in staggered increments. This allows users to insert a new entry in an existing policy without having to renumber the existing entries.

Values 1 — 9999

flow-label

Syntax **flow-label** *value*
no flow-label

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command configures flow label match conditions. Flow labeling enables the labeling of packets belonging to particular traffic flows for which the sender requests special handling, such as non-default quality of service or real-time service.

Parameters *value* — Specify the flow identifier in an IPv6 packet header that can be used to discriminate traffic flows (See RFC 3595, *Textual Conventions for IPv6 Flow Label*.)

Values 0 — 1048575

log

Syntax [**no**] log

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command enables match logging. When enabled, matches on this entry will cause the Security event mafEntryMatch to be raised.

Default no log

next-header

Syntax **next-header** *next-header*
no next-header

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command specifies the next header to match. The protocol type such as TCP / UDP / OSPF is identified by its respective protocol number. Well-known protocol numbers include ICMP(1), TCP(6), UDP(17). IPv6 Extension headers are identified by the next header IPv6 numbers as per RFC2460.

Parameters *next-header* — Specifies for IPv4 MAF the IP protocol field, and for IPv6 the next header type to be used in the match criteria for this Management Access Filter Entry.

Values next-header: 0 — 255, protocol numbers accepted in DHB
keywords: none, crtp, crudp, egp, eigrp, encap, ether-ip, gre, icmp, idrp, igmp, igp, ip, ipv6, ipv6-icmp, ipv6-no-nxt, isis, iso-ip, l2tp, ospf-igp, pim, pnni, ptp, rdp, rsvp, stp, tcp, udp, vrrp

protocol

Syntax [**no**] **protocol** *protocol-id*

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>entry

Description This command configures an IP protocol type to be used as a management access filter match criterion.

The protocol type, such as TCP, UDP, and OSPF, is identified by its respective protocol number. Well-known protocol numbers include ICMP (1), TCP (6), and UDP (17).

The **no** form the command removes the protocol from the match criteria.

Default No protocol match criterion is specified.

Parameters *protocol* — The protocol number for the match criterion.

Values 1 to 255 (decimal)

port

Syntax **port** *tcp/udp port-number* [*mask*]
port-list *port-list-name*
port range *start end*
no port

Context config>system-security>cpm-filter>ip-filter>entry>match
config>system>security>cpm-filter>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures a TCP/UDP source or destination port match criterion in IPv4 and IPv6 CPM filter policies. A packet matches this criterion if packet's TCP/UDP (as configured by protocol/next-header match) source OR destination port matches either the specified port value or a port in the specified port range or port list.

This command is mutually exclusive with **src-port** and **dst-port** commands.

The **no** form of this command deletes the specified port match criterion.

Default **no port**

Parameters *port-number* — A source or destination port to be used as a match criterion specified as a decimal integer.

Values 1 -65535

mask — Specifies the 16 bit mask to be applied when matching the port.

Values [0x0000..0xFFFF] | [0..65535] | [0b0000000000000000..0b1111111111111111]

range *start end* — an inclusive range of source or destination port values to be used as match criteria. *start* of the range and *end* of the range are expressed as decimal integers.

Values start, end, port-number: 1 -65535

port-list *port-list-name* — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

router

Syntax **router service-name** *service-name*
router {*router-instance*}
no router

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command configures a router name or service ID to be used as a management access filter match criterion.

The **no** form the command removes the router name or service ID from the match criteria.

Parameters *router-instance* — Specify one of the following parameters for the router instance:

router-name — Specifies a router name up to 32 characters to be used in the match criteria.

service-id — Specifies an existing service ID to be used in the match criteria.

Values 1 — 2147483647

service-name *service-name* — Specifies an existing service name up to 64 characters in length.

renum

Syntax **renum** *old-entry-number new-entry-number*

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command renumbers existing management access filter entries for an IP(v4), IPv6, or MAC filter to re-sequence filter entries.

The exits on the first match found and executes the actions in accordance with the accompanying **action** command. This may require some entries to be re-numbered differently from most to least explicit.

Parameters *old-entry-number* — Enter the entry number of the existing entry.

Values 1 — 9999

new-entry-number — Enter the new entry number that will replace the old entry number.

Values 1 — 9999

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command shutdowns the management-access-filter.

match

Syntax **match** [**frame-type** *frame-type*]
no match

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry

Description This command configures math criteria for this MAC filter entry.

Parameters **frame-type** *frame-type* — Specifies the type of MAC frame to use as match criteria.

Values none, 802dot2-llc, ethernet_II

cfm-opcode

Syntax **cfm-opcode** {**lt | gt | eq**} *opcode*
cfm-opcode range *start end*
no cfm-opcode

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry

Description This command specifies the type of opcode checking to be performed.

If the cfm-opcode match condition is configured then a check must be made to see if the Ethertype is either IEEE802.1ag or Y1731. If the Ethertype does not match then the packet is not CFM and no match to the cfm-opcode is attempted.

The CFM (ieee802.1ag or Y1731) opcode can be assigned as a range with a start and an end number or with a (less than lt, greater than gt, or equal to eq) operator.

If no range with a start and an end or operator (lt, gt, eq) followed by an opcode with the value between 0 and 255 is defined then the command is invalid.

The following table provides opcode values.

Table 10: Opcode Values

CFM PDU or Organization	Acronym	Conflgurable Numeric Value (Range)
Reserved for IEEE 802.1 0		0
Continuity Check Message	CCM	1
Loopback Reply	LBR	2
Loopback Message	LBM	3
Linktrace Reply	LTR	4
Linktrace Message	LTM	5
Reserved for IEEE 802.1		6 – 31
Reserved for ITU		32
	AIS	33
Reserved for ITU		34
	LCK	35
Reserved for ITU		36
	TST	37
Reserved for ITU		38
	APS	39
Reserved for ITU		40
	MCC	41
	LMR	42
	LMM	43
Reserved for ITU		44
	1DM	45
	DMR	46
	DMM	47
Reserved for ITU		48 – 63
Reserved for IEEE 802.1 0		64 - 255

Defined by	ITU-T Y.1731	32 - 63
Defined by	IEEE 802.1.	64 - 255

Default no cfm-opcode

Parameters *opcode* — Specifies the opcode checking to be performed.

start — specifies the start number.

Values 0 — 255

end — Specifies the end number.

Values 0 — 255

lt|gt|eq — keywords

dot1p

Syntax **dot1p** *dot1p-value* [*dot1p-mask*]

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures Dot1p match conditions.

Parameters *dot1p-value* — The IEEE 802.1p value in decimal.

Values 0 — 7

mask — This 3-bit mask can be configured using the following formats:

Values 0 — 7

dsap

Syntax **dsap** *dsap-value* [*dsap-mask*]

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures dsap match conditions.

Format Style	Format Syntax	Example
Decimal	D	4
Hexadecimal	0xH	0x4
Binary	0bBBB	0b100

Parameters *dsap-value* — The 8-bit dsap match criteria value in hexadecimal.

Values 0x00 — 0xFF (hex)

mask — This is optional and may be used when specifying a range of dsap values to use as the match criteria.

This 8 bit mask can be configured using the following formats:

Format Style	Format Syntax	Example
Decimal	DDD	240
Hexadecimal	0xHH	0xF0
Binary	0bBBBBBBBB	0b11110000

Default FF (hex) (exact match)

Values 0x00 — 0xFF

dst-mac

Syntax **dst-mac** *ieee-address* [*ieee-address-mask*]
no dst-mac

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures the destination MAC match condition.

Parameters *ieee-address* — The MAC address to be used as a match criterion.

Values HH:HH:HH:HH:HH:HH or HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH where H is a hexadecimal digit

mask — A 48-bit mask to match a range of MAC address values.

etype

Syntax **etype** *0x0600xx0xffff*
no etype

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description Configures an Ethernet type II Ethertype value to be used as a MAC filter match criterion.

The Ethernet type field is a two-byte field used to identify the protocol carried by the Ethernet frame. For example, 0800 is used to identify the IPv4 packets.

The Ethernet type field is used by the Ethernet version-II frames. IEEE 802.3 Ethernet frames do not use the type field. For IEEE 802.3 frames, use the dsap, ssap or snap-pid fields as match criteria.

The snap-pid field, etype field, ssap and dsap fields are mutually exclusive and may not be part of the same match criteria. Refer to the Router Configuration Guide for information about MAC Match Criteria Exclusivity Rules fields that are exclusive based on the frame format.

The **no** form of the command removes the previously entered etype field as the match criteria.

Default no etype

Parameters *ethernet-type* — The Ethernet type II frame Ethertype value to be used as a match criterion expressed in hexadecimal.

Values 0x0600 — 0xFFFF

snap-oui

Syntax **snap-oui** {**zero | non-zero**}

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures an IEEE 802.3 LLC SNAP Ethernet Frame OUI zero or non-zero value to be used as a MAC filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the criterion from the match criteria.

Default no snap-oui

Parameters **zero —** Specifies to match packets with the three-byte OUI field in the SNAP-ID set to zero.

non-zero — Specifies to match packets with the three-byte OUI field in the SNAP-ID not set to zero.

snap-pid

Syntax **snap-pid** *snap-pid*
no snap-pid

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures an IEEE 802.3 LLC SNAP Ethernet Frame PID value to be used as a MAC

filter match criterion.

This is a two-byte protocol id that is part of the IEEE 802.3 LLC SNAP Ethernet Frame that follows the three-byte OUI field.

The snap-pid field, etype field, ssap and dsap fields are mutually exclusive and may not be part of the same match criteria. Refer to the Router Configuration Guide for information about MAC Match Criteria Exclusivity Rules fields that are exclusive based on the frame format.

Note: The snap-pid match criterion is independent of the OUI field within the SNAP header. Two packets with different three-byte OUI fields but the same PID field will both match the same filter entry based on a snap-pid match criteria.

The **no** form of the command removes the snap-pid value as the match criteria.

Default no snap-pid

Parameters *pid-value* — The two-byte snap-pid value to be used as a match criterion in hexadecimal.

Values 0x0000 — 0xFFFF

src-mac

Syntax **src-mac** *ieee-address* [*ieee-address-mask*]
no src-mac

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures a source MAC address or range to be used as a MAC filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the source mac as the match criteria.

Default no src-mac

Parameters *ieee-address* — Enter the 48-bit IEEE mac address to be used as a match criterion.

Values HH:HH:HH:HH:HH:HH or HH-HH-HH-HH-HH-HH where H is a hexadecimal digit

ieee-address-mask — This 48-bit mask can be configured using:

Format Style	Format Syntax	Example
Decimal	DDDDDDDDDDDDDD	281474959933440
Hexadecimal	0xHHHHHHHHHHHH	0x0FFFFF000000
Binary	0bBBBBBBB...B	0b11110000...B

To configure so that all packets with a source MAC OUI value of 00-03-FA are subject to a match condition then the entry should be specified as: 003FA000000 0xFFFFFF000000

Default 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF (exact match)

Values 0x00000000000000 — 0xFFFFFFFFFFFF

ssap

Syntax **ssap** *ssap-value* [*ssap-mask*]
no ssap

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures an Ethernet 802.2 LLC SSAP value or range for a MAC filter match criterion.

This is a one-byte field that is part of the 802.2 LLC header of the IEEE 802.3 Ethernet Frame.

The snap-pid field, etype field, ssap and dsap fields are mutually exclusive and may not be part of the same match criteria. Refer to the Router Configuration Guide for information about MAC Match Criteria Exclusivity Rules fields that are exclusive based on the frame format.

The **no** form of the command removes the ssap match criterion.

Default no ssap

Parameters *ssap-value* — The 8-bit ssap match criteria value in hex.

Values 0x00 — 0xFF

ssap-mask — This is optional and may be used when specifying a range of ssap values to use as the match criteria.

svc-id

Syntax **svc-id** *service-id*
no svc-id

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies an existing svc-id to use as a match condition.

Parameters *service-id* — Specifies a service-id to match.

Values *service-id*: 1 — 2147483647
svc-name: 64 characters maximum

src-port

Syntax **src-port** {*port-id* | **cpm** | **lag** *port-id*}
no src-port

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ip-filter>entry
config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command restricts ingress management traffic to either the CPMCCM Ethernet port or any other logical port (for example LAG)on the device.

When the source interface is configured, only management traffic arriving on those ports satisfy the match criteria.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default any interface

Parameters *port-id* — The port ID in the following format: slot[/mda]/port.

For example: To configure port 3 on XMA/MDA 2 on card 1 would be specified as 1/2/3.

Values	port-id	*slot*/*mda*/*port*lag-idlag-*id*
		lag keyword
		id 1 — 800
	cpm	keyword

cpm — Configure the Ethernet port on the primary CPMCPMCFM to match the criteria.

src-ip

Syntax [**no**] **src-ip** {[*ip-prefixlmask*] | [*ip-prefix*] | **ip-prefix-list** *prefix-list-name*}

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>entry

Description This command configures a source IP address range prefix to be used as a management access filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the source IP address match criterion.

Default No source IP match criterion is specified.

Parameters *ip-prefix'mask* — The IP prefix for the IP match criterion in dotted decimal notation.

ip-prefix-list — Creates a list of IPv4 prefixes for match criteria in IPv4 ACL and CPM filter policies.

ip-prefix-list-name — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

mask — Specifies the subnet mask length expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 32 (mask length), 0.0.0.0 — 255.255.255.255 (dotted decimal)

src-ip

Syntax [**no**] **src-ip** {[*ip-prefixlmask*] | [*ip-prefix*] | **ip-prefix-list** *prefix-list-name*}

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command configures a source IPv6 address range prefix to be used as a management access filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the source IPv6 address match criterion.

Default No source IP match criterion is specified.

Parameters *ip-prefix'mask* — The IP prefix for the IP match criterion in dotted decimal notation.

ip-prefix-list — Creates a list of IPv4 prefixes for match criteria in IPv4 ACL and CPM filter policies.

ipv6-prefix-list-name — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

mask — Specifies the subnet mask length expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 32 (mask length), 0.0.0.0 — 255.255.255.255 (dotted decimal)

Password Commands

password

Syntax **password**

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates the context to configure password management parameters.

admin-password

Syntax **admin-password** *password* [**hash** | **hash2**]
no admin-password

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command allows a user (with admin permissions) to configure a password which enables a user to become an administrator.

This password is valid only for one session. When enabled, no authorization to TACACS+ or RADIUS is performed and the user is locally regarded as an admin user.

This functionality can be enabled in two contexts:

config>system>security>password>admin-password

<global> enable-admin

NOTE: See the description for the **enable-admin** on the next page. If the admin-password is configured in the config>system>security>password context, then any user can enter the special mode by entering the **enable-admin** command.

enable-admin is in the default profile. By default, all users are given access to this command.

Once the **enable-admin** command is entered, the user is prompted for a password. If the password matches, user is given unrestricted access to all the commands.

The minimum length of the password is determined by the **minimum-length** command. The complexity requirements for the password is determined by the **complexity** command.

NOTE: The *password* argument of this command is not sent to the servers. This is consistent with other commands which configure secrets.

Also note that usernames and passwords in the FTP and TFTP URLs will not be sent to the authorization or accounting servers when the **file>copy** *source-url dest-url* command is executed.

For example:

file copy ftp://test:secret@131.12.31.79/test/srcfile cf1:\destfile

In this example, the username 'test' and password 'secret' will not be sent to the AAA servers (or to any logs). They will be replaced with '****'.

The **no** form of the command removes the admin password from the configuration.

Default no admin-password

Parameters *password* — Configures the password which enables a user to become a system administrator. The maximum length can be up to 20 characters if unhashed, 32 characters if hashed, 54 characters if the hash2 keyword is specified.

hash — Specifies the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the **hash** parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted

hash2 — Specifies the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form. If the **hash2** parameter is not used, the less encrypted **hash** form is assumed.

enable-admin

Syntax **enable-admin**

Context <global>

Description **NOTE:** See the description for the **admin-password** on the previous page. If the **admin-password** is configured in the config>system>security>password context, then any user can enter the special administrative mode by entering the **enable-admin** command.

enable-admin is in the default profile. By default, all users are given access to this command.

Once the **enable-admin** command is entered, the user is prompted for a password. If the password matches, user is given unrestricted access to all the commands.

The minimum length of the password is determined by the **minimum-length** command. The complexity requirements for the password is determined by the **complexity** command.

There are two ways to verify that a user is in the enable-admin mode:

- show users — Administrator can know which users are in this mode.
- Enter the enable-admin command again at the root prompt and an error message will be returned.

```
A:ALA-1# show users
===============================================================================
User Type From Login time Idle time
===============================================================================
admin Console -- 10AUG2006 13:55:24 0d 19:42:22
admin Telnet 10.20.30.93 09AUG2006 08:35:23 0d 00:00:00 A
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of users : 2
'A' indicates user is in admin mode
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
A:ALA-1# enable-admin
MINOR: CLI Already in admin mode.
A:ALA-1#
```

aging

Syntax **aging** *days*
no aging

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command configures the number of days a user password is valid before the user must change their password. This parameter can be used to force the user to change the password at the configured interval.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default No aging is enforced.

Parameters *days* — The maximum number of days the password is valid.

Values 1 — 500

attempts

Syntax **attempts** *count* [**time** *minutes1* [**lockout** *minutes2*]
no attempts

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command configures a threshold value of unsuccessful login attempts allowed in a specified time frame.

If the threshold is exceeded, the user is locked out for a specified time period.

If multiple **attempts** commands are entered, each command overwrites the previously entered command.

The **no attempts** command resets all values to default.

Default **count**: **3**
time *minutes*: **5**
lockout *minutes*: **10**

Parameters *count* — The number of unsuccessful login attempts allowed for the specified **time**. This is a mandatory value that must be explicitly entered.

Values 1 — 64

time *minutes* — The period of time, in minutes, that a specified number of unsuccessful attempts can be made before the user is locked out.

Values 0 — 60

lockout *minutes* — The lockout period in minutes where the user is not allowed to login. Allowed values are decimal integers.

Values 0 — 1440 | infinite

When the user exceeds the attempted count times in the specified time, then that user is locked out from any further login attempts for the configured time period.

Default 10

Values 0 — 1440

Values infinite; user is locked out and must wait until manually unlocked before any further attempts.

authentication-order

Syntax **authentication-order** [*method-1*] [*method-2*] [*method-3*] [**exit-on-reject**]
no authentication-order

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command configures the sequence in which password authentication, authorization, and accounting is attempted among RADIUS, TACACS+, and local passwords.

The order should be from the most preferred authentication method to the least preferred. The presence of all methods in the command line does not guarantee that they are all operational. Specifying options that are not available delays user authentication.

If all (operational) methods are attempted and no authentication for a particular login has been granted, then an entry in the security log register the failed attempt. Both the attempted login identification and originating IP address is logged with the a timestamp.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default authentication sequence.

Default **authentication-order radius tacplus local** - The preferred order for password authentication is 1. RADIUS, 2. TACACS+ and 3. local passwords.

Parameters *method-1* — The first password authentication method to attempt.

Default radius

Values radius, tacplus, local

method-2 — The second password authentication method to attempt.

Default tacplus

Values radius, tacplus, local

method-3 — The third password authentication method to attempt.

Default local

Values radius, tacplus, local

radius — RADIUS authentication.

tacplus — TACACS+ authentication.

local — Password authentication based on the local password database.

exit-on-reject — When enabled and if one of the AAA methods configured in the authentication order sends a reject, then the next method in the order will not be tried. If the **exit-on-reject** keyword is not specified and if one AAA method sends a reject, the next AAA method will be attempted. If in this process, all the AAA methods are exhausted, it will be considered as a reject.

Note that a rejection is distinct from an unreachable authentication server. When the **exit-on-reject** keyword is specified, authorization and accounting will only use the method that provided an affirmation authentication; only if that method is no longer readable or is removed from the configuration will other configured methods be attempted. If the local keyword is the first authentication and:

- **exit-on-reject** is configured and the user does not exist, the user will not be authenticated.
- The user is authenticated locally, then other methods, if configured, will be used for authorization and accounting.
- The user is configured locally but without console access, login will be denied.

complexity-rules

Syntax **complexity**-rules

Context config>system>security>password

Description This defines a list of rules for configurable password options.

allow-user-name

Syntax [**no**] **allow-user-name**

Context config>system>security>password>complexity-rules

Description The user name is allowed to be used as part of the password.

The **no** form of the command does not allow user name to be used as password

credits

Syntax **credits** [**lowercase** *credits*] [**uppercase** *credits*] [**numeric** *credits*] [**special-character** *credits*]
no credits

Context config>system>security>password>complexity-rules

Description The maximum credits given for usage of the different character classes in the local passwords.

The **no** form of the command resets to default.

Default no credits

Parameters *credits* — The number of credits that can be used for each characters class.

Values 0-10

minimum-classes

Syntax **minimum-classes** *minimum*
no minimum-classes

Context config>system>security>password>complexity-rules

Description Force the use of at least this many different character classes

The no form of the command resets to default.

Default no minimum-classes

Parameters *minmum* — The minimum number of classes to be configured.

Values 2-4

minimum-length

Syntax **minimum-length** *length*
no minimum-length

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command configures the minimum number of characters required for locally administered passwords, HMAC-MD5-96, HMAC-SHA-96, and des-keys configured in the system security section.

If multiple minimum-length commands are entered each command overwrites the previous entered command.

The **no** form of the command reverts to default value.

Default **minimum-length 6**

Parameters *value* — The minimum number of characters required for a password.

Values 1 — 8

repeated-characters

Syntax **repeated-characters** *count*
no repeated-characters

Context config>system>security>password>complexity-rules

Description The number of times a characters can be repeated consecutively.

The **no** form of the command resets to default.

Default no repeated-characters

Parameters *count* — The minimum count of consecutively repeated characters.

Values 2-8

required

Syntax **required** [**lowercase** *count*] [**uppercase** *count*] [**numeric** *count*] [**special-character** *count*]
no required

Context config>system>security>password>complexity-rules

Description Force the minimum number of different character classes required.

The **no** form of the command resets to default.

Default no required

Parameters *count* — The minimum count of characters classes.

Values 0-10

dynsvc-password

Syntax **dynsvc-password** *password* [**hash**|**hash2**]
no dynsvc-password

Context config>system>security>password

Description Configure the password which enables the user to configure dynamic services.

Default no dynsvc-password

Parameters *password* — Configures the password which enables a user to become a system administrator. The maximum length can be up to 20 characters if unhashed, 32 characters if hashed, 54 characters if the hash2 keyword is specified.

hash — Specifies the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the **hash** parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted

hash2 — Specifies the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form. If the **hash2** parameter is not used, the less encrypted **hash** form is assumed.

enable-admin-control

Syntax **enable-admin-control**

Context config>system>security>password

Description Enable the user to become a system administrator.

tacplus-map-to-priv-lvl

Syntax **tacplus-map-to-priv-lvl** [*admin-priv-lvl*]
no tacplus-map-to-priv-lvl

Context config>system>security>password>enable-admin-control

Description When **tacplus-map-to-priv-lvl** is enabled, and tacplus authorization is enabled with the *use-priv-lvl* option, typing **enable-admin** starts an interactive authentication exchange from the SR OS node to the TACACS+ server. The start message (service=enable) contains the user-id and the requested admin-priv-lvl. Successful authentication results in the use of a new profile (as configured under **config>system>security>tacplus>priv-lvl-map**).

health-check

Syntax [**no**] **health-check** [**interval** *interval*]

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command specifies that RADIUS and TACACS+ servers are monitored for 3 seconds each at 30 second intervals. Servers that are not configured will have 3 seconds of idle time. If in this process a server is found to be unreachable, or a previously unreachable server starts responding, based on the type of the server, a trap will be sent.

The **no** form of the command disables the periodic monitoring of the RADIUS and TACACS+ servers. In this case, the operational status for the active server will be up if the last access was successful.

Default health-check 30

interval *interval* — Specifies the polling interval for RADIUS servers.

Values 6 — 1500

history

Syntax **history** *size*
no history

Context config>system>security>password

Description Configure how many previous passwords a new password is matched against.

Default no history

Parameters *size* — Specifies how many previous passwords a new password is matched against.

Values 1—20

minimum-age

Syntax **minimum-age** [**days** *days*] [**hrs** *hours*] [**min** *minutes*] [**sec** *seconds*]
no minimum-age

Context config>system>security>password

Description Configure the minimum required age of a password before it can be changed again.

Default no minimum-age

Parameters *days* — Specifies the minimum required days of a password before it can be changed again.

Values 0—1

hours — Specifies the minimum required hours of a password before it can be changed again.

Values 0—23

minutes — Specifies the minimum required minutes of a password before it can be changed again.

Values 0—59

seconds — Specifies the minimum required seconds of a password before it can be changed again.

Values 0—59

minimum-change

Syntax **minimum-change** *length*
no minimum-change

Context config>system>security>password

Description This command configures the minimum number of characters required to be different in the new password from a previous password.

The **no** form of the command reverts to default value.

Default no min-change

Parameters *length* — Specifies how many characters must be different in the new password from the old password.

Values 2—20

certificate

Syntax **certificate**

Context admin

Description This command enables the context to configure X.509 certificate related operational parameters.

Values

display

Syntax **display type** {**cert**|**key**|**crl**|**cert-request**} *url-string* **format** {**pkcs10**|**pkcs12**|**pkcs7-der**|**pkcs7-pem**|**pem**|**der**} [**password** [*32 chars max*]]

Context admin>certificate

Description This command displays the content of an input file in plain text. Note that when displaying the key file content, only the key size and type are displayed.

The following list summarizes the formats supported by this command:

DefaultCertificate

- → system format
- → PKCS #12
- → PKCS #7 PEM encoded
- → PKCS #7 DER encoded
- → RFC4945

- Certificate Request
  - → PKCS #10
- Key
  - → system format
  - → PKCS #12
- CRL
  - → system format
  - → PKCS #7 PEM encoded
  - → PKCS #7 DER encoded
  - → RFC4945

Default none

Parameters *file-url* — Specifies the local CF card url of the input file.

Values

url-string	<local-url> - [99 chars max]
local-url	<cflash-id>/<file-path>
cflash-id	cf1:|cf2:|cf3:

type — Specifies the type of input file, possible values are cert/key/crl/cert-request.

Values cert, key, crl, cert-request

format — Specifies the format of input file.

Values pkcs10, pkcs12, pkcs7-der, pkcs7-pem, pem, der

password — Specifies the password to decrypt the input file in case that it is a encrypted PKCS#12 file, up to 99 characters in length.

gen-keypair

Syntax **gen-keypair** *url-string* [**size** {**512**|**1024**|**2048**}] [**type** {**rsa**|**dsa**}]

Context admin>certificate

Description This command generatse a RSA or DSA private key/public key pairs and store them in a local file in cf3:\system-pki\key

Parameters *url-string* — Specifies the name of the key file.

Values

url-string	<local-url> - [99 chars max]
local-url	<cflash-id>/<file-path>
cflash-id	cf1:|cf2:|cf3:

size — Specifies the key size in bits.
Note: The minimum key-size is 1024 when running in FIPS-140-2 mode.

Values 512/1024/2048

Default 2048

type — Specifies the type of key.

Default rsa

secure-nd-export

Syntax **secure-nd-export**

Context admin>certificate

Description This command exports IPv6 Secure Neighbor Discovery (SeND) certificates to the file cf[1..3]:\system-pki\secureNdKey in PKCS #7 DER format.

secure-nd-import

Syntax **secure-nd-import input** *url-string* **format** *input-format* [**password** *password*] [**key-rollover**]

Context admin>certificate

Description This command imports IPv6 Secure Neighbor Discovery (SeND) certificates from a file, and saves them to cf[1..3]:\system-pki\secureNdKey in PKCS #7 DER format.

Parameters **input** *url-string* **—** Specifies the name of an input file up to 99 characters in length.

Values

local-url	<cflash-id>\<file-path>
cflash-id	cf1:|cf2:|cf3:

format *input-format* — Specifies the input file format.

Values pkcs12, pem, or der

password *password* — Specifies the password to decrypt the input file if it is an encrypted PKCS#12 file.

Values 32 characters maximum

Profile Management Commands

action

Syntax **action** {**deny** | **permit**}

Context config>system>security>profile *user-profile-name*>entry *entry-id*

Description This command configures the action associated with the profile entry.

Parameters **deny —** Specifies that commands matching the entry command match criteria are to be denied.

permit — Specifies that commands matching the entry command match criteria will be permitted.

match

Syntax **match** *command-string*
no match

Context config>system>security>profile *user-profile-name*>entry *entry-id*

Description This command configures a command or subtree commands in subordinate command levels are specified.

Because the OS exits when the first match is found, subordinate levels cannot be modified with subsequent action commands. More specific action commands should be entered with a lower entry number or in a profile that is evaluated prior to this profile.

All commands below the hierarchy level of the matched command are denied.

The **no** form of this command removes a match condition

Default none

Parameters *command-string* — The CLI command or CLI tree level that is the scope of the profile entry.

copy

Syntax **copy** {**user** *source-user* | **profile** *source-profile*} **to** *destination* [**overwrite**]

Context config>system>security

Description This command copies a profile or user from a source profile to a destination profile.

Parameters *source-profile* — The profile to copy. The profile must exist.

dest-profile — The copied profile is copied to the destination profile.

overwrite — Specifies that the destination profile configuration will be overwritten with the copied source profile configuration. A profile will not be overwritten if the **overwrite** command is not specified.

default-action

Syntax **default-action {deny-all | permit-all | none}**

Context config>system>security>profile *user-profile-name*

Description This command specifies the default action to be applied when no match conditions are met.

Default none

Parameters **deny-all —** Sets the default of the profile to deny access to all commands.

permit-all — Sets the default of the profile to permit access to all commands.

Note: permit-all does not change access to security commands. Security commands are only and always available to members of the super-user profile.

none — Sets the default of the profile to no-action. This option is useful to assign multiple profiles to a user.

For example, if a user is a member of two profiles and the default action of the first profile is **permit-all**, then the second profile will never be evaluated because the **permit-all** is executed first. Set the first profile default action to **none** and if no match conditions are met in the first profile, then the second profile will be evaluated. If the default action of the last profile is **none** and no explicit match is found, then the default **deny-all** takes effect.

description

Syntax **description** *description-string*
no description

Context config>system>security>profile *user-profile-name*>entry *entry-id*

Description This command creates a text description stored in the configuration file for a configuration context.

The **description** command associates a text string with a configuration context to help identify the context in the configuration file.

The **no** form of the command removes the string from the context.

Default No description is configured.

Parameters *string* — The description character string. Allowed values are any string up to 80 characters long composed of printable, 7-bit ASCII characters. If the string contains special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.), the entire string must be enclosed within double quotes.

entry

Syntax [**no**] **entry** *entry-id*

Context config>system>security>profile *user-profile-name*

Description This command is used to create a user profile entry.

More than one entry can be created with unique *entry-id* numbers. Exits when the first match is found and executes the actions according to the accompanying **action** command. Entries should be sequenced from most explicit to least explicit.

An entry may not have any match criteria defined (in which case, everything matches) but must have at least the keyword **action** for it to be considered complete.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified entry from the user profile.

Default No entry IDs are defined.

Parameters *entry-id* — An entry-id uniquely identifies a user profile command match criteria and a corresponding action. If more than one entry is configured, the *entry-ids* should be numbered in staggered increments to allow users to insert a new entry without requiring renumbering of the existing entries.

Values 1 — 9999

profile

Syntax [**no**] **profile** *user-profile-name*

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates a context to create user profiles for CLI command tree permissions.

Profiles are used to either deny or permit user console access to a hierarchical branch or to specific commands.

Once the profiles are created, the **user** command assigns users to one or more profiles. You can define up to 16 user profiles but a maximum of 8 profiles can be assigned to a user. The *user-profile-name* can consist of up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

The **no** form of the command deletes a user profile.

Default user-profile default

Parameters *user-profile-name* — The user profile name entered as a character string. The string is case sensitive and limited to 32 ASCII 7-bit printable characters with no spaces.

renum

Syntax **renum** *old-entry-number new-entry-number*

Context config>system>security>profile *user-profile-name*

Description This command renumbers profile entries to re-sequence the entries.

Since the OS exits when the first match is found and executes the actions according to accompanying action command, re-numbering is useful to rearrange the entries from most explicit to least explicit.

Parameters *old-entry-number* — Enter the entry number of an existing entry.

Values 1 — 9999

new-entry-number — Enter the new entry number.

Values 1 — 9999

User Management Commands

access

Syntax [**no**] **access** [**ftp**] [**snmp**] [**console**][**netconf**]

Context config>system>security>user
config>system>security>user-template

Description This command grants a user permission for FTP, SNMP, console or lawful intercept (LI) access.

If a user requires access to more than one application, then multiple applications can be specified in a single command. Multiple commands are treated additively.

The **no** form of command removes access for a specific application.
no access denies permission for all management access methods. To deny a single access method, enter the **no** form of the command followed by the method to be denied, for example, **no access FTP** denies FTP access.

Default No access is granted to the user by default.

Parameters **ftp —** Specifies FTP permission.

snmp — Specifies SNMP permission. This keyword is only configurable in the **config>system>security>user** context.

console — Specifies console access (serial port or Telnet) permission.

netconf — Allows the user defined in the specified user context to access NETCONF sessions. The user must also have console access permissions configured to operate with NETCONF.

authentication

Syntax **authentication** {[**none**] | [[**hash**] {**md5** *key-1* | **sha** *key-1*} **privacy** {**none**|**des-key**|**aes-128-cfb-key** *key-2*}]

Context config>system>security>user>snmp

Description This command configures the authentication and encryption method the user must use in order to be validated by the router. SNMP authentication allows the device to validate the managing node that issued the SNMP message and determine if the message has been tampered.

The keys configured in this command must be localized keys (MD5 or DES hash of the configured SNMP engine-ID and a password). The password is not directly entered in this command (only the localized key).

Default **authentication none** - No authentication is configured and privacy cannot be configured.

Parameters **none —** Do not use authentication. If **none** is specified, then privacy cannot be configured.

hash — When **hash** is not specified, then non-encrypted characters can be entered. When **hash** is configured, then all specified keys are stored in an encrypted format in the configuration file. The password must be entered in encrypted form when the **hash** parameter is used.

md5 *key* **—** The authentication protocol can either be HMAC-MD5-96 or HMAC-SHA-96.

The MD5 authentication key is stored in an encrypted format. The minimum key length is determined by the **config>system>security>password>minimum-length** value. The maximum length is 16 octets (32 printable characters).

The complexity of the key is determined by the **complexity-rules** command.

sha *key* **—** The authentication protocol can be either HMAC-MD5-96 or HMAC-SHA-96.

The **sha** authentication key is stored in an encrypted format. The minimum key length is determined by the **config>system>security>password>minimum-length** value. The maximum length is 20 octets (40 printable characters).

The complexity of the key is determined by the **complexity-rules** command.

privacy none — Do not perform SNMP packet encryption.

Default privacy none

privacy des-key key-2 — Use DES for SNMP payload encryption and configure the key. The key must be a 32 hex-character string and is stored in an encrypted format.

Note: des-key is not available in FIPS-140-2 mode.

privacy aes-128-cfb-key key-2 — Use 128 bit CFB mode AES for SNMP payload encryption and configure the key. The key must be a 32 hex-character string and is stored in an encrypted format.

Default privacy none

group

Syntax **group** *group-name*
no group

Context config>system>security>user>snmp

Description This command associates (or links) a user to a group name. The group name must be configured with the **config>system>security>user >snmp>group** command. The **access** command links the group with one or more views, security model (s), security level (s), and read, write, and notify permissions

Default No group name is associated with a user.

Parameters *group-name* — Enter the group name (between 1 and 32 alphanumeric characters) that is associated with this user. A user can be associated with one group-name per security model.

cannot-change-password

Syntax [**no**] **cannot-change-password**

Context config>system>security>user>console

Description This command allows a user the privilege to change their password for both FTP and console login.

To disable a user's privilege to change their password, use the **cannot-change-password** form of the command.

Note that the cannot-change-password flag is not replicated when a user copy is performed. A new-password-at-login flag is created instead.

Default no cannot-change-password

console

Syntax **console**

Context config>system>security>user
config>system>security>user-template

Description This command creates the context to configure user profile membership for the console (either Telnet or CPM serial port user).

copy

Syntax **copy** {**user** *source-user* | **profile** *source-profile*} **to** *destination* [**overwrite**]

Context config>system>security

Description This command copies a specific user's configuration parameters to another (destination) user.

The password is set to a carriage return and a new password at login must be selected.

Parameters *source-user* — The user to copy. The user must already exist.

dest-user — The copied profile is copied to a destination user.

overwrite — Specifies that the destination user configuration will be overwritten with the copied source user configuration. A configuration will not be overwritten if the **overwrite** command is not specified.

home-directory

Syntax **home-directory** *url-prefix* [*directory*] [*directory*/*directory*…]
no home-directory

Context config>system>security>user
config>system>security>user-template

Description This command configures the local home directory for the user for both console (file commands and '>' redirection) and FTP access.

If the URL or the specified URL/directory structure is not present, then a warning message is issued and the default is assumed.

The **no** form of the command removes the configured home directory.

Default no home-directory

NOTE: If restrict-to-home has been configured no file access is granted and no home-directory is created, if restrict-to-home is not applied then root becomes the user's home-directory.

Parameters *local-url-prefix* [*directory*] [*directory/directory*…] — The user's local home directory URL prefix and directory structure up to 190 characters in length.

profile

Syntax **profile** *user-profile-name*
no profile

Context config>system>security>user-template

Description This command configures the profile for the user based on this template.

Parameters *user-profile-name* — The user profile name entered as a character string. The string is case sensitive and limited to 32 ASCII 7-bit printable characters with no spaces.

login-exec

Syntax [**no**] **login-exec** *url-prefix*: *source-url*

Context config>system>security>user>console
config>system>security>user-template>console

Description This command configures a user's login exec file which executes whenever the user successfully logs in to a console session.

Only one exec file can be configured. If multiple **login-exec** commands are entered for the same user, each subsequent entry overwrites the previous entry.

The **no** form of the command disables the login exec file for the user.

Default No login exec file is defined.

Parameters *url-prefix: source-url* — Enter either a local or remote URL, up to 200 characters in length, that identifies the exec file that will be executed after the user successfully logs in.

member

Syntax **member** *user-profile-name* [*user-profile-name…*]
no member *user-profile-name*

Context config>system>security>user>console

Description This command is used to allow the user access to a profile.

A user can participate in up to eight profiles.

The **no** form of this command deletes access user access to a profile.

Default default

Parameters *user-profile-name* — The user profile name.

new-password-at-login

Syntax [**no**] **new-password-at-login**

Context config>system>security>user>console

Description This command forces the user to change a password at the next console login. The new password applies to FTP but the change can be enforced only by the console, SSH, or Telnet login.

The **no** form of the command does not force the user to change passwords.

Default no new-password-at-login

password

Syntax **password** [*password*]

Context config>system>security>user

Description This command configures the user password for console and FTP access.

The password is stored in an encrypted format in the configuration file when specified. Passwords should be encased in double quotes (“ “) at the time of the password creation. The double quote character (“) is not accepted inside a password. It is interpreted as the start or stop delimiter of a string.

The password can be entered as plain text or a hashed value. SR OS can distinguish between hashed passwords and plain text passwords and take the appropriate action to store the password correctly.

```
config>system>security>user# password testuser1
```

The password is hashed by default.

For example:

```
config>system>security# user testuser1
config>system>security>user$ password xyzabcd1
config>system>security>user# exit


config>system>security# info
```

```
------------------------------------
...
            user "testuser1"
                password "$2y$10$pFoehOg/tCbBMPDJ/kqpu.8af0AoVGY2xsR7WFqyn5fVTnwR-
zGmOK"
            exit
...
------------------------------------
config>system>security#
```

The **password** command allows you also to enter the password as a hashed value.

For example:

```
config>system>security# user testuser1
config>system>security>user$ password "$2y$10$pFoehOg/tCbBMPDJ/
kqpu.8af0AoVGY2xsR7WFqyn5fVTnwRzGmOK"
config>system>security>user# exit
config>system>security# info
------------------------------------
...
user "testuser1"
password "$2y$10$pFoehOg/tCbBMPDJ/kqpu.8af0AoVGY2xsR7WFqyn5fVTnwRzGmOK"
exit
...
------------------------------------
config>system>security#
```

Parameters *password* — This is the password for the user that must be entered by this user during the login procedure. The minimum length of the password is determined by the **minimum-length** command. The maximum length can be up to 20 chars if unhashed, 32 characters if hashed. The complexity requirements for the password is determined by the **complexity** command.

A password value that does not conform to the minimum-length or other password complexity rules can be configured using the **config**>**system**>**security**>**user**>**password** command, but a warning is provided in the CLI. This allows, for example, an administrator to configure a non-conformant password for a user. A user cannot configure a non-conformant password for themselves using the global **password** command.

All password special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.) must be enclosed within double quotes.

For example: config>system>security>user# password “south#bay?”

The question mark character (?) cannot be directly inserted as input during a telnet connection because the character is bound to the **help** command during a normal Telnet/console connection.

To insert a # or ? characters, they must be entered inside a notepad or clipboard program and then cut and pasted into the Telnet session in the password field that is encased in the double quotes as delimiters for the password.

If a password is entered without any parameters, a password length of zero is implied: (carriage return).

restricted-to-home

Syntax [**no**] **restricted-to-home**

Context config>system>security>user
config>system>security>user-template

Description This command prevents users from navigating above their home directories for file access (either by means of CLI sessions with the file command, '>' redirection, or by means of FTP). A user is not allowed to navigate to a directory higher in the directory tree on the home directory device. The user is allowed to create and access subdirectories below their home directory.

If a home-directory is not configured or the home directory is not available, then the user has no file access.

The **no** form of the command allows the user access to navigate to directories above their home directory.

Default no restricted-to-home

rsa-key

Syntax **rsa-key** *public-key-value key-id*
rsa-key *key-id*

Context config>system>security>user

Description This command allows the user to associate an RSA public key with the user-name. The public key must be enclosed in quotation marks. This command may be used several times since a user may have multiple public keys. The key is a 1024-bit key.

Default none

Parameters *public-key-value* — Specifies the public key up to 255 characters in length. The key is a 1024-bit key.

key-id — Specifies the key identifier name.

Values 1 — 32

snmp

Syntax **snmp**

Context config>system>security>user

Description This command creates the context to configure SNMP group membership for a specific user and defines encryption and authentication parameters.

All SNMPv3 users must be configured with the commands available in this CLI node.

The OS always uses the configured SNMPv3 user name as the security user name.

user-template

Syntax **user-template** {**tacplus_default** | **radius_default**}

Context config>system>security

Description This command configures default security user template parameters.

Parameters **tacplus_default —** Specifies the default TACACS+ user template. All parameters of the tacplus_default template except the "profile" are actively applied to all TACACS+ users if tacplus use-default-template is enabled. The "profile" parameters are applied to all TACACS+ users if tacplus authorization is enabled (without the use-priv-lvl option) and tacplus use-default-template is enabled.

radius_default — Specifies the default RADIUS user template. The radius_default template is actively applied to a RADIUS user if radius authorization is enabled, radius use-default-template is enabled, and no VSAs are returned with the auth-accept from the RADIUS server.

user

Syntax [**no**] **user** *user-name*

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates a local user and a context to edit the user configuration.

If a new *user-name* is entered, the user is created. When an existing *user-name* is specified, the user parameters can be edited.

When creating a new user and then entering the **info** command, the system displays a password in the output. This is expected behavior in the hash2 scenario. However, when using that user name, there will be no password required. The user can login to the system and then <ENTER> at the password prompt, the user will be logged in.

Unless an administrator explicitly changes the password, it will be null. The hashed value displayed uses the username and null password field, so when the username is changed, the displayed hashed value will change.

The **no** form of the command deletes the user and all configuration data. Users cannot delete themselves.

Default none

Parameters *user-name* — The name of the user up to 32 characters.

CLI Session Management Commands

cli-session-group

Syntax [**no**] **cli-session-group** *session-group-name* [**create**]

Context config>system>security

Description This command is used to configure a session group that can be used to limit the number of CLI sessions available to members of the group.

Parameters *session-group-name* — Specifies a particualr session group.

ssh-max-sessions

Syntax **ssh-max-sessions** *session-limit*
no ssh-max-sessions

Context config>system>security>cli-session-group
config>system>security>profile

Description This command is used to limit the number of SSH-based CLI sessions available to all users that are part of a particular profile, or to all users of all profiles that are part of the same cli-session-group.

The no form of this command disables the command and the profile/group limit is not applied on the number of sessions.

Default no ssh-max-sessions

Parameters *session-limit* — Specifies the maximum number of allowed SSH-based CLI sessions.

Values 0 — 50

telnet-max-sessions

Syntax **telnet-max-sessions** *session-limit*
no telnet-max-sessions

Context config>system>security>cli-session-group
config>system>security>profile

Description This command is used to limit the number of Telnet-based CLI sessions available to all users that are part of a particular profile, or to all users of all profiles that are part of the same cli-session-group.

The no form of this command disables the command and the profile/group limit is not applied on the number of sessions.

Default no telnet-max-sessions

Parameters *session-limit* — Specifies the maximum number of allowed Telnet-based CLI sessions.

Values 0 — 50

combined-max-sessions

Syntax **combined-max-sessions** *session-limit*
no combined-max-sessions

Context config>system>security>cli-session-group
config>system>security>profile

Description This command is used to limit the number of combined SSH/TELENT based CLI sessions available to all users that are part of a particular profile, or to all users of all profiles that are part of the same cli-session-group.

The **no** form of this command disables the command and the profile/group limit is not applied to the number of combined sessions.

Default no combined-max-sessions

Parameters *session-limit* — Specifies the maximum number of allowed combined SSH/TELNET based CLI sessions.

Values 0 — 50

RADIUS Client Commands

access-algorithm

Syntax **access-algorithm** {**direct** | **round-robin**}
no access-algorithm

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command indicates the algorithm used to access the set of RADIUS servers.

Default direct

Parameters **direct —** The first server will be used as primary server for all requests, the second as secondary and so on.

round-robin — The first server will be used as primary server for the first request, the second server as primary for the second request, and so on. If the router gets to the end of the list, it starts again with the first server.

accounting

Syntax [**no**] **accounting**

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command enables RADIUS accounting.

The **no** form of this command disables RADIUS accounting.

Default no accounting

accounting-port

Syntax **accounting-port** *port*
no accounting-port

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command specifies a UDP port number on which to contact the RADIUS server for accounting requests.

Parameters *port* — Specifies the UDP port number.

Values 1 — 65535

Default 1813

authorization

Syntax [**no**] **authorization**

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command configures RADIUS authorization parameters for the system.

Default no authorization

interactive-authentication

Syntax [**no**] **authorization**

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command enables RADIUS interactive authentication for the system. Enabling interactive-authentication forces RADIUS to fall into challenge/response mode.

Default no authentication

port

Syntax **port** *port*
no port

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command configures the TCP port number to contact the RADIUS server.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default **1812** (as specified in RFC 2865, *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service* (*RADIUS*))

Parameters *port* — The TCP port number to contact the RADIUS server.

Values 1 — 65535

radius

Syntax [**no**] **radius**

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates the context to configure RADIUS authentication on the router.

Implement redundancy by configuring multiple server addresses for each router.

The **no** form of the command removes the RADIUS configuration.

retry

Syntax **retry** *count*
no retry

Context config>system>security>radius
config>system>security>dot1x>radius-plcy

Description This command configures the number of times the router attempts to contact the RADIUS server for authentication if there are problems communicating with the server.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 3

Parameters *count* — The retry count.

Values 1 — 10

priv-lvl-map

Syntax [**no**] **priv-lvl-map**

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command is used to specify a series of mappings between TACACS+ priv-lvl and locally configured profiles for authorization. These mappings are used when the use-priv-lvl option is specified for tacplus authorization.

priv-lvl

Syntax **priv-lvl** *priv-lvl user-profile-name*
no priv-lvl *priv-lvl*

Context config>system>security>tacplus>priv-lvl-map

Description This command maps a specific TACACS+ priv-lvl to a locally configured profile for authorization. This mapping is used when the **use-priv-lvl** option is specified for TACPLUS authorization.

Parameters *priv-lvl* — Specifies the privilege level used when sending a TACACS+ ENABLE request.

Values 0 — 15

user-profile-name — Specifies the user profile for this mapping.

server

Syntax **server** *index* **address** *ip-address* **secret** *key* [**hash** | **hash2**]
no server *index*

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command adds a RADIUS server and configures the RADIUS server IP address, index, and key values.

Up to five RADIUS servers can be configured at any one time. RADIUS servers are accessed in order from lowest to highest index for authentication requests until a response from a server is received. A higher indexed server is only queried if no response is received from a lower indexed server (which implies that the server is not available). If a response from a server is received, no other RADIUS servers are queried. It is assumed that there are multiple identical servers configured as backups and that the servers do not have redundant data.

The **no** form of the command removes the server from the configuration.

Default No RADIUS servers are configured.

Parameters *index* — The index for the RADIUS server. The index determines the sequence in which the servers are queried for authentication requests. Servers are queried in order from lowest to highest index.

Values 1 — 5

address *ip-address* **—** The IP address of the RADIUS server. Two RADIUS servers cannot have the same IP address. An error message is generated if the server address is a duplicate.

Values		
	ipv4-address	a.b.c.d (host bits must be 0)
	ipv6-address	x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x (eight 16-bit pieces) x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d x: [0..FFFF]H d: [0..255]D

secret *key* **—** The secret key to access the RADIUS server. This secret key must match the password on the RADIUS server.

Values Up to 128 characters in length.

hash — Specifies the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the **hash** parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted form in the configuration file with the **hash** parameter specified.

hash2 — Specifies the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form. If the **hash2** parameter is not used, the less encrypted **hash** form is assumed.

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command administratively disables the RADIUS protocol operation. Shutting down the protocol does not remove or change the configuration other than the administrative state.

The operational state of the entity is disabled as well as the operational state of any entities contained within. Many objects must be shut down before they may be deleted.

The **no** form of the command administratively enables the protocol which is the default state.

Default no shutdown

timeout

Syntax **timeout** *seconds*
no timeout

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command configures the number of seconds the router waits for a response from a RADIUS server.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 3 seconds

Parameters *seconds* — The number of seconds the router waits for a response from a RADIUS server, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 90

use-default-template

Syntax [**no**] **use-default-template**

Context config>system>security>radius

Description This command specifies whether the radius_default user-template is actively applied to the RADIUS user if no VSAs are returned with the auth-accept from the RADIUS server. When enabled, the radius_default user-template is actively applied if no VSAs are returned with the auth-accept from the RADIUS server and radius authorization is enabled.

TACACS+ Client Commands

server

Syntax **server** *index* **address** *ip-address* **secret** *key*
no server *index*

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command adds a TACACS+ server and configures the TACACS+ server IP address, index, and key values.

Up to five TACACS+ servers can be configured at any one time. TACACS+ servers are accessed in order from lowest index to the highest index for authentication requests.

The **no** form of the command removes the server from the configuration.

Default No TACACS+ servers are configured.

Parameters *index* — The index for the TACACS+ server. The index determines the sequence in which the servers are queried for authentication requests. Servers are queried in order from the lowest index to the highest index.

Values 1 — 5

address *ip-address* **—** The IP address of the TACACS+ server. Two TACACS+ servers cannot have the same IP address. An error message is generated if the server address is a duplicate.

Values		
	ipv4-address	a.b.c.d (host bits must be 0)
	ipv6-address	x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x (eight 16-bit pieces) x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d x: [0..FFFF]H d: [0..255]D

secret *key* **—** The secret key to access the RADIUS server. This secret key must match the password on the RADIUS server.

Values Up to 128 characters in length.

hash — Specifies the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the **hash** parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted form in the configuration file with the **hash** parameter specified.

hash2 — Specifies the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form. If the **hash2** parameter is not used, the less encrypted **hash** form is assumed.

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command administratively disables the TACACS+ protocol operation. Shutting down the protocol does not remove or change the configuration other than the administrative state.

The operational state of the entity is disabled as well as the operational state of any entities contained within. Many objects must be shut down before they may be deleted.

The **no** form of the command administratively enables the protocol which is the default state.

Default no shutdown

tacplus

Syntax **[no] tacplus**

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates the context to configure TACACS+ authentication on the router.

Configure multiple server addresses for each router for redundancy.

The **no** form of the command removes the TACACS+ configuration.

accounting

Syntax **accounting [record-type {start-stop | stop-only}]**
no accounting

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command configures the type of accounting record packet that is to be sent to the TACACS+ server. The **record-type** parameter indicates whether TACACS+ accounting start and stop packets be sent or just stop packets be sent.

Default record-type stop-only

Parameters **record-type start-stop —** Specifies that a TACACS+ start packet is sent whenever the user executes a command.

record-type stop-only — Specifies that a stop packet is sent whenever the command execution is complete.

authorization

Syntax **[no] authorization [use-priv-lvl]**

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command configures TACACS+ authorization parameters for the system.

Default no authorization

use-priv-lvl — Automatically performs a single authorization request to the TACACS+ server for cmd* (all commands) immediately after login, and then use the local profile associated (via the priv-lvl-map) with the priv-lvl returned by the TACACS+ server for all subsequent authorization (except enable-admin). After the initial authorization for cmd*, no further authorization requests will be sent to the TACACS+ server (except enable-admin).

interactive-authentication

Syntax **[no] interactive-authentication**

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This configuration instructs SR OS to send no username nor password in the TACACS+ start message, and to display the *server_msg* in the GETUSER and GETPASS response from the TACACS+ server. Interactive authentication can be used to support a One Time Password scheme (e.g. S/Key). An example flow (e.g. with a telnet connection) is as follows:

- SR OS will send an authentication start request to the TACACS+ server with no username nor password.
- TACACS+ server replies with TAC_PLUS_AUTHEN_STATUS_GETUSER and a *server_msg*.
- SR OS displays the *server_msg*, and collects the user name.
- SR OS sends a continue message with the user name.
- TACACS+ server replies with TAC_PLUS_AUTHEN_STATUS_GETPASS and a *server_msg*.
- SR OS displays the *server_msg* (which may contain, for example, an S/Key for One Time Password operation), and collects the password.
- SR OS sends a continue message with the password.
- TACACS+ server replies with PASS or FAIL.

When interactive-authentication is disabled SR OS will send the username and password in the *tacplus* start message. An example flow (e.g. with a telnet connection) is as follows:

- TAC_PLUS_AUTHEN_TYPE_ASCII.
  - → the login username in the “user” field.
  - → the password in the *user_msg* field (note: this is non-standard but doesn’t cause interoperability problems).
- TACACS+ server ignores the password and replies with TAC_PLUS_AUTHEN_STATUS_GETPASS.
- SR OS sends a continue packet with the password in the *user_msg* field.
- TACACS+ server replies with PASS or FAIL.

When interactive-authentication is enabled, tacplus must be the first method specified in the authentication-order configuration.

Default no interactive-authentication

timeout

Syntax **timeout** *second*s
no timeout

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command configures the number of seconds the router waits for a response from a TACACS+ server.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default **3**

Parameters *seconds* — The number of seconds the router waits for a response from a TACACS+ server, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 90

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command administratively disables the TACACS+ protocol operation. Shutting down the protocol does not remove or change the configuration other than the administrative state.

The operational state of the entity is disabled as well as the operational state of any entities contained within. Many objects must be shut down before they may be deleted.

The **no** form of the command administratively enables the protocol which is the default state.

Default no shutdown

use-default-template

Syntax [**no**] **use-default-template**

Context config>system>security>tacplus

Description This command specifies whether the tacplus_default user-template is actively applied to the TACACS+ user. When enabled, the tacplus_default user-template is actively applied if tacplus authorization is enabled (without the use-priv-lvl option).

Generic 802.1x COMMANDS

dot1x

Syntax [**no**] **dot1x**

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates the context to configure 802.1x network access control on the router.

The **no** form of the command removes the 802.1x configuration.

radius-plcy

Syntax [**no**] **radius-plcy**

Context config>system>security> dot1x

Description This command creates the context to configure RADIUS server parameters for 802.1x network access control on the router.

NOTE: The RADIUS server configured under the config>system>security>dot1x>radius-plcy context authenticates clients who get access to the data plane of the router as opposed to the RADIUS server configured under the **config>system>radius** context which authenticates CLI login users who get access to the management plane of the router.

The **no** form of the command removes the RADIUS server configuration for 802.1x.

retry

Syntax **retry** *count*
no retry

Context config>system>security> dot1x

Description This command configures the number of times the router attempts to contact the RADIUS server for authentication if there are problems communicating with the server.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 3

Parameters *count* — The retry count.

Values 1 — 10

server (dot1x)

Syntax **server** *server-index* **address** *ip-address* **secret** *key* [**hash** | **hash2**] [**auth-port** *auth-port*] [**acct-port** *acct-port*] [**type** *server-type*]
no server *index*

Context config>system>security> dot1x>radius-plcy

Description This command adds a Dot1x server and configures the Dot1x server IP address, index, and key values.

Up to five Dot1x servers can be configured at any one time. Dot1x servers are accessed in order from lowest to highest index for authentication requests until a response from a server is received. A higher indexed server is only queried if no response is received from a lower indexed server (which implies that the server is not available). If a response from a server is received, no other Dot1x servers are queried. It is assumed that there are multiple identical servers configured as backups and that the servers do not have redundant data.

The **no** form of the command removes the server from the configuration.

Default No Dot1x servers are configured.

Parameters *server-index* — The index for the Dot1x server. The index determines the sequence in which the servers are queried for authentication requests. Servers are queried in order from lowest to highest index.

Values 1 — 5

address *ip-address* — The IP address of the Dot1x server. Two Dot1x servers cannot have the same IP address. An error message is generated if the server address is a duplicate.

secret *key* — The secret key to access the Dot1x server. This secret key must match the password on the Dot1x server.

Values Up to 128 characters in length.

hash — Specifies the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the **hash** parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted form in the configuration file with the **hash** parameter specified.

hash2 — Specifies the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form. If the **hash2** parameter is not used, the less encrypted **hash** form is assumed.

acct-port *acct-port* — The UDP port number on which to contact the RADIUS server for accounting requests.

auth-port *auth-port* — specifies a UDP port number to be used as a match criteria.

Values 1 — 65535

type *server-type* — Specifies the server type.

Values authorization, accounting, combined

source-address

Syntax **source-address** *ip-address*
no source-address

Context config>system>security> dot1x>radius-plcy

Description This command configures the NAS IP address to be sent in the RADIUS packet.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default By default the System IP address is used in the NAS field.

Parameters *ip-address* — The IP prefix for the IP match criterion in dotted decimal notation.

Values 0.0.0.0 — 255.255.255.255

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>security>dot1x
config>system>security>dot1x>radius-plcy

Description This command administratively disables the 802.1x protocol operation. Shutting down the protocol does not remove or change the configuration other than the administrative state.

The operational state of the entity is disabled as well as the operational state of any entities contained within.

The **no** form of the command administratively enables the protocol which is the default state.

Default shutdown

timeout

Syntax **timeout** *seconds*
no timeout

Context config>system>security> dot1x>radius-plcy

Description This command configures the number of seconds the router waits for a response from a RADIUS server.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default 3 seconds

Parameters *seconds* — The number of seconds the router waits for a response from a RADIUS server, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 90

Keychain Authentication

keychain

Syntax [**no**] **keychain** *keychain-name*

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables the context to configure keychain parameters. A keychain must be configured on the system before it can be applied to a session.

The **no** form of the command removes the keychain nodal context and everything under it from the configuration. If the keychain to be removed is in use when the no keychain command is entered, the command will not be accepted and an error indicating that the keychain is in use will be printed.

Default none

Parameters *keychain-name* — Specifies a keychain name which identifies this particular keychain entry.

Values An ASCII string up to 32 characters.

direction

Syntax **direction**

Context config>system>security>keychain

Description This command specifies the data type that indicates the TCP stream direction to apply the keychain.

Default none

bi

Syntax **bi**

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction

Description This command configures keys for both send and receive stream directions.

Default none

uni

Syntax **uni**

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction

Description This command configures keys for send or receive stream directions.

Default none

receive

Syntax **receive**

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni

Description This command enables the receive nodal context. Entries defined under this context are used to authenticate TCP segments that are being received by the router.

Default none

send

Syntax **send**

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni

Description This command specifies the send nodal context to sign TCP segments that are being sent by the router to another device.

Default none

entry

Syntax **entry** *entry-id* **key** [*authentication-key* | *hash-key* | *hash2-key*] [**hash** | **hash2**] **algorithm** *algorithm*
no entry *entry-id*

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send

Description This command defines a particular key in the keychain. Entries are defined by an entry-id. A key-chain must have valid entries for the TCP Enhanced Authentication mechanism to work.

The **no** form of the command removes the entry from the keychain. If the entry is the active entry for sending, then this will cause a new active key to be selected (if one is available using the youngest key rule). If it is the ONLY possible send key, then the system will reject the command with an error indicating the configured key is the only available send key.

If the key is one of the eligible keys for receiving, it will be removed. If the key is the ONLY possible eligible key, then the command will not be accepted, and an error indicating that this is the only eligible key will be output.

The **no** form of the command deletes the entry.

Default There are no default entries.

Parameters *entry-id* — Specifies an entry that represents a key configuration to be applied to a keychain.

Values 0 — 63

key — Specifies a key ID which is used along with *keychain-name* and **direction** to uniquely identify this particular key entry.

authentication-key — Specifies the *authentication-key* that will be used by the encryption algorithm. The key is used to sign and authenticate a protocol packet.

The *authentication-key* can be any combination of letters or numbers. .

Values A key must be 160 bits for algorithm hmac-sha-1-96 and must be 128 bits for algorithm aes-128-cmac-96. If the key given with the entry command amounts to less than this number of bits, then it is padded internally with zero bits up to the correct length.

algorithm-*algorithm* — Specifies an enumerated integer that indicates the encryption algorithm to be used by the key defined in the keychain.

Values aes-128-cmac-96 — Specifies an algorithm based on the AES standard for TCP authentication..
hmac-sha-1-96 — Specifies an algorithm based on SHA-1 for RSVP-TE and TCP authentication.
message-digest — MD5 hash used for TCP authentication.
hmac-md5 — MD5 hash used for IS-IS and RSVP-TE.
password – Specifies a simple password authentication for OSPF, IS-IS, and RSVP-TE.
hmac-sha-1 — Specifies the sha-1 algorithm for OSPF, IS-IS, and RSVP-TE.
hmac-sha-256 — Specifies the sha-256 algorithm for OSPF and IS-IS.

hash-key | *hash2-key* — The hash key. The key can be any combination of ASCII characters up to 33 for the *hash-key* and 96 characters for the *hash2-key* in length (encrypted). If spaces are used in the string, enclose the entire string in quotation marks (“ ”).

This is useful when a user must configure the parameter, but, for security purposes, the actual unencrypted key value is not provided.

hash — Specifies the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the **hash** parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted form in the configuration file with the **hash** parameter specified.

hash2 — Specifies the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form.

begin-time

Syntax **begin-time** [*date] [hours-minutes*] [**UTC**] [**now**] [**forever**]

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry

Description This command specifies the calendar date and time after which the key specified by the keychain authentication key is used to sign and/or authenticate the protocol stream.

If no date and time is set, the begin-time is represented by a date and time string with all NULLs and the key is not valid by default.

Parameters *date hours-minutes* — Specifies the date and time for the key to become active.

Values date: YYYY/MM/DD
hours-minutes: hh:mm[:ss]

now — Specifies the the key should become active immediately.

forever — Specifies that the key should always be active.

end-time

Syntax **end-time** [*date] [hours-minutes*] [**UTC**] [**now**] [**forever**]

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry

Description This command specifies the calendar date and time after which the key specified by the authentication key is no longer eligible to sign and/or authenticate the protocol stream.

Default forever

Parameters *date* — Specifies the calendar date after which the key specified by the authentication key is no longer eligible to sign and/or authenticate the protocol stream in the YYYY/MM/DD format. When no year is specified the system assumes the current year.

hours-minutes — Specifies the time after which the key specified by the authentication key is no longer eligible to sign and/or authenticate the protocol stream in the hh:mm[:ss] format. Seconds are optional, and if not included, assumed to be 0.

UTC — Indicates that time is given with reference to Coordinated Universal Time in the input.

now — Specifies a time equal to the current system time.

forever — Specifies a time beyond the current epoch.

tolerance

Syntax **tolerance** [*seconds* | **forever**]

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>receive>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry

Description This command configures the amount of time that an eligible receive key should overlap with the active send key or to never expire.

Parameters *seconds* — Specifies the duration that an eligible receive key overlaps with the active send key.

Values 0 — 4294967294 seconds

forever — Specifies that an eligible receive key overlap with the active send key forever.

option

Syntax **option** {**basic** | **isis-enhanced**}

Context config>system>security>keychain>direction>bi>entry
config>system>security>keychain>direction>uni>send>entry

Description This command configures allows options to be associated with the authentication key.

Parameters **basic —** Specifies that IS-IS should use RFC 5304 encoding of the authentication information. It is only applicable if used with the IS-IS protocol. All other protocols should ignore this configuration command.

isis-enhanced — Specifies that IS-IS should use RFC 5310 encoding of the authentication information. It is only applicable if used with the IS-IS protocol. All other protocols should ignore this configuration command.

tcp-option-number

Syntax **tcp-option-number**

Context config>system>security>keychain

Description This command enables the context to configure the TCP option number to be placed in the TCP packet header.

receive

Syntax **receive** *option-number*

Context config>system>security>keychain>tcp-option-number

Description This command configures the TCP option number accepted in TCP packets received.

Default 254

Parameters *option-number* — Specifies an enumerated integer that indicates the TCP option number to be used in the TCP header.

Values 253, 254, 253&254

send

Syntax **send** *option-number*

Context config>system>security>keychain>tcp-option-number

Description This command configures the TCP option number accepted in TCP packets sent.

Default 254

Parameters *option-number* — Specifies an enumerated integer that indicates the TCP option number to be used in the TCP header.

Values 253, 254

CLI Script Commands

cli-script

Syntax **cli-script**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables the context to configure CLI scripts.

authorization

Syntax **authorization**

Context config>system>security>cli-script

Description This command enables the context to authorize CLI script execution.

cron

Syntax **cron**

Context config>system>security>cli-script>authorization

Description This command enables the context to configure authorization for the Cron job-scheduler.

vsd

Syntax [**no**] **vsd**

Context config>system>security>cli-script>authorization

Description This command enables the context to configure authorization for the VSD server.

The **no** form of the command removes all authorizations for the VSD server.

event-handler

Syntax **event-handler**

Context config>system>security>cli-script>authorization

Description This command enables the context to configure authorization for the Event Handling System (EHS). EHS allows user-controlled programmatic exception handling by allowing a CLI script to be executed upon the detection of a log event.

cli-user

Syntax **cli-user** *user-name*
no cli-user

Context config>system>security>cli-script>authorization>event-handler
config>system>security>cli-script>authorization>cron
config>system>security>cli-script>authorization>vsd

Description This command configures The user context under which various types of CLI scripts should execute in order to authorize the script commands. TACACS+ and RADIUS users and authorization are not permitted for **cli-script** authorization.

The **no** form of this command configures scripts to execute with no restrictions and without performing authorization.

Default **no cli-user**

Parameters *user-name* — The name of a user in the local node database. TACACS+ or RADIUS users can not be used. The user configuration should reference a valid local profile for authorization.

CPM Filter Commands

cpm-filter

Syntax **cpm-filter**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables the context to configure a CPM filter. A CPM filter is a hardware filter done by the P chip on the CPMCFM that applies to all the traffic going to the CPU. It can be used to drop, accept packets, as well as allocate dedicated hardware queues for the traffic.

The **no** form of the command disables the CPM filter.

default-action

Syntax **default-action** {**accept** | **drop**}

Context config>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command specifies the action to take on the traffic when the filter entry matches. If there are no filter entry defined, the packets received will either be dropped or forwarded based on that default action.

Default accept

Parameters **accept —** Specfies that packets matching the filter entry are forwarded.

drop — Specifies that packets matching the filter entry are dropped.

ip-filter

Syntax [**no**] **ip-filter**

Context config>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command enables the context to configure CPM IP filter parameters.

Default shutdown

ipv6-filter

Syntax [**no**] **ipv6-filter**

Context config>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command enables the context to configure CPM IPv6 filter parameters.

Default shutdown

mac-filter

Syntax [**no**] **mac-filter**

Context config>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command enables the context to configure CPM MAC-filter parameters.

Default shutdown

entry

Syntax **entry** *entry-id*

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter

Description This command specifies a particular CPM filter match entry. Every CPM filter must have at least one filter match entry. Entries are created and deleted by user.

The default match criteria is match none.

Parameters *entry-id* — Identifies a CPM filter entry as configured on this system.

Values 1 — 2048

action

Syntax **action** [**accept | drop | queue** *queue-id*]
no action

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter>entry

Description This command specifies the action to take for packets that match this filter entry.

Default drop

Parameters **accept —** Specifies packets matching the entry criteria will be forwarded.

drop — Specifies packets matching the entry criteria will be dropped.

queue *queue-id* — Specifies packets matching the entry criteria will be forward to the specified CPM hardware queue.

log

Syntax **log** *log-id*

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter>entry

Description This command specifies the log in which packets matching this entry should be entered. The value zero indicates that logging is disabled.

The **no** form of the command deletes the log ID.

Parameters *log-id* — Specifies the log ID where packets matching this entry should be entered.

match

Syntax **match** [**protocol** *protocol-id*]
no match

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry

Description This command enables the context to enter match criteria for the filter entry. When the match criteria have been satisfied the action associated with the match criteria is executed. If more than one match criteria (within one match statement) are configured then all criteria must be satisfied (AND function) before the action associated with the match is executed.

A **match** context may consist of multiple match criteria, but multiple **match** statements cannot be entered per entry.

The **no** form of the command removes the match criteria for the *entry-id*.

Parameters **protocol —** Configures an IP protocol to be used as an IP filter match criterion. The protocol type such as TCP or UDP is identified by its respective protocol number.

protocol-id — Configures the decimal value representing the IP protocol to be used as an IP filter match criterion. Well known protocol numbers include ICMP(1), TCP(6), UDP(17). The **no** form the command removes the protocol from the match criteria.

Values 1 — 255 (values can be expressed in decimal, hexidecimal, or binary)
keywords - none, crtp, crudp, egp, eigrp, encap, ether-ip, gre, icmp, idrp, igmp, igp, ip, ipv6, ipv6-frag, ipv6-icmp, ipv6-no-nxt, ipv6-opts, ipv6-route, isis, iso-ip, l2tp, ospf-igp, pnni, ptp, rdp, rsvp, stp, tcp, udp, vrrp , * — udp/tcp wildcard

Table 11: IP Protocol Names

Protocol	Protocol ID	Description
icmp	1	Internet Control Message
igmp	2	Internet Group Management
ip	4	IP in IP (encapsulation)
tcp	6	Transmission Control
egp	8	Exterior Gateway Protocol
igp	9	any private interior gateway (used by Cisco for their IGRP)
udp	17	User Datagram
rdp	27	Reliable Data Protocol
ipv6	41	IPv6
ipv6-route	43	Routing Header for IPv6
ipv6-frag	44	Fragment Header for IPv6
idrp	45	Inter-Domain Routing Protocol
rsvp	46	Reservation Protocol
gre	47	General Routing Encapsulation
ipv6-icmp	58	ICMP for IPv6
ipv6-no-nxt	59	No Next Header for IPv6
ipv6-opts	60	Destination Options for IPv6
iso-ip	80	ISO Internet Protocol
eigrp	88	EIGRP
ospf-igp	89	OSPFIGP
ether-ip	97	Ethernet-within-IP Encapsulation
encap	98	Encapsulation Header
pnni	102	PNNI over IP
pim	103	Protocol Independent Multicast
vrrp	112	Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol
l2tp	115	Layer Two Tunneling Protocol
stp	118	Spanning Tree Protocol
ptp	123	Performance Transparency Protocol
isis	124	ISIS over IPv4
crtp	126	Combat Radio Transport Protocol
crudp	127	Combat Radio User Datagram

match

Syntax **match** [**next-header** *next-header*]
no match

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry

Description This command specifies match criteria for the IP filter entry.

The **no** form of this command removes the match criteria for the *entry-id*.

Parameters **next-header** *next-header* — Specifies the next header to match.

The protocol type such as TCP / UDP / OSPF is identified by its respective protocol number. Well-known protocol numbers include ICMP(1), TCP(6), UDP(17).

Values next-header: 1 — 42, 45— 49, 52— 59, 61— 255 protocol numbers accepted in DHB
keywords: none, crtp, crudp, egp, eigrp, encap, ether-ip, gre, icmp, idrp, igmp, igp, ip, ipv6, ipv6-icmp, ipv6-no-nxt, isis, iso-ip, l2tp, ospf-igp, pim, pnni, ptp, rdp, rsvp, stp, tcp, udp, vrrp
* — udp/tcp wildcard

action

Syntax **action** {**permit** | **deny**}
no action

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command creates the action associated with the management access filter match criteria entry.

The **action** keyword is required. If no **action** is defined, the filter is ignored. If multiple action statements are configured, the last one overwrites previous configured actions.

If the packet does not meet any of the match criteria the configured **default action** is applied.

Default none — The action is specified by default-action command.

Parameters *permit* — Specifies that packets matching the configured criteria will be permitted.

deny — Specifies that packets matching the configured selection criteria will be denied and that a ICMP host unreachable message will not be issued.

default-action

Syntax **default-action** {**permit** | **deny**}

Context config>system>security>mgmt-access-filter>mac-filter

Description This command creates the default action for management access in the absence of a specific management access filter match.

The **default-action** is applied to a packet that does not satisfy any match criteria in any of the management access filters. Whenever management access filters are configured, the **default-action** must be defined.

Default No default-action is defined.

Parameters **permit —** Specifies that packets not matching the configured selection criteria in any of the filter entries will be permitted.

deny — Specifies that packets not matching the selection criteria be denied and that an ICMP host unreachable message will not be issued.

dscp

Syntax **dscp** *dscp-name*
no dscp

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures a DiffServ Code Point (DSCP) name to be used as an IP filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the DSCP match criterion.

Default **no dscp** — No dscp match criterion.

Parameters *dscp-name* — Configures a dscp name that has been previously mapped to a value using the **dscp-name** command. The DiffServ code point may only be specified by its name.

dst-ip

Syntax **dst-ip** *ipv6-address/prefix-length*
dst-ip ipv6-prefix-list *ipv6-prefix-list-name*
no dst-ip

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
cfg>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures a destination IP address range to be used as an IP filter match criterion.

To match on the destination IP address, specify the address and its associated mask, for example, 10.1.0.0/16. The conventional notation of 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0 may also be used.

The **no** form of the command removes the destination IP address match criterion.

Default No destination IP match criterion

Parameters *ip-address* — Specifies the IP address for the IP match criterion in dotted decimal notation.

Values 0.0.0.0 **—** 255.255.255.255

ip-prefix-list — Creates a list of IPv4 prefixes for match criteria in IPv4 ACL and CPM filter policies.

ip-prefix-list-name — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

mask — Specifies the subnet mask length expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 32

netmask — Specifies the dotted quad equivalent of the mask length.

Values 0.0.0.0 — 255.255.255.255

dst-ip

Syntax **dst-ip** [*ipv6-address /prefix-length*] [**ipv6-prefix-list** ipv6-*prefix-list-name*]
no dst-ip

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures a destination IPv6 address range to be used as an IPv6 filter match criterion.

To match on the destination IPv6 address, specify the address.

The **no** form of the command removes the destination IP address match criterion.

Default No destination IP match criterion

Parameters *ipv6-address/prefix-length* — Specifies the IPv6 address for the IPv6 match criterion in dotted decimal notation. An IPv6 IP address is written as eight 4-digit (16-bit) hexadecimal numbers separated by colons. One string of zeros per address can be left out, so that 1010::700:0:217A is the same as 1010:0:0:0:0:700:0:217A.

Values

x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x	(eight 16-bit pieces)	
x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d		
	x:	[0 — .FFFF]H
	d:	[0 — 255]D
prefix-length:	1 — 128	

ipv6-prefix-list — Creates a list of IPv4 prefixes for match criteria in IPv4 ACL and CPM filter policies.

ipv6-prefix-list-name — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

dst-port

Syntax **dst-port** [**tcp/udp** *port-number*] [*mask*]
dst-port port-list *port-list-name*
dst-port range *tcp/udp port-number tcp/udp port-number*

no dst-port

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filte>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies the TCP/UDP port or port name to match the destination-port of the packet. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial (2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

The **no** form of the command removes the destination port match criterion.

Parameters *tcp/udp port-numb-number* — Specifies the destination port number to be used as a match criteria expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 0 — 65535 (accepted in decimal hex or binary)

port-list-name — Specifies the port list name to be used as a match criteria for the destination port.

mask — Specifies the 16 bit mask to be applied when matching the destination port.

Values [0x0000..0xFFFF] | [0..65535] | [0b0000000000000000..0b1111111111111111]

flow-label

Syntax **flow-label** *value*
no flow-label

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures flow label match conditions. Flow labeling enables the labeling of packets belonging to particular traffic flows for which the sender requests special handling, such as non-default quality of service or real-time service.

Parameters *value* — Specify the flow identifier in an IPv6 packet header that can be used to discriminate traffic flows (See RFC 3595, *Textual Conventions for IPv6 Flow Label*.)

Values 0 — 1048575

fragment

Syntax **fragment** {**true** | **false**}
no fragment

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies fragmented or non-fragmented IP packets as an IP filter match criterion. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial (2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

This command enables match on existence of IPv6 Fragmentation Extension Header in the IPv6 filter policy. To match first fragment of an IP fragmented packet, specify additional Layer 4 matching

criteria in a filter policy entry. The no version of this command ignores IPv6 Fragmentation Extension Header presence/absence in a packet when evaluating match criteria of a given filter policy entry.

The **no** form of the command removes the match criterion.

This command enables match on existence of IPv6 Fragmentation Extension Header in the IPv6 filter policy. To match first fragment of an IP fragmented packet, specify additional Layer 4 matching criteria in a filter policy entry. The no version of this command ignores IPv6 Fragmentation Extension Header presence/absence in a packet when evaluating match criteria of a given filter policy entry.

Default **no fragment**

Parameters **true —** Specifies to match on all fragmented IP packets. A match will occur for all packets that have either the MF (more fragment) bit set or have the Fragment Offset field of the IP header set to a non-zero value. For IPv6, packet matches if it contains IPv6 Fragmentation Extension Header.

false — Specifies to match on all non-fragmented IP packets. Non-fragmented IP packets are packets that have the MF bit set to zero and have the Fragment Offset field also set to zero. For IPv6, packet matches if it does not contain IPv6 Fragmentation Extension Header.

hop-by-hop-opt

Syntax **hop-by-hop-opt** {**true** | **false**}
no hop-by-hop-opt

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command enables match on existence of Hop-by-Hop Options Extension Header in the IPv6 filter policy.

The **no** form of this command ignores Hop-by-Hop Options Extension Header presence/absence in a packet when evaluating match criteria of a given filter policy entry.

Default no hop-by-hop-opt

Parameters **true —** Match if a packet contains Hop-by-Hop Options Extension Header.

false — Match if a packet does not contain Hop-by-Hop Options Extension Header.

icmp-code

Syntax **icmp-code** *icmp-code*
no icmp-code

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching on ICMP code field in the ICMP header of an IP packet as an IP filter match criterion. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial

(2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

The behavior of the **icmp-code** value is dependent on the configured **icmp-type** value, thus a configuration with only an **icmp-code** value specified will have no effect. To match on the **icmp-code**, an associated **icmp-type** must also be specified.

The **no** form of the command removes the criterion from the match entry.

Default **no icmp-code** - no match criterion for the ICMP code.

Parameters *icmp-code* — Specifies the ICMP code values that must be present to match.

Values 0 — 255

icmp-type

Syntax **icmp-type** *icmp-type*
no icmp-type

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching on ICMP type field in the ICMP header of an IP packet as an IP filter match criterion. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial (2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

The **no** form of the command removes the criterion from the match entry.

Default **no icmp-type** — No match criterion for the ICMP type.

Parameters *icmp-type* — Specifies the ICMP type values that must be present to match.

Values 0 — 255

ip-option

Syntax **ip-option** *ip-option-value ip-option-mask*
no ip-option

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching packets with a specific IP option or a range of IP options in the IP header as an IP filter match criterion.

The option-type octet contains 3 fields:

- 1 bit copied flag (copy options in all fragments)
- 2 bits option class,
- 5 bits option number.

The **no** form of the command removes the match criterion.

Default No IP option match criterion

Parameters *ip-option-value* — Enter the 8 bit option-type as a decimal integer. The mask is applied as an AND to the option byte, the result is compared with the option-value.

The decimal value entered for the match should be a combined value of the eight bit option type field and not just the option number. Thus to match on IP packets that contain the Router Alert option (option number =20), enter the option type of 148 (10010100).

Values 0 — 255

ip-option-mask — Specifies a range of option numbers to use as the match criteria.

This 8 bit mask can be configured using the following formats:

Format Style	Format Syntax	Example
Decimal	DDD	20
Hexadecimal	0xHH	0x14
Binary	0bBBBBBBBB	0b0010100

Default 255 (decimal) (exact match)

Values 1 — 255 (decimal)

multiple-option

Syntax **multiple-option** {**true** | **false**}
no multiple-option

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching packets that contain more than one option fields in the IP header as an IP filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the checking of the number of option fields in the IP header as a match criterion.

Default **no multiple-option** — No checking for the number of option fields in the IP header

Parameters **true —** Specifies matching on IP packets that contain more that one option field in the header.

false — Specifies matching on IP packets that do not contain multiple option fields present in the header.

option-present

Syntax **option-present** {**true** | **false**}
no option-present

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching packets that contain the option field or have an option field of zero in the IP header as an IP filter match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes the checking of the option field in the IP header as a match criterion.

Parameters **true —** Specifies matching on all IP packets that contain the option field in the header. A match will occur for all packets that have the option field present. An option field of zero is considered as no option present.

false — Specifies matching on IP packets that do not have any option field present in the IP header (an option field of zero). An option field of zero is considered as no option present.

router

Syntax **router service-name** *service-name*
router *router-instance*
no router

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies a router name or a service-id to be used in the match criteria.

Parameters *router-instance* — Specify one of the following parameters for the router instance:

router-name — Specifies a router name up to 32 characters to be used in the match criteria.

service-id — Specifies an existing service ID to be used in the match criteria.

Values 1 — 2147483647

service-name *service-name* — Specifies an existing service name up to 64 characters in length.

src-ip

Syntax **src-ip** [*ip-address*/*mask* | **ip-prefix-list** *prefix-list-name*]
no src-ip

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies the IP address to match the source IP address of the packet.

To match on the source IP address, specify the address and its associated mask, such as 10.1.0.0/16. The conventional notation of 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0 may also be used.

The **no** form of the command removes the source IP address match criterion.

Default **no src-ip** — No source IP match criterion.

Parameters *ip-address/mask* — Specifies the IP address for the match criterion in dotted decimal notation. An IP address is written as eight 4-digit (16-bit) hexadecimal numbers separated by colons. One string of zeros per address can be left out, so that 1010::700:0:217A is the same as 1010:0:0:0:0:700:0:217A.

Values

ipv4-address	a.b.c.d (host bits must be 0) x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d[-interface] x: [0..FFFF]H d: [0..255]D interface: 32 characters maximum, mandatory for link local addresses
mask:	Specifies the 16 bit mask to be applied when matching the source IP address. 1 — 32

ip-prefix-list — Creates a list of IPv4 prefixes for match criteria in IPv4 ACL and CPM filter policies.

ip-prefix-list-name — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

src-ip

Syntax **src-ip** [*ip-address*/*mask* | **ipv6-prefix-list** *ipv6-prefix-list-name*]
no src-ip

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies the IPv6 address to match the source IPv6 address of the packet.

To match on the source IP address, specify the address and its associated mask, such as 10.1.0.0/16. The conventional notation of 10.1.0.0 255.255.0.0 may also be used.

The **no** form of the command removes the source IP address match criterion.

Default **no src-ip** — No source IP match criterion.

Parameters *ip-address/mask* — Specifies the IP address for the match criterion in dotted decimal notation. An IP address is written as eight 4-digit (16-bit) hexadecimal numbers separated by colons. One string of zeros per address can be left out, so that 1010::700:0:217A is the same as 1010:0:0:0:0:700:0:217A.

Values

ipv6-address	x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x[-interface] x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d[-interface] x: [0..FFFF]H d: [0..255]D interface: 32 characters maximum, mandatory for link local addresses
mask:	Specifies eight 16-bit hexadecimal pieces representing bit match

criteria.
Values x:x:x:x:x:x:x (eight 16-bit pieces)

ipv6-prefix-list — Creates a list of IPv6 prefixes for match criteria in IPv6 ACL and CPM filter policies.

ipv6-prefix-list-name — A string of up to 32 characters of printable ASCII characters. If special characters are used, the string must be enclosed within double quotes.

src-port

Syntax **src-port** *src-port-number* [*mask*]

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies the TCP/UDP port to match the source port of the packet. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial (2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

Parameters *src-port-number* — The source port number to be used as a match criteria expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 0 — 65535

mask — Specifies the 16 bit mask to be applied when matching the source port.

Values 0 — 128

tcp-ack

Syntax **tcp-ack** {**true** | **false**}
no tcp-ack

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching on the ACK bit being set or reset in the control bits of the TCP header of an IP or IPv6 packet as an IP filter match criterion. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial (2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

The **no** form of the command removes the criterion from the match entry.

No match criterion for the ACK bit

true — Specifies matching on IP or IPv6 packets that have the ACK bit set in the control bits of the TCP header of an IP or IPv6 packet.

false — Specifies matching on IP or IPv6 packets that do not have the ACK bit set in the control bits of the TCP header of the IP or IPv6 packet.

tcp-syn

Syntax **tcp-syn** {**true** | **false**}
no tcp-syn

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match

Description This command configures matching on the SYN bit being set or reset in the control bits of the TCP header of an IP or IPv6 packet as an IP filter match criterion. Note that an entry containing Layer 4 match criteria will not match non-initial (2nd, 3rd, etc) fragments of a fragmented packet since only the first fragment contains the Layer 4 information.

The SYN bit is normally set when the source of the packet wants to initiate a TCP session with the specified destination IP or IPv6 address.

The **no** form of the command removes the criterion from the match entry.

Default No match criterion for the SYN bit

Parameters **true —** Specifies matching on IP or IPv6 packets that have the SYN bit set in the control bits of the TCP header.

false — Specifies matching on IP or IPv6 packets that do not have the SYN bit set in the control bits of the TCP header.

renum

Syntax **renum** *old-entry-id new-entry-id*

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter>entry>match
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter>entry>match

Description This command renumbers existing IP(IPv4), IPv6, or MAC filter entries to re-sequence filter entries.

This may be required in some cases since the OS exits when the first match is found and execute the actions according to the accompanying action command. This requires that entries be sequenced correctly from most to least explicit.

Parameters *old-entry-id* — Enter the entry number of an existing entry.

Values 1 — 2048

new-entry-id — Enter the new entry-number to be assigned to the old entry.

Values 1 — 2048

shutdown

Syntax **shutdown**

Context config>sys>sec>cpm>ip-filter
config>sys>sec>cpm>ipv6-filter
config>sys>sec>cpm>mac-filter

Description This command enables IP(v4), IPv6 or MAC CPM filter.

The **no** form of this command disable the filter.

Default shutdown

CPM Queue Commands

cpm-queue

Syntax **cpm-queue**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enables the context to configure a CPM queue.

queue

Syntax **queue** *queue-id*

Context config>system>security>cpm-queue

Description This command allows users to allocate dedicated CPM.

cbs

Syntax **cbs** *cbs*
no cbs

Context config>system>cpm-queue>queue

Description This command specifies the amount of buffer that can be drawn from the reserved buffer portion of the queue's buffer pool.

Parameters *cbs* — Specifies the commited burst size in kbytes.

mbs

Syntax **mbs** *mbs*
no mbs

Context config>system>security>cpm-queue>queue

Description This command specifies the maximum queue depth to which a queue can grow.

Parameters *mbs* — Specifies the maximum burst size in kbytes.

rate

Syntax **rate** *rate* [**cir** *cir*]
no rate

Context config>system>security>cpm-queue>queue

Description This command specifies the maximum bandwidth that will be made available to the queue in kilobits per second (kbps).

Parameters *rate* — Specifies the administrative Peak Information Rate (PIR) for the queue.

cir *cir* — Specifies the amount of bandwidth committed to the queue.

TTL Security Commands

ttl-security

Syntax **ttl-security** *min-ttl-value*
no ttl-security

Context config>router>bgp>group
config>router>bgp>group>neighbor
configure>router>ldp>peer-parameters>peer
config>system>login-control>ssh
config>system>login-control>telnet

Description This command configures TTL security parameters for incoming packets. When the feature is enabled, LDP will accept incoming IP packets from a peer only if the TTL value in the packet is greater than or equal to the minimum TTL value configured for that peer. Per-peer-queueing must be enabled in order for TTL protection to operate.

The **no** form of the command disables TTL security.

Parameters *min-ttl-value* — Specify the minimum TTL value for an incoming BGP packet.

Values 1 — 255

ttl-security

Syntax **ttl-security** *min-ttl-value*
no ttl-security

Context config>router>ldp>peer-parameters>peer

Description This command configures TTL security parameters for incoming packets. When the feature is enabled, BGP will accept incoming IP packets from a peer only if the TTL value in the packet is greater than or equal to the minimum TTL value configured for that peer. Per-peer-queueing must be enabled in order for TTL protection to operate.

The **no** form of the command disables TTL security.

Default no ttl-security

Parameters *min-ttl-value* — Specifies the minimum TTL value for an incoming LDP packet.

Values 1 — 255

ttl-security

Syntax **ttl-security** *min-ttl-value*

no ttl-security

Context config>system>login-control>ssh
config>system>login-control>telnet

Description This command configures TTL security parameters for incoming packets. When the feature is enabled, SSH/Telnet will accept incoming IP packets from a peer only if the TTL value in the packet is greater than or equal to the minimum TTL value configured for that peer. Per-peer-queueing must be enabled in order for TTL protection to operate.

The **no** form of the command disables TTL security.

Parameters *min-ttl-value* — Specify the minimum TTL value for an incoming BGP packet.

Values 1 — 255

CPU Protection Commands

cpu-protection

Syntax **cpu-protection**

Context config>sys>security

Description This command enters the context to configure CPU protection parameters.

included-protocols

Syntax **included-protocols**

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection> ip>included-protocols

Description This context allows configuration of which protocols are included for ip-src-monitoring. This is system-wide configuration that applies to cpu protection globally.

dhcp

Syntax **[no] dhcp**

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection> ip>included-protocols

Description Include extracted IPv4 DHCP packets for ip-src-monitoring. IPv4 DHCP packets will be subject to the per-source-rate of cpu protection policies.

Default dhcp (note this is different than the other protocols)

gtp

Syntax **[no] gtp**

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection> ip>included-protocols

Description Include extracted IPV4 GTP packets for ip-src-monitoring. IPv4 GTP packets will be subject to the per-source-rate of cpu protection policies.

Default no gtp

icmp

Syntax **[no] icmp**

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection> ip>included-protocols

Include extracted IPv4 ICMP packets for ip-src-monitoring. IPv4 ICMP packets will be subject to the per-source-rate of cpu protection policies.

Default no icmp

igmp

Syntax **[no] igmp**

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection> ip>included-protocols

Description Include extracted IPv4 IGMP packets for ip-src-monitoring. IPv4 IGMP packets will be subject to the per-source-rate of cpu protection policies.

Default no igmp

link-specific-rate

Syntax **link-specific-rate** *packet-rate-limit*
no link-specific-rate

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection

Description This command configures a link-specific rate for CPU protection. This limit is applied to all ports within the system. The CPU will receive no more than the configured packet rate for all link level protocols such as LACP from any one port. The measurement is cleared each second and is based on the ingress port.

Default max (no limit)

Parameters *packet-rate-limit* — Specifies a packet arrival rate limit, in packets per second, for link level protocols.

Values 1 — 65535, max (no limit)

Default 15000

policy

Syntax **policy** *cpu-protection-policy-id* [**create**]
no policy *cpu-protection-policy-id*

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection

Description This command configures CPU protection policies.

The **no** form of the command deletes the specified policy from the configuration.

Policies 254 and 255 are reserved as the default access and network interface policies, and cannot de deleted. The parameters within these policies can be modified. An event will be logged (warning) when the default policies are modified.

Default Policy 254 (default access interface policy):

per-source-rate: max (no limit)

overall-rate : 6000

out-profile–rate: 6000

alarm

Policy 255 (default network interface policy):

per-source-rate: max (no limit)

overall-rate : max (no limit)

out-profile-rate: 3000

alarm

Parameters *cpu-protection-policy-id* — Assigns a policy ID to the specific CPU protection policy.

Values 1 — 255

create — Keyword used to create CPU protection policy. The **create** keyword requirement can be enabled/disabled in the **environment>create** context.

alarm

Syntax [**no**] **alarm**

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection>policy

Description This command enables the generation of an event when a rate is exceed. The event includes information about the offending source. Only one event is generated per monitor period.

The **no** form of the command disables the notifications.

Default no alarm

eth-cfm

Syntax **eth-cfm**
no eth-cfm

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection>policy

Description Provides the construct under which the different entries within CPU policy can define the match criteria and overall arrival rate of the Ethernet Configuration and Fault Management (ETH-CFM) packets at the CPU.

Default None

entry

Syntax **entry** <*entry*> **levels** <*levels*> **opcodes** <*opcodes*> **rate** <*packet-rate-limit*>
no entry

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection>eth-cfm>

Description Builds the specific match and rate criteria. Up to ten entries may exist in up to four CPU protection policies.

The **no** form of the command reverses the match and rate criteria configured.

Default no entry

Parameters **rate —** Specifies a packet rate limit in frames per second, where a '0' means drop all.

Values 1 —100

level — Specifies a domain level.

Values		
	all	Wildcard entry level
	range	0 —7: within specified range, multiple ranges allowed
	number	0 ... 7: specific level number, may be combined with range

opcode — Specifies an operational code that identifies the application.

Values		
	range	0 —255: within specified range, multiple ranges allowed
	number	0 .. .255: specific level number, may be combined with range

out-profile-rate

Syntax **out-profile-rate** *packet-rate-limit* [**log-event**]
no out-profile-rate

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection>policy

Description This command applies a packet arrival rate limit for the entire SAP/interface, above which packets will be market as discard eligible. The rate defined is a global rate limit for the interface regardless of the number of traffic flows. It is a per-SAP/interface rate.

The **no** form of the command sets out-profile-rate parameter back to the default value.

Default **3000** for cpu-protection-policy-id 1-253

6000 for cpu-protection-policy-id 254 (default access interface policy)

3000 for cpu-protection-policy-id 255 (default network interface policy)

Parameters *packet-rate-limit* — Specifies a packet arrival rate limit in packets per second.

Values 1 — 65535, max (max indicates no limit)

log-events — issues a tmnxCpmProtViolSapOutProf, tmnxCpmProtViolIfOutProf, or tmnxCpmProtViolSdpBindOutProf log event and tracks violating interfaces when the out-profile-rate is exceeded. Supported on CPM3 and above only.

overall-rate

Syntax **overall-rate** *packet-rate-limit*
no overall-rate

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection>policy

Description This command applies a maximum packet arrival rate limit (applied per SAP/interface) for the entire SAP/interface, above which packets will be discarded immediately. The rate defined is a global rate limit for the interface regardless of how many traffic flows are present on the SAP/interface. It is a per-SAP/interface rate.

The **no** form of the command sets overall-rate parameter back to the default value.

Default **max** for cpu-protection-policy-id 1 — 253

6000 for cpu-protection-policy-id 254 (default access interface policy)

max for cpu-protection-policy-id 255 (default network interface policy)

Parameters *packet-rate-limit* — Specifies a packet arrival rate limit in packets per second.

Values 1 — 65535, max (max indicates no limit)

per-source-rate

Syntax **per-source-rate** *packet-rate-limit*
no per-source-rate

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection>policy

Description This command configures a per-source packet arrival rate limit. Use this command to apply a packet arrival rate limit on a per source basis. A source is defined as a unique combination of SAP and MAC source address (mac-monitoring). The CPU will receive no more than the configured packet rate from each source. The measurement is cleared each second.

This parameter is only applicable if the policy is assigned to an interface (some examples include saps, and spoke-sdps), and the **mac-monitor** keyword is specified in the **cpu-protection** configuration of that interface.

The ip-src-monitoring is useful in subscriber management architectures that have routers between the subscriber and the BNG (router). In layer-3 aggregation scenarios, all packets from all subscribers behind the same aggregation router will arrive with the same source MAC address and as such the mac-monitoring functionality can not differentiate traffic from different subscribers.

Default max, no limit

Parameters *packet-rate-limit* — Specifies a per-source packet (per SAP/MAC source address arrival rate limit in packets per second.

Values 1 — 65535, max (max indicates no limit)

port-overall-rate

Syntax **port-overall-rate** *packet-rate-limit* [**low-action-priority**]
no port-overall-rate

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection

Description This command configures a per-port overall rate limit for CPU protection.

Parameters *packet-rate-limit* — Specifies an overall per-port packet arrival rate limit in packets per second.

Values 1 — 65535, max (indicates no limit)

action-low-priority — Marks packets that exceed the rate as low-priority (for preferential discard later if there is congestion in the control plane) instead of discarding them immediately.

Default max

protocol-protection

Syntax **protocol-protection** [**allow-sham-links**] [**block-pim-tunneled**]
no protocol-protection

Context config>sys>security>cpu-protection

Description This command causes the network processor on the CPM to discard all packets received for protocols that are not configured on the particular interface. This helps mitigate DoS attacks by filtering invalid control traffic before it hits the CPU. For example, if an interface does not have IS-IS configured, then protocol protection will discard any IS-IS packets received on that interface.

Default no protocol-protection

Parameters **allow-sham-links —** Allows sham links. As OSPF sham links form an adjacency over the MPLS-VPRN backbone network, when protocol-protection is enabled, the tunneled OSPF packets to be received over the backbone network must be explicitly allowed.

block-pim-tunneled — - Blocks extraction and processing of PIM packets arriving at the SR-OS node inside a tunnel (for example, MPLS or GRE) on a network interface. With protocol-protection enabled and tunneled pim blocked, PIM in an mVPN on the egress DR will not switch traffic from the (*,G) to the (S,G) tree.

cpu-protection

Syntax **cpu-protection** *policy-id*
no cpu-protection

Context config>router>interface
config>service>ies>interface
config>service>vprn>interface
config>service>vprn>network-interface

Description Use this command to apply a specific CPU protection policy to the associated interface. For these interface types, the per-source rate limit is not applicable.

If no CPU-protection policy is assigned to an interface, then the default policy is used to limit the overall-rate. The default policy is policy number 254 for access interfaces, 255 for network interfaces.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default values.

Default cpu-protection 254 (for access interfaces)

cpu-protection 255 (for network interfaces)

The configuration of **no cpu-protection** returns the interface to the default policies as shown above.

cpu-protection

Syntax **cpu-protection** *policy-id* [**mac-monitoring**]|[**eth-cfm-monitoring** [**aggregate**][**car**]]
no cpu-protection

Context config>service>epipe>sap
config>service>epipe>spoke-sdp
config>service>ipipe>sap
config>service>template>vpls-sap-template
config>service>vpls>mesh-sdp
config>service>vpls>sap
config>service>vpls>spoke-sdp

Description Use this command to apply a specific CPU protection policy to the associated SAP, SDP or template. If the mac-monitoring keyword is given then per MAC rate limiting should be performed, using the per-source-rate from the associated cpu-protection policy.

If no CPU-protection policy is assigned to a SAP, then a default policy is used to limit the overall-rate according to the default policy. The default policy is policy number 254 for access interfaces, 255 for network interfaces.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default values.

Default cpu-protection 254 (for access interfaces)

cpu-protection 255 (for network interfaces)

The configuration of **no cpu-protection** returns the SAP/SDP/template to the default policies as shown above.

Parameters **mac-monitoring —** Enables per SAP + source MAC address rate limiting using the per-source-rate from the associated cpu-protection policy.

eth-cfm-monitoring — Enables the Ethernet Connectivity Fault Management cpu-protection extensions on the associated SAP/SDP/template.

aggregate — applies the rate limit to the sum of the per-peer packet rates.

car — (Committed Access Rate) Ignores Eth-CFM packets when enforcing overall-rate.

Distributed CPU Protection Commands

dist-cpu-protection

Syntax **dist-cpu-protection**

Context config>system>security

Description This command enters the CLI context for configuration of the Distributed CPU Protection (DCP) feature.

policy

Syntax **[no] policy** *policy-name*

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection

Description This command configures one of the maximum 16 Distributed CPU Protection policies. These policies can be applied to objects such as SAPs and network interfaces.

Parameters *policy-name* — Name of the policy to be configured.

description

Syntax **[no] description** *string*

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy

rate

Syntax **rate kbps** *kilobits-per-second*|*max* **[mbs** *size***] [bytes|kilobytes]**
rate packets {*ppi***|max} within** *seconds* **[initial-delay** *packets***]**
no rate

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>static-policer
config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>local-monitoring-policer
config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>protocol>dynamic-parameters

Description This command configures the rate and burst tolerance for the policer in either a packet rate or a bit rate.

The actual hardware may not be able to perfectly rate limit to the exact configured parameters. In this case, the configured parameters will be adapted to the closest supported rate. The actual (operational) parameters can be seen in CLI, for example, “show service id 33 sap 1/1/3:33 dist-cpu-protection detail”.

Default rate packets max within 1

Parameters **packets|kbps —** specifies that the rate is either in units of packets per interval or in units of kilobits-per-second. The packets option would typically be used for lower rates (for example, for per subscriber DHCP rate limiting) while the kbps option would typically be used for higher rates (for example, per interface BGP rate limiting).

ppi — Specifies packets per interval. 0..255 or max (0 = all packets are non-conformant)

- rate of max=effectively disable the policier (always conformant)
- rate of packets 0 = all packets considered non-conformant.

within *seconds* **—** Specifies the length of the ppi rate measurement interval.

Values 1..32767

initial-delay *packets* **—** The number of packets allowed (even at line rate) in an initial burst (or a burst after the policer bucket has drained to zero) in addition to the normal "ppi". This would typically be set to a value that is equal to the number of received packets in several full handshakes/negotiations of the particular protocol.

Values 1..255

kbps *kilobits-per-second* **—** Specifies the kilobits per second.

Values 1..20000000|max max = This effectively disable the policer (always conformant).

mbs — The tolerance for the kbps rate

Values 0..4194304. A configured mbs of 0 will cause all packets to be considered non-conformant.

bytes|kilobytes — Specifies that the units of the mbs size parameter are either in bytes or kilobytes.

Default The default mbs sets the mbs to 10ms of the kbps.

detection-time

Syntax **detection-time** *seconds*

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>static-policer

Description When a policer is declared as in an "exceed" state, it will remain as exceeding until a contiguous conformant period of **detection-time** passes. The **detection-time** only starts after the exceed-action hold-down is complete. If the policer detects another exceed during the detection count down then a hold-down is once again triggered before the policer re-enters the detection time (that is, the countdown timer starts again at the configured value). During the hold-down (and the detection-time), the policer is considered as in an "exceed" state.

Default 30

Parameters *seconds* — Specifies in seconds.

Values 1..128000

dynamic-enforcement-policer-pool

Syntax **[no] dynamic-enforcement-policer-pool** *number-of-policers*

Context config>dist-cpu-protection

Description This command reserves a set of policers for use as dynamic enforcement policers for the Distributed CPU Protection (DCP) feature. Policers are allocated from this pool and instantiated as per-object-per-protocol dynamic enforcement policers after a local monitor is triggered for an object (such as a SAP or Network Interface). Any change to this configured value automatically clears the high water mark, timestamp, and failed allocation counts as seen under "show card x fp y dist-cpu-protection" and in the tmnxFpDcpDynEnfrcPlcrStatTable in the TIMETRA-CHASSIS-MIB. Decreasing this value to below the currently used/allocated number causes all dynamic policers to be returned to the free pool (and traffic returns to the local monitors).

Default 0

Parameters *number-of-policers* — specifies the number of policers to be reserved.

Values 0, 1000..32k

exceed-action

Syntax **exceed-action {discard [hold-down** *seconds***] | low-priority [hold-down** *seconds***] | none}**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>static-policer
config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>protocol>dynamic-parameters

Description This command controls the action performed upon the extracted control packets when the configured policer rates are exceeded.

Default none

Parameters **discard —** Discards packets that are non-conformant.

low-priority — Marks packets that are non-conformant as low-priority. If there is congestion in the control plane of the SR OS router then unmarked control packets are given preferential treatment.

hold-down *seconds* **—** (optional) When the parameter is specified, it causes the following "hold-down" behavior.

When SR OS software detects that an enforcement policer has marked or discarded one or more packets (software may detect this some time after the packets are actually discarded), and an optional **hold-down** *seconds* value has been specified for the **exceed-action**, then the policer will be set into a "mark-all" or "drop-all" mode that cause the following:

- the policer state to be updated as normal

- all packets to be marked (if the action is "low-priority") or dropped (action = discard) regardless of the results of the policing decisions/actions/state.

The **hold-down** is cleared after approximately the configured time in seconds after it was set. The **hold-down** *seconds* option should be selected for protocols that receive more than one packet in a complete handshake/negotiation (for example, DHCP, PPP). **hold-down** is not applicable to a local monitoring policer. The "detection-time" will only start after any **hold-down** is complete. During the **hold-down** (and the detection-time), the policer is considered as in an "exceed" state. The policer may re-enter the hold-down state if an exceed packet is detected during the detection-time countdown. The allowed values are [none|1..10080|indefinite].

Values 1-10080 in seconds

none — no hold-down

indefinite — hold down is in place until the operator clears it manually using a tools command (tools perform security dist-cpu-protection release-hold-down) or removes the dist-cpu-protection policy from the object.

exceed-action

Syntax **exceed-action {discard | low-priority | none}**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>local-monitoring-policer

Description This command controls the action performed upon the extracted control packets when the configured policer rates are exceeded.

Default none

Parameters **discard —** Discards packets that are non-conformant.

low-priority — Marks packets that are non-conformant as low-priority. If there is congestion in the control plane of the SR OS router then unmarked control packets are given preferential treatment.

none — no hold-down

log-events

Syntax **[no] log-events [verbose]**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>static-policer

Description This command controls the creation of log events related to static-policer status and activity.

Default default = log-events

log-events: send the Exceed (Excd) and Conform events (e.g. sapDcpStaticExcd)

Parameters **verbose —** (optional) Sends the same events as just "log-events" plus Hold Down Start and Hold Down End events. The optional "verbose" includes some events that are more likely used during debug/tuning/investigations.

local-monitoring-policer

Syntax **[no] local-monitoring-policer** *policer-name* **[create]**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>local-monitoring-policer

Description This command configures a monitoring policier that is used to monitor the aggregate rate of several protocols arriving on an object (for example, SAP). When the **local-monitoring-policer** is determined to be in a non-conformant state (at the end of a minimum monitoring time of 60 seconds) then the system will attempt to allocate dynamic policers for the particular object for any protocols associated with the local monitor (for example, via the "protocol xyz enforcement" CLI command).

If the system cannot allocate all the dynamic policers within 150 seconds, it will stop attempting to allocate dynamic policers, raise a LocMonExcdAllDynAlloc log event, and go back to using the local monitor. The local monitor may then detect exceeded packets again and make another attempt at allocating dynamic policers.

Once this *policer-name* is referenced by a protocol then this policer will be instantiated for each "object" that is created and references this DDoS policy. If there is no policer free then the object will be blocked from being created.

Parameters *policy-name* — Specifies name of the policy.

Values [32 chars max]

log-events

Syntax **[no] log-events [verbose]**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>local-monitoring-policer

Description This command controls the creation of log events related to **local-monitoring-policer** status and activity.

Default log-events: send the DcpLocMonExcdOutOfDynRes events

Parameters **verbose —** This parameter sends the same events as just "log-events" plus DcpLocMonExcd, DcpLocMonExcdAllDynAlloc, and DcpLocMonExcdAllDynFreed. The optional "verbose" includes some events that are more likely used during debug/tuning/investigations

protocol

Syntax **[no] protocol** *name* **[create]**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy

Description This command creates the protocol for control in the policy.

Control packets that are both forwarded (which means they could be subject to normal QoS policy policing) and also copied for extraction are not subject to distributed cpu protection (including in the all-unspecified bucket). This includes traffic snooping (for example, PIM in VPLS) as well as con-

trol traffic that is flooded in an R-VPLS instance and also extracted to the CPM such as ARP, ISIS and VRRP. Centralized per SAP/interface cpu-protection can be employed to rate limit or mark this traffic if desired.

Explanatory notes for some of the protocols:

- bfd-cpm: includes all bfd handled on the CPM including cpm-np type, single hop and multi-hop, and MPLS-TP CC and CV bfd
- dhcp: includes dhcp for IPv4 and IPv6
- eth-cfm: 802.1ag and includes Y.1731. Eth-cfm packets on port and LAG based facility MEPs are not included (but packets on Tunnel MEPs are).
- icmp: includes IPv4 and IPv6 ICMP except Neighbor Discovery which is classified as a separate protocol 'ndis'
- isis: includes isis used for SPBM
- ldp: includes ldp and t-ldp
- mpls-ttl: MPLS packets that are extracted due to an expired mpls ttl field
- ndis: IPv6 Neighbor Discovery
- ospf: includes all OSPFv2 and OSPFv3 packets.
- pppoe-pppoa: includes PADx, LCP, PAP/CHAP and NCPs
- all-unspecified: a special 'protocol'. When configured, this treats all extracted control packets that are not explicitly created in the dist-cpu-protection policy as a single aggregate flow (or "virtual protocol"). It lumps together "all the rest of the control traffic" to allow it to be rate limited as one flow. It includes all control traffic of all protocols that are extracted and sent to the CPM (even protocols that cannot be explicitly configured with the distributed cpu protection feature). Control packets that are both forwarded and copied for extraction are not included. If an operator later explicitly configures a protocol, then that protocol is suddenly no longer part of the "all-unspecified" flow. The "all-unspecified" protocol must be explicitly configured in order to operate.

"no protocol x" means packets of protocol x are not monitored and not enforced (although they do count in the fp protocol queue) on the objects to which this dist-cpu-protection policy is assigned, although the packets will be treated as part of the all-unspecified protocol if the all-unspecified protocol is created in the policy.

Default none

Parameters *names* — Signifies protocol name.

Values arp|dhcp|http-redirect|icmp|igmp|mld|ndis|pppoe-pppoa|all-unspecified|mpls-ttl|bfd-cpm|bgp|eth-cfm|isis|ldp|ospf|pim|rsvp.

enforcement

Syntax **enforcement {static** *policer-name* **| dynamic {***mon-policer-name* **| local-mon-bypass}}**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>protocols

Description This command configures the enforcement method for the protocol.

Default dynamic local-mon-bypass

Parameters **static —** the protocol is always enforced using a static-policer. Multiple protocols can reference the same static-policer. Packets of protocols that are statically enforced bypass any local monitors.

policer name — Specifies the name is a static-policer.

dynamic — A specific enforcement policer for this protocol for this SAP/object is instantiated when the associated local-monitoring-policer is determined to be in a non-conformant state (at the end of a minimum monitoring time of 60 seconds to reduce thrashing).

mon-policer-name — Specifies which local-monitoring-policer to use

local-mon-bypass — This parameter is used to not include packets from this protocol in the local monitoring function, and when the local-monitor "trips", do not instantiate a dynamic enforcement policer for this protocol.

detection-time

Syntax **detection-time** *seconds*

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>protocols>dynamic-parameters

Description When a dynamic enforcing policer is instantiated, it will remain allocated until at least a contiguous conformant period of detection-time passes.

dynamic-parameters

Syntax **dynamic-parameters**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>protocols

Description The dynamic-parameters are used to instantiate a dynamic enforcement policer for the protocol when the associated local-monitoring-policer is considered as exceeding its rate parameters (at the end of a minimum monitoring time of 60 seconds).

log-events

Syntax **[no] log-events [verbose]**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy>protocols>dynamic-parameters

Description This command controls the creation of log events related to dynamic enforcement policer status & activity

Default log-events - send the Exceed (Excd) and Conform events

Parameters **verbose —** This parameter sends the send the same events as just "log-events" plus Hold Down Start, Hold Down End, DcpDynamicEnforceAlloc and DcpDynamicEnforceFreed events. The optional "verbose" includes the allocation/de-allocation events (typically used for debug/tuning only – could be very noisy even when there is nothing much of concern).

static-policer

Syntax **[no] static-policer policer-name [create]**

Context config>system>security>dist-cpu-protection>policy

Description Configures a static enforcement policer that can be referenced by one or more protocols in the policy. Once this policer-name is referenced by a protocol, then this policer will be instantiated for each object (e.g. SAP or network interface) that is created and references this policy. If there is no policer resource available on the associated card/fp then the object will be blocked from being created. Multiple protocols can use the same static-policer.

Parameters *policy-name* — Specifies the name of the policy.

Values [32 chars max]

Show Commands

Security Commands

access-group

Syntax **access-group** [*group-name*]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays SNMP access group information.

Parameters *group-name* — This command displays information for the specified access group.

Output **Security Access Group Output —** The following table describes security access group output fields..

Table 12: Show System Security Access Group Output Fields

Label	Description
Group name	The access group name.
Security model	The security model required to access the views configured in this node.
Security level	Specifies the required authentication and privacy levels to access the views configured in this node.
Read view	Specifies the variable of the view to read the MIB objects.
Write view	Specifies the variable of the view to configure the contents of the agent.
Notify view	Specifies the variable of the view to send a trap about MIB objects.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-4# show system security access-group
===============================================================================
Access Groups
===============================================================================
group name        security  security  read          write         notify
                  model     level     view          view          view
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
snmp-ro           snmpv1    none      no-security                 no-security
snmp-ro           snmpv2c   none      no-security                 no-security
snmp-rw           snmpv1    none      no-security   no-security   no-security
snmp-rw           snmpv2c   none      no-security   no-security   no-security
snmp-rwa          snmpv1    none      iso           iso           iso
snmp-rwa          snmpv2c   none      iso           iso           iso
```

```
snmp-trap         snmpv1    none                                      iso
snmp-trap         snmpv2c   none                                      iso
===============================================================================
A:ALA-7#
```

authentication

Syntax **authentication** [**statistics**]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays system login authentication configuration and statistics.

Parameters **statistics —** Appends login and accounting statistics to the display.

Output **Authentication Output —** The following table describes system security authentication output fields.

Table 13: Show System Security Authentication Output Fields

Label	Description
Sequence	The sequence in which authentication is processed.
Server address	The IP address of the RADIUS server.
Status	Current status of the RADIUS server.
Type	The authentication type.
Timeout (secs)	The number of seconds the router waits for a response from a RADIUS server.
Single connection	Enabled — Specifies a single connection to the TACACS+ server and validates everything via that connection. Disabled — The TACACS+ protocol operation is disabled.
Retry count	Displays the number of times the router attempts to contact the RADIUS server for authentication if there are problems communicating with the server.
Connection errors	Displays the number of times a user has attempted to login irrespective of whether the login succeeded or failed.
Accepted logins	The number of times the user has successfully logged in.
Rejected logins	The number of unsuccessful login attempts.
Sent packets	The number of packets sent.
Rejected packets	The number of packets rejected.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-4# show system security authentication
===============================================================================
Authentication                  sequence : radius tacplus local
===============================================================================
server address   status  type    timeout(secs)  single connection  retry count
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10.10.10.103     up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.1        up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.2        up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.3        up      radius  5              n/a                5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
radius admin status  : down
tacplus admin status : up
health check         : enabled
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Servers: 4
===============================================================================
A:ALA-4#


A:ALA-7>show>system>security# authentication statistics
===============================================================================
Authentication                  sequence : radius tacplus local
===============================================================================
server address   status  type    timeout(secs)  single connection  retry count
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10.10.10.103     up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.1        up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.2        up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.3        up      radius  5              n/a                5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
radius admin status  : down
tacplus admin status : up
health check         : enabled
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Servers: 4
===============================================================================
Login Statistics
===============================================================================
server address      connection errors   accepted logins     rejected logins
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10.10.10.103        0                   0                   0
10.10.0.1           0                   0                   0
10.10.0.2           0                   0                   0
10.10.0.3           0                   0                   0
local               n/a                 1                   0
===============================================================================
Authorization Statistics (TACACS+)
===============================================================================
server address      connection errors   sent packets        rejected packets
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
Accounting Statistics
===============================================================================
server address      connection errors   sent packets        rejected packets
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10.10.10.103        0                   0                   0
```

```
10.10.0.1           0                   0                   0
10.10.0.2           0                   0                   0
10.10.0.3           0                   0                   0
===============================================================================
A:ALA-7#
*A:Dut-C# show system security authentication statistics

===============================================================================
Authentication                  sequence : radius tacplus local
===============================================================================
type                                status  timeout     single      retry
   server address                           (secs)      conn        count
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
health check         : enabled (interval 30)

===============================================================================
Login Statistics
===============================================================================
server address                                          conn   accepted  rejected
                                                        errors logins    logins
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
local                                                   n/a    4         0

===============================================================================
Authorization Statistics (TACACS+)
===============================================================================
server address                                          conn   sent      rejected
                                                        errors pkts      pkts
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

===============================================================================
Accounting Statistics
===============================================================================
server address                                          conn   sent      rejected
                                                        errors pkts      pkts
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
```

communities

Syntax **communities**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays SNMP communities.

Output **Communities Output —** The following table describes community output fields.

Table 14: Show Communities Output Fields

Label	Description
Community	The community string name for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c access only.
Access	r — The community string allows read-only access. rw — The community string allows read-write access. rwa — The community string allows read-write access. mgmt — The unique SNMP community string assigned to the management router.
View	The view name.
Version	The SNMP version.
Group Name	The access group name.
No of Communities	The total number of configured community strings.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-48# show system security communities
===============================================================================
Communities
===============================================================================
community           access  view                version   group name
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
cli-readonly        r       iso                 v2c       cli-readonly
cli-readwrite       rw      iso                 v2c       cli-readwrite
public              r       no-security         v1 v2c    snmp-ro
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Communities: 3
===============================================================================
A:ALA-48#
```

cpm-filter

Syntax **cpm-filter**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays CPM filters.

ip-filter

Syntax **ip-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command displays CPM IP filters.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Identifies a CPM filter entry as configured on this system.

Values 1 — 2048

CPM Filter Output — The following table describes CPM IP filter output fields..

Table 15: Show CPM IP Filter Output Fields

Label	Description
Entry-Id	Displays information about the specified management access filter entry
Dropped	Displays the number of dropped events.
Forwarded	Displays the number of forwarded events.
Description	Displays the CPM filter description.
Log ID	Displays the log ID where matched packets will be logged.
Src IP	Displays the source IP address(/netmask or prefix-list)
Dest. IP	Displays the destination IP address(/netmask).
Src Port	Displays the source port number (range).
Dest. Port	Displays the destination port number (range).
Protocol	Displays the Protocol field in the IP header.
Dscp	Displays the DSCP field in the IP header.
Fragment	Displays the 3-bit fragment flags or 13-bit fragment offset field.
ICMP Type	Displays the ICMP type field in the ICMP header.
ICMP Code	Displays the ICMP code field in the ICMP header.
TCP-syn	Displays the SYN flag in the TCP header.
TCP-ack	Displays the ACK flag in the TCP header
Match action	When the criteria matches, displays drop or forward packet.
Next Hop	In case match action is forward, indicates destination of the matched packet.

Table 15: Show CPM IP Filter Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Dropped pkts	Indicates number of matched dropped packets
Forwarded pkts	Indicates number of matched forwarded packets.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-35# show system security cpm-filter ip-filter
===============================================================================
CPM IP Filters
===============================================================================
Entry-Id  Dropped   Forwarded Description
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
101       25880     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.101.2 #101
102       25880     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.102.2 #102
103       25880     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.103.2 #103
104       25882     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.104.2 #104
105       25926     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.105.2 #105
106       25926     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.106.2 #106
107       25944     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.107.2 #107
108       25950     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.108.2 #108
109       25968     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.109.2 #109
110       25984     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.110.2 #110
111       26000     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.111.2 #111
112       26018     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.112.2 #112
113       26034     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.113.2 #113
114       26050     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.114.2 #114
115       26066     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.115.2 #115
116       26084     0         CPM-Filter 10.4.116.2 #116
===============================================================================
A:ALA-35#

A:ALA-35# show system security cpm-filter ip-filter entry 101
===============================================================================
CPM IP Filter Entry
===============================================================================
Entry Id           : 101
Description : CPM-Filter 10.4.101.2 #101
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Filter Entry Match Criteria :
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Log Id             : n/a
Src. IP            : 10.4.101.2/32      Src. Port          : 0
Dest. IP           : 10.4.101.1/32      Dest. Port         : 0
Protocol           : 6                  Dscp               : ef
ICMP Type          : Undefined          ICMP Code          : Undefined
Fragment           : True               Option-present     : Off
IP-Option          : 130/255            Multiple Option    : True
TCP-syn            : Off                TCP-ack            : True
Match action       : Drop
===============================================================================
A:ALA-35#
```

ipv6-filter

Syntax **ipv6-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command displays CPM IPv6 filters.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Identifies a CPM filter entry as configured on this system.

Values 1 — 2048

ipv6-filter

Syntax **ip-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>cpm-filter

Description Displays CPM IPv6 filters.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Identifies a CPM IPv6 filter entry as configured on this system.

Values 1 — 2048

CPM Filter Output — The following table describes CPM IPv6 filter output fields..

Table 16: Show CPM IPv6 Filter Output Fields

Label	Description
Entry-Id	Displays information about the specified management access filter entry
Dropped	Displays the number of dropped events.
Forwarded	Displays the number of forwarded events.
Description	Displays the CPM filter description.
Log ID	Log Id where matched packets will be logged.
Src IP	Displays Source IP address(/netmask)
Dest. IP	Displays Destination IP address(/netmask).
Src Port	Displays Source Port Number (range).
Dest. Port	Displays Destination Port Number (range).
next-header	Displays next-header field in the IPv6 header.
Dscp	Displays Traffic Class field in the IPv6 header.
ICMP Type	Displays ICMP type field in the icmp header.

Table 16: Show CPM IPv6 Filter Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
ICMP Code	Displays ICMP code field in the icmp header.
TCP-syn	Displays the SYN flag in the TCP header.
TCP-ack	Displays the ACK flag in the TCP header
Match action	When criteria matches, displays drop or forward packet.
Next Hop	In case match action is forward, indicates destination of the matched packet.
Dropped pkts	Indicating number of matched dropped packets
Forwarded pkts	Indicating number of matched forwarded packets.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-35# show system security cpm-filter ipv6-filter
===============================================================================
CPM IPv6 Filters
===============================================================================
Entry-Id Dropped Forwarded Description
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
101      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::101:2 #101
102      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::102:2 #102
103      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::103:2 #103
104      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::104:2 #104
105      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::105:2 #105
106      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::106:2 #106
107      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::107:2 #107
108      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::108:2 #108
109      25880   0         CPM-Filter 11::109:2 #109
===============================================================================
A:ALA-35#


A:ALA-35# show system security cpm-filter ipv6-filter entry 101
===============================================================================
CPM IPv6 Filter Entry
===============================================================================
Entry Id : 1
Description : CPM-Filter 11::101:2 #101
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Filter Entry Match Criteria :
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Log Id : n/a
Src. IP : 11::101:2       Src. Port : 0
Dest. IP : 11::101:1      Dest. Port : 0
next-header : none        Dscp : Undefined
ICMP Type : Undefined     ICMP Code : Undefined
TCP-syn : Off             TCP-ack : Off
Match action : Drop
Dropped pkts : 25880      Forwarded pkts : 0
===============================================================================
A:ALA-35#
```

cpm-queue

Syntax **cpm-queue** *queue-id*

Context show>system>security

Description Displays CPM queues.

Parameters *queue-id* — Specifies an integer value that identifies a CPM queue.

Values 0, 33 — 2000

CPM queue Output — The following table describes CPM queue output fields..

Table 17: Show CPM IPv6 Filter Output Fields

Label	Description
PIR	Displays the administrative Peak Information Rate (PIR) for the queue.
CIR	Displays the amount of bandwidth committed to the queue.
CBS	Displays the amount of buffer drawn from the reserved buffer portion of the queue's buffer pool.
MBS	Displays the maximum queue depth to which a queue can grow.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-35# show system security cpm-queue 1001
===============================================================================
CPM Queue Entry
===============================================================================
Queue Id           : 1001
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Queue Parameters :
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
PIR                : 10000000           CIR                : 1000000
CBS                : 4096               MBS                : 8192
===============================================================================
A:ALA-35#
```

cpu-protection

Syntax **cpu-protection**

Context show>system>security

Description This command enables the context to display CPU protection information.

Sample Output

```
show system security cpu-protection eth-cfm-monitoring
===============================================================================
SAP's where the protection policy Eth-CFM rate limit is exceeded
===============================================================================
SAP-Id                                          Service-Id    Plcy
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1/1/1                                           3             100
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1 SAP('s) found
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
SDP's where the protection policy Eth-CFM rate limit is exceeded
===============================================================================
SDP-Id            Service-Id    Plcy
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1:3               3             100
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1 SDP('s) found
===============================================================================

show system security cpu-protection eth-cfm-monitoring service-id 3 sap-id 1/1/1
 ===============================================================================
Flows exceeding the Eth-CFM monitoring rate limit
===============================================================================
Service-Id : 3
SAP-Id     : 1/1/1
Plcy       : 100
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Limit  MAC-Address        Level  OpCode
  First-Time            Last-Time             Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0      8c:8c:8c:8c:8c:8c  1      18
  03/21/2009 23:32:29   03/21/2009 23:34:39   4000000019
61234  8d:8d:8d:8d:8d:8d  2      19
  03/21/2009 23:32:39   03/21/2009 23:34:59   4000000020
61234  Aggregated         3      20
  03/21/2009 23:32:49   03/21/2009 23:35:19   4000000021
61234  8f:8f:8f:8f:8f:8f  4      21
  03/21/2009 23:32:59   03/21/2009 23:35:39   4000000022
61234  90:90:90:90:90:90  5      22
  03/21/2009 23:33:09   03/21/2009 23:35:59   4000000023
61234  91:91:91:91:91:91  6      23
  03/21/2009 23:33:19   03/21/2009 23:36:19   4000000024
61234  92:92:92:92:92:92  7      24
  03/21/2009 23:33:29   03/21/2009 23:36:39   4000000025
max    Aggregated         0      25
  03/21/2009 23:33:39   03/21/2009 23:36:59   4000000026
0      94:94:94:94:94:94  1      26
  03/21/2009 23:33:49   03/21/2009 23:37:19   4000000027
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
9 flows(s) found
===============================================================================

show system security cpu-protection eth-cfm-monitoring service-id 3 sdp-id 1:3
===============================================================================
Flows exceeding the Eth-CFM monitoring rate limit
===============================================================================
```

```
Service-Id : 3
SDP-Id     : 1:3
Plcy       : 100
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Limit  MAC-Address        Level  OpCode
  First-Time            Last-Time             Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
0      8c:8c:8c:8c:8c:8c  1      18
  03/21/2009 23:32:29   03/21/2009 23:34:39   3000000019
61234  8d:8d:8d:8d:8d:8d  2      19
  03/21/2009 23:32:39   03/21/2009 23:34:59   3000000020
61234  Aggregated         3      20
  03/21/2009 23:32:49   03/21/2009 23:35:19   3000000021
61234  8f:8f:8f:8f:8f:8f  4      21
  03/21/2009 23:32:59   03/21/2009 23:35:39   3000000022
61234  90:90:90:90:90:90  5      22
  03/21/2009 23:33:09   03/21/2009 23:35:59   3000000023
61234  91:91:91:91:91:91  6      23
  03/21/2009 23:33:19   03/21/2009 23:36:19   3000000024
61234  92:92:92:92:92:92  7      24
  03/21/2009 23:33:29   03/21/2009 23:36:39   3000000025
max    Aggregated         0      25
  03/21/2009 23:33:39   03/21/2009 23:36:59   3000000026
0      94:94:94:94:94:94  1      26
  03/21/2009 23:33:49   03/21/2009 23:37:19   3000000027
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
9 flow(s) found
===============================================================================
```

```
show system security cpu-protection excessive-sources service-id 3 sdp-id 1:3
===============================================================================
Sources exceeding the per-source rate limit
===============================================================================
Service-Id : 3
SDP-Id     : 1:3
Plcy       : 100
Limit      : 65534
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
MAC-Address       First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
00:00:00:00:00:01 03/22/2009 00:41:59 03/22/2009 01:53:39 3000000043
00:00:00:00:00:02 03/22/2009 00:43:39 03/22/2009 01:56:59 3000000044
00:00:00:00:00:03 03/22/2009 00:45:19 03/22/2009 02:00:19 3000000045
00:00:00:00:00:04 03/22/2009 00:46:59 03/22/2009 02:03:39 3000000046
00:00:00:00:00:05 03/22/2009 00:48:39 03/22/2009 02:06:59 3000000047
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
5 source(s) found
===============================================================================
```

```
show system security cpu-protection violators sdp
===============================================================================
SDP's where the protection policy overall rate limit is violated
===============================================================================
SDP-Id           Service-Id
  Plcy Limit First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1:1              3
```

```
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:43:53 06/27/2010 22:37:20 3000000007
1:2             3
  255  max   05/01/2010 01:43:55 06/27/2010 22:37:23 3000000008
1:3             3
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:43:57 06/27/2010 22:37:26 3000000009
1:4             3
  255  max   05/01/2010 01:43:59 06/27/2010 22:37:29 3000000010
1:5             3
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:44:01 06/27/2010 22:37:32 3000000011
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
5 SDP('s) found
===============================================================================


show system security cpu-protection excessive-sources
===============================================================================
SAP's where the protection policy per-source rate limit is exceeded
===============================================================================
SAP-Id                                        Service-Id
  Plcy Limit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1/1/1                                         3
  100  65534
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1 SAP('s) found
===============================================================================
SDP's where the protection policy per-source rate limit is exceeded
===============================================================================
SDP-Id            Service-Id    Plcy    Limit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1:3               3             100     65534
1:4               3             255     max
1:5               3             100     65534
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
3 SDP('s) found
===============================================================================


show system security cpu-protection policy association
===============================================================================
Associations for CPU Protection policy 100
===============================================================================
Description : (Not Specified)
SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Service Id  : 3                        Type   : VPLS
  SAP 1/1/1                                 mac-monitoring
  SAP 1/1/2                                 eth-cfm-monitoring aggr car
  SAP 1/1/3                                 eth-cfm-monitoring
  SAP 1/1/4
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SAP's : 4
SDP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Service Id  : 3                        Type   : VPLS
  SDP 1:1               eth-cfm-monitoring aggr car
  SDP 1:3               eth-cfm-monitoring aggr
  SDP 1:5               mac-monitoring
  SDP 17407:4123456789  eth-cfm-monitoring car
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SDP's : 4
Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Managed SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Video-Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
===============================================================================
Associations for CPU Protection policy 254
===============================================================================
Description : Default (Modifiable) CPU-Protection Policy assigned to Access
              Interfaces

SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
SDP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Router-Name : Base
  ies6If
Router-Name : vprn7
  vprn7If
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of interfaces : 2
Managed SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Video-Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
===============================================================================
Associations for CPU Protection policy 255
===============================================================================
Description : Default (Modifiable) CPU-Protection Policy assigned to Network
              Interfaces

SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
SDP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Service Id  : 3                         Type   : VPLS
  SDP 1:2
  SDP 1:4               eth-cfm-monitoring
Service Id  : 6                         Type   : IES
  SDP 1:6
Service Id  : 7                         Type   : VPRN
  SDP 1:7
Service Id  : 9                         Type   : Epipe
  SDP 1:9
Service Id  : 300                       Type   : VPLS
  SDP 1:300
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SDP's : 6
Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Router-Name : Base
  system
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of interfaces : 1
Managed SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Video-Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
===============================================================================

show system security cpu-protection policy 100 association
===============================================================================
Associations for CPU Protection policy 100
===============================================================================
Description : (Not Specified)

SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Service Id  : 3                          Type   : VPLS
  SAP 1/1/1                                     mac-monitoring
  SAP 1/1/2                                     eth-cfm-monitoring aggr car
  SAP 1/1/3                                     eth-cfm-monitoring
  SAP 1/1/4
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SAP's : 4
SDP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Service Id  : 3                          Type   : VPLS
  SDP 1:1               eth-cfm-monitoring aggr car
  SDP 1:3               eth-cfm-monitoring aggr
  SDP 1:5               mac-monitoring
  SDP 17407:4123456789  eth-cfm-monitoring car
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SDP's : 4
Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Managed SAP associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
Video-Interface associations
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  None
===============================================================================
A:bksim130#

show system security cpu-protection violators
 ===============================================================================
Ports where a rate limit is violated
===============================================================================
Port-Id
  Type Limit First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
No ports found
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
Interfaces where the protection policy overall rate limit is violated
===============================================================================
Interface-Name                                   Router-Name
  Plcy Limit First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No interfaces found
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
SAP's where the protection policy overall rate limit is violated
===============================================================================
SAP-Id                                           Service-Id
  Plcy Limit First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1/1/1                                            3
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:43:41 06/27/2010 22:37:02 3000000001
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1 SAP('s) found
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
SDP's where the protection policy overall rate limit is violated
===============================================================================
SDP-Id           Service-Id
  Plcy Limit First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1:1              3
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:43:41 06/27/2010 22:37:02 3000000001
1:2              3
  255  max   05/01/2010 01:43:43 06/27/2010 22:37:05 3000000002
1:3              3
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:43:45 06/27/2010 22:37:08 3000000003
1:4              3
  255  max   05/01/2010 01:43:47 06/27/2010 22:37:11 3000000004
1:5              3
  100  61234 05/01/2010 01:43:49 06/27/2010 22:37:14 3000000005
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
5 SDP('s) found
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
Video clients where the protection policy per-source rate limit is violated
===============================================================================
Client IP Address  Video-Interface                Service-Id
  Plcy Limit First-Time          Last-Time           Violation-Periods
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No clients found
===============================================================================
```

eth-cfm-monitoring

Syntax **eth-cfm-monitoring** [{**service-id** *service-id* **sap-id** *sap-id*} | {**service-id** *service-id* **sdp-id** *sdp-id:vc-id*}]

Context show>system>security>cpu-protection

Description This command displays sources exceeding their eth-cfm-monitoring rate limit.

dist-cpu-protection

Syntax **dist-cpu-protection**

Context show>card>fp

Description This command displays Distributed CPU Protection parameters and status at the per card and forwarding plane level.

Output

Table 18: Show Distributed CPU Protection Output Fields

Label	Description
Card	The card identifier
Forwarding Plane(FP)	Identifies the instance of the FP (FastPath) chipset. Some cards have a single FP (for example, an IOM3-XP) and some cards can contain multiple FPs (for example, an IOM2 has two FPs and an XCM can house two FPs via its two XMAs).
Dynamic Enforcement Policer Pool	The configured size of the dynamic-enforcement-policer-pool for this card/FP.
Dynamic-Policers Currently In Use	The number of policers from the dynamic enforcement policer pool that are currently in use. The policers are allocated from the pool and instantiated as per-object-per-protocol dynamic enforcement policers after a local monitor triggered for an object (such as a SAP or Network Interface).
Hi-WaterMark Hit Count	The maximum Currently In Use value since it was last cleared (clear card x fp y dist-cpu-protection)
Hi-WaterMark Hit Time	The time at which the current Hi-WaterMark Hit Count was first recorded.
Dynamic-Policers Allocation Fail Count	Indicates how many times the system attempted to allocate dynamic enforcement policers but could not get enough the fill the request.

```
*A:nodeA# show card 1 fp 1 dist-cpu-protection
```

```
===============================================================================
Card : 1 Forwarding Plane(FP) : 1
===============================================================================
Dynamic Enforcement Policer Pool : 2000
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Statistics Information
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Dynamic-Policers Currently In Use      : 48
Hi-WaterMark Hit Count                 : 72
Hi-WaterMark Hit Time                  : 01/03/2013 15:08:42 UTC
Dynamic-Policers Allocation Fail Count : 0
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
```

dist-cpu-protection

Syntax **dist-cpu-protection [detail]**

Context show>service>id>sap

Description This command displays Distributed CPU Protection parameters and status at the per SAP level.

Parameters **detail —** Include the adapted operational rate parameters in the CLI output. The adapted Oper. parameters are only applicable if the policer is instantiated (for example, if the associated forwarding plane is operational, or for an interface if there is a physical port configured for the interface, or if the dynamic policers are allocated), otherwise values of 0 kbps, etc are displayed.

Output **Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output —** The following table describes Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output output fields.

Table 19: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields

Label	Description
Distributed CPU Protection Policy	The DCP policy assigned to the object.
Policer-Name	The configured name of the static policer
Card/FP	The card and FP identifier. FP identifies the instance of the FP (FastPath) chipset. Some cards have a single FP (for example, IOM3-XP) and some cards can contain multiple FPs (for example, an IOM2 has two FPs and an XCM can house two FPs via its two XMAs).
Policer-State	The state of the policer with the following potential values:

Table 19: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
	Exceed - The policer has been detected as non-conformant to the associated DCP policy parameters (e.g. packets exceeded the configured rate and the DCP polling process identified this occurrence) *Conform* - The policer has been detected as conformant to the associated DCP policy parameters (rate) *not-applicable* - Newly created policers or policers that are not currently instantiated. This includes policers configured on linecards that are not in service.
Protocols Mapped	A list of protocols that are configured to map to the particular policer.
Oper. xyz fields	The actual hardware may not be able to perfectly rate limit to the exact configured rate parameters in a DCP policy. In this case the configured rate parameters will be adapted to the closest supported rate. These adapted operational values are displayed in CLI when the "detail" keyword is included in the show command. The adapted Oper. parameters are only applicable if the policer is instantiated (e.g. if the associated forwarding plane is operational, or for an interface if there is a physical port configured for the interface, or if the dynamic policers are allocated), otherwise values of 0 kbps, etc are displayed. *Oper. Kbps* - The adapted 'kilobits-per-second' value for DCP 'kbps' rates *Oper. MBS* - The adapted 'mbs size' value for DCP 'kbps' rates *Oper. Depth* - The calculated policer bucket depth in packets (for DCP 'packets' rates) or in bytes (for DCP 'kbps'rates) *Oper. Packets* - The adapted 'ppi' value for DCP 'packets' rates *Oper. Within* - The adapted 'within seconds' value for DCP 'packets' rates *Oper. Init. Delay* - The adapted 'initial-delay packets' value for DCP 'packets' rates
Exceed-Count	The count of packets exceeding the policing parameters since the given policer was previously declared as conformant or newly instantiated. This counter has the same behavior as the exceed counter in the DCP the log events – they are baselined (reset) when the policer transitions to conformant.

Table 19: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Detec. Time Remain	The remaining time in the detection-time countdown during which a policer in the exceed state is being monitored to see if it is once again conformant.
Hold-Down Remain	The remaining time in the hold-down countdown during which a policer is treating all packets as exceeding.
All Dyn-Plcr Alloc.	Indicates that all the dynamic enforcement policers have been allocated and instantiated for a given local-monitor.
Dyn-Policer Alloc.	Indicates that a dynamic policer has been instantiated.

Sample Output

```
*A:nodeA# show service id 33 sap 1/1/3:33 dist-cpu-protection detail

===============================================================================
Service Access Points(SAP) 1/1/3:33
===============================================================================
Distributed CPU Protection Policy :  test1

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Statistics/Policer-State Information
===============================================================================
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Static Policer
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Policer-Name        : arp
Card/FP             : 1/1                Policer-State      : Conform
Protocols Mapped    : arp
Exceed-Count        : 0
Detec. Time Remain  : 0 seconds          Hold-Down Remain.  : none
Operational (adapted) rate parameters:
 Oper. Packets      : 5 ppi              Oper. Within       : 8 seconds
 Oper. Initial Delay: 6 packets
 Oper. Depth        : 0 packets

Policer-Name        : dhcp
Card/FP             : 1/1                Policer-State      : Conform
Protocols Mapped    : dhcp
Exceed-Count        : 0
Detec. Time Remain  : 0 seconds          Hold-Down Remain.  : none
Operational (adapted) rate parameters:
 Oper. Kbps         : 2343 kbps          Oper. MBS          : 240 kilobytes
 Oper. Depth        : 0 bytes

… (snip)


*A:nodaA# show service id 33 sap 1/1/3:34 dist-cpu-protection detail
```

```
===============================================================================
Service Access Points(SAP) 1/1/3:34
===============================================================================
Distributed CPU Protection Policy :  test2

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Statistics/Policer-State Information
===============================================================================
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Static Policer
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No entries found
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Local-Monitoring Policer
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Policer-Name        : my-local-mon1
Card/FP             : 1/1                Policer-State      : conform
Protocols Mapped    : arp, pppoe-pppoa
Exceed-Count        : 0
All Dyn-Plcr Alloc. : False
Operational (adapted) rate parameters:
 Oper. Packets      : 10 ppi             Oper. Within       : 8 seconds
 Oper. Initial Delay: 8 packets
 Oper. Depth        : 0 packets

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Dynamic-Policer (Protocol)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Protocol(Dyn-Plcr)  : arp
Card/FP             : 1/1                Protocol-State     : not-applicable
Exceed-Count        : 0
Detec. Time Remain  : 0 seconds          Hold-Down Remain.  : none
Dyn-Policer Alloc.  : False
Operational (adapted) rate parameters: unknown

Protocol(Dyn-Plcr)  : pppoe-pppoa
Card/FP             : 1/1                Protocol-State     : not-applicable
Exceed-Count        : 0
Detec. Time Remain  : 0 seconds          Hold-Down Remain.  : none
Dyn-Policer Alloc.  : False
Operational (adapted) rate parameters: unknown

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

dist-cpu-protection

Syntax **dist-cpu-protection [detail]**

Context show>router>interface

Description This command displays Distributed CPU Protection parameters and status at the router Interface level.

Parameters **detail** — Include the adapted operational rate parameters in the CLI output. The adapted Oper. parameters are only applicable if the policer is instantiated (for example, if the associated forwarding plane is operational, or for an interface if there is a physical port configured for the interface, or if the dynamic policers are allocated), otherwise values of 0 kbps, etc are displayed.

Output **Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output —** The following table describes Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output output fields.

Table 20: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields

Label	Description
Distributed CPU Protection Policy	The DCP policy assigned to the object.
Policer-Name	The configured name of the static policer
Card/FP	The card and FP identifier. FP identifies the instance of the FP (FastPath) chipset. Some cards have a single FP (for example, IOM3-XP) and some cards can contain multiple FPs (for example, an IOM2 has two FPs and an XCM can house two FPs via its two XMAs).
Policer-State	The state of the policer with the following potential values: *Exceed* - The policer has been detected as non-conformant to the associated DCP policy parameters (e.g. packets exceeded the configured rate and the DCP polling process identified this occurence) *Conform* - The policer has been detected as conformant to the associated DCP policy parameters (rate) *not-applicable* - Newly created policers or policers that are not currently instantiated. This includes policers configured on linecards that are not in service.
Protocols Mapped	A list of protocols that are configured to map to the particular policer.
Oper. xyz fields	The actual hardware may not be able to perfectly rate limit to the exact configured rate parameters in a DCP policy. In this case the configured rate parameters will be adapted to the closest supported rate. These adapted operational values are displayed in CLI when the “detail” keyword is included in the show command. The adapted Oper. parameters are only applicable if the policer is instantiated (e.g. if the associated forwarding plane is operational, or for an interface if there is a physical port configured for the interface, or if the dynamic policers are allocated), otherwise values of 0 kbps, etc are displayed.

Table 20: Show Distributed CPU Protection Policer Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
	Oper. Kbps - The adapted 'kilobits-per-second' value for DCP 'kbps' rates
	Oper. MBS - The adapted 'mbs size' value for DCP 'kbps' rates
	Oper. Depth - The calculated policer bucket depth in packets (for DCP 'packets' rates) or in bytes (for DCP 'kbps'rates)
	Oper. Packets - The adapted 'ppi' value for DCP 'packets' rates
	Oper. Within - The adapted 'within seconds' value for DCP 'packets' rates
	Oper. Init. Delay - The adapted 'initial-delay packets' value for DCP 'packets' rates
Exceed-Count	The count of packets exceeding the policing parameters since the given policer was previously declared as conformant or newly instantiated. This counter has the same behavior as the exceed counter in the DCP the log events – they are baselined (reset) when the policer transitions to conformant.
Detec. Time Remain	The remaining time in the detection-time countdown during which a policer in the exceed state is being monitored to see if it is once again conformant.
Hold-Down Remain	The remaining time in the hold-down countdown during which a policer is treating all packets as exceeding.
All Dyn-Plcr Alloc.	Indicates that all the dynamic enforcement policers have been allocated and instantiated for a given local-monitor.
Dyn-Policer Alloc.	Indicates that a dynamic policer has been instantiated.

Sample Output

```
*A:Dut-A# show router interface "test" dist-cpu-protection detail

===============================================================================
Interface "test" (Router: Base)
===============================================================================
Distributed CPU Protection Policy :  dcpuPol

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Statistics/Policer-State Information
```

```
===============================================================================
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Static Policer
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Policer-Name        : staticArpPolicer
Card/FP             : 4/1               Policer-State       : Exceed
Protocols Mapped    : arp
Exceed-Count        : 10275218
Detec. Time Remain  : 29 seconds        Hold-Down Remain.   : none
Operational (adapted) Rate Parameters:
 Oper. Packets      : 100 ppi            Oper. Within       : 1 seconds
 Oper. Initial Delay: none
 Oper. Depth        : 100 packets
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Local-Monitoring Policer
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Policer-Name        : localMonitor
Card/FP             : 4/1               Policer-State       : Exceed
Protocols Mapped    : icmp, ospf
Exceed-Count        : 8019857
All Dyn-Plcr Alloc. : True
Operational (adapted) Rate Parameters:
 Oper. Packets      : 200 ppi            Oper. Within       : 1 seconds
 Oper. Initial Delay: none
 Oper. Depth        : 0 packets
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Dynamic-Policer (Protocol)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Protocol(Dyn-Plcr)  : icmp
Card/FP             : 4/1               Protocol-State      : Exceed
Exceed-Count        : 1948137
Detec. Time Remain  : 29 seconds        Hold-Down Remain.   : none
Dyn-Policer Alloc.  : True
Operational (adapted) Rate Parameters:
 Oper. Kbps         : 25 kbps            Oper. MBS          : 256 bytes
 Oper. Depth        : 274 bytes

Protocol(Dyn-Plcr)  : ospf
Card/FP             : 4/1               Protocol-State      : Exceed
Exceed-Count        : 1487737
Detec. Time Remain  : 29 seconds        Hold-Down Remain.   : none
Dyn-Policer Alloc.  : True
Operational (adapted) Rate Parameters:
 Oper. Kbps         : 25 kbps            Oper. MBS          : 256 bytes
 Oper. Depth        : 284 bytes
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
```

excessive-sources

Syntax **excessive-sources** [**service-id** *service-id* **sap-id** *sap-id*]

Context show>system>security>cpu-protection

Description This command displays sources exceeding their per-source rate limit.

Parameters **service-id** *service-id* — Displays information for services exceeding their per-source rate limit.

sap-id *sap-id* — Displays information for SAPs exceeding their per-source rate limit.

policy

Syntax **policy** [*policy-id*] **association**

Context show>system>security>cpu-protection
show>system>security>dist-cpu-protection

Description This command displays CPU protection policy information.

Parameters *policy-id* — Displays CPU protection policy information for the specified policy ID>

association — This keyword displays policy-id associations.

protocol-protection

Syntax **protocol-protection**

Context show>system>security>cpu-protection

Description This command display all interfaces with non-zero drop counters.

violators

Syntax **violators** [**port**] [**interface**] [**sap**]

Context show>system>security>cpu-protection

Description This command displays all interfaces, ports or SAPs with CPU protection policy violators. It also includes objects (saps, interfaces) that exceed the out-profile-rate and have the log-events keyword enabled for the out-profile-rate in the cpu-protection policy associated with the object.

Parameters **port —** Displays violators associated with the port.

interface — Displays violators associated with the interface.

sap — Displays violators associated with the SAP.

video — Displays violators associated with the video entity.

sdp — Displays violators associated with the SDP.

mac-filter

Syntax **mac-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>cpm-filter

Description This command displays CPM MAC filters.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* **—** Displays information about the specified entry.

Values 1 — 2048

Sample Output

```
*B:bksim67# show system security cpm-filter mac-filter
===============================================================================
CPM Mac Filter (applied)
===============================================================================
Entry-Id  Dropped   Forwarded Description
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1         23002     47094
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Num CPM Mac filter entries: 1
===============================================================================
*B:bksim67#
```

mac-filter

Syntax **mac-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>management-access-filter

Description This command displays management access MAC filters.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* **—** Displays information about the specified entry.

Values 1 — 9999

Sample Output

```
*B:bksim67# show system security management-access-filter mac-filter
===============================================================================
Mac Management Access Filter
===============================================================================
filter type   : mac
Def. Action   : permit
Admin Status  : enabled (no shutdown)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry             : 1                 Action            : deny
```

```
FrameType          : ethernet_II        Svc-Id             : Undefined
Src Mac            : Undefined
Dest Mac           : Undefined
Dot1p              : Undefined          Ethertype          : Disabled
DSAP               : Undefined          SSAP               : Undefined
Snap-pid           : Undefined          ESnap-oui-zero     : Undefined
cfm-opcode         : Undefined
Log                : disabled           Matches            : 0
===============================================================================
*B:bksim67#
```

keychain

Syntax **keychain** [*key-chain*] [**detail**]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays keychain information.

Parameters *key-chain* — Specifies the keychain name to display.

detail — Displays detailed keychain information.

Sample Output

```
*A:ALA-A# show system security keychain test
===============================================================================
Key chain:test
===============================================================================
TCP-Option number send     : 254                    Admin state   : Up
TCP-Option number receive  : 254                    Oper state    : Up
===============================================================================
*A:ALA-A#
*A:ALA-A#  show system security keychain test detail
===============================================================================
Key chain:test
===============================================================================
TCP-Option number send     : 254                    Admin state   : Up
TCP-Option number receive  : 254                    Oper state    : Up
===============================================================================
Key entries for key chain: test
===============================================================================
Id               : 0
Direction        : send-receive         Algorithm        : hmac-sha-1-96
Admin State      : Up                   Valid            : Yes
Active           : Yes                  Tolerance        : 300
Begin Time       : 2007/02/15 18:28:37  Begin Time (UTC) : 2007/02/15 17:28:37
End Time         : N/A                  End Time (UTC)   : N/A
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Id               : 1
Direction        : send-receive         Algorithm        : aes-128-cmac-96
Admin State      : Up                   Valid            : Yes
Active           : No                   Tolerance        : 300
Begin Time       : 2007/02/15 18:27:57  Begin Time (UTC) : 2007/02/15 17:27:57
End Time         : 2007/02/15 18:28:13  End Time (UTC)   : 2007/02/15 17:28:13
```

```
===============================================================================
Id               : 2
Direction        : send-receive         Algorithm        : aes-128-cmac-96
Admin State      : Up                   Valid            : Yes
Active           : No                   Tolerance        : 500
Begin Time       : 2007/02/15 18:28:13  Begin Time (UTC) : 2007/02/15 17:28:13
End Time         : 2007/02/15 18:28:37  End Time (UTC)   : 2007/02/15 17:28:37
===============================================================================
*A:ALA-A#
```

management-access-filter

Syntax **management-access-filter**

Context show>system>security

Description This commend displays management access filter information for IP and MAC filters.

ip-filter

Syntax **ip-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>mgmt-access-filter

Description This command displays management-access IP filters.

Parameters *entry-id* — Displays information for the specified entry.

Values 1 — 9999

Output **Management Access Filter Output —** The following table describes management access filter output fields.

Table 21: Show Management Access Filter Output Fields

Label	Description
Def. action	Permit — Specifies that packets not matching the configured selection criteria in any of the filter entries are permitted. Deny — Specifies that packets not matching the configured selection criteria in any of the filter entries are denied and that a ICMP host unreachable message will be issued. Deny-host-unreachble — Specifies that packets not matching the configured selection criteria in the filter entries are denied.
Entry	The entry ID in a policy or filter table.
Description	A text string describing the filter.

Table 21: Show Management Access Filter Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Src IP	The source IP address used for management access filter match criteria.
Src interface	The interface name for the next hop to which the packet should be forwarded if it hits this filter entry.
Dest port	The destination port.
Matches	The number of times a management packet has matched this filter entry.
Protocol	The IP protocol to match.
Action	The action to take for packets that match this filter entry.

```
*A:Dut-F# show system security management-access-filter ip-filter
===============================================================================
IPv4 Management Access Filter
===============================================================================
filter type:  : ip
Def. Action   : permit
Admin Status  : enabled (no shutdown)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry         : 1
Src IP        : 192.168.0.0/16
Src interface : undefined
Dest port     : undefined
Protocol      : undefined
Router        : undefined
Action        : none
Log           : disabled
Matches       : 0
===============================================================================
*A:Dut-F#
```

ipv6-filter

Syntax **ipv6-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context show>system>security>mgmt-access-filter

Description This command displays management-access IPv6 filters.

Parameters *entry-id* — Specifies the IPv6 filter entry ID to display.

Values 1 — 9999

Output

```
*A:Dut-C# show system security management-access-filter ipv6-filter entry 1
===============================================================================
IPv6 Management Access Filter
```

```
===============================================================================
filter type   : ipv6
Def. Action   : permit
Admin Status  : enabled (no shutdown)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry         : 1
Src IP        : 2001::1/128
Flow label    : undefined
Src interface : undefined
Dest port     : undefined
Next-header   : undefined
Router        : undefined
Action        : permit
Log           : enabled
Matches       : 0
===============================================================================
*A:Dut-C# s
```

password-options

Syntax **password-options**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays configured password options.

Output **Password Options Output —** The following table describes password options output fields.

Table 22: Show Password Options Output Fields

Label	Description
Password aging in days	Displays the number of days a user password is valid before the user must change their password.
Time required between password changes	Displays the time interval between changed passwords.
Number of invalid attempts permitted per login	Displays the number of unsuccessful login attempts allowed for the specified **time**.
Time in minutes per login attempt	Displays the period of time, in minutes, that a specified number of unsuccessful attempts can be made before the user is locked out.
Lockout period (when threshold breached)	Displays the number of minutes that the user is locked out if the threshold of unsuccessful login attempts has been exceeded.
Authentication order	Displays the sequence in which password authentication is attempted among RADIUS, TACACS+, and local passwords.
User password history length	Displays the size of the password history file to be stored.

Table 22: Show Password Options Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Accepted password length	Displays the minimum length required for local passwords.
Credits for each character type	Displays the credit for each character type. A credit is obtained for a particular character type; for example, uppercase, lowercase, numeric, or special character. Credits per character type are configurable. Credits can be used towards the minimum length of the password, so a trade-off can be made between a very long, simple password and a short, complex one.
Required character types	Displays the character types that are required in a password; for example, uppercase, lowercase, numeric, or special character.
Minimum number different character types	Displays the minimum number of each different character types in a password.
Required distance with previous password	Displays the minimum Levenshtein distance between a new password and the old password.
Allow consecutively repeating a character	Displays the number of times the same character is allowed to be repeated consecutively.
Allow passwords containing username	Displays whether the user name is allowed as part of the password.
Palindrome allowed	Displays whether palindromes are allowed as part of the password.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-7# show system security password-options

===============================================================================
Password Options
===============================================================================

Password aging in days                          : none
Time required between password changes          : 0d 00:10:00

Number of invalid attempts permitted per login  : 3
Time in minutes per login attempt               : 5
Lockout period (when threshold breached)        : 10
Authentication order                            : radius tacplus local
User password history length                    : disabled
Accepted password length                        : 6..56 characters
Credits for each character type                 : none
Required character types                        : none
Minimum number different character types        : 0
```

```
Required distance with previous password         : 5
Allow consecutively repeating a character        : always
Allow passwords containing username              : yes
Palindrome allowed                               : no
===============================================================================
A:ALA-7#
```

per-peer-queuing

Syntax **per-peer-queuing**

Context show>system>security

Description This command enables or disables CPMCFM hardware queuing per peer. TTL security only operates when per-peer-queuing is enabled.

Output **Per-Peer-Queuing Output —** The following table describes per-peer-queuing output fields.

Table 23: Show Per-Peer-Queuing Output Fields

Label	Description
Per Peer Queuing	Displays the status (enabled or disabled) of hardware queuing per peer.
Total Num of Queues	Displays the total number of hardware queues.
Num of Queues In Use	Displays the total number of hardware queues in use.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-48# show system security per-peer-queuing
================================================
CPM Hardware Queuing
================================================
Per Peer Queuing        : Enabled
Total Num of Queues     : 8192
Num of Queues In Use    : 2
================================================
A:ALA-48# configure
```

profile

Syntax **profile** [*user-profile-name*]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays user profile information.

If the *profile-name* is not specified, then information for all profiles are displayed.

Parameters *user-profile-name* — Displays information for the specified user profile.

Output **User Profile Output —** The following table describes user profile output fields.

Table 24: Show User Profile Output Fields

Label	Description
User Profile	Displays the profile name used to deny or permit user console access to a hierarchical branch or to specific commands.
Def. action	Permit all — Permits access to all commands.
	Deny — Denies access to all commands.
	None — No action is taken.
Entry	The entry ID in a policy or filter table.
Description	Displays the text string describing the entry.
Match Command	Displays the command or subtree commands in subordinate command levels.
Action	Permit all — Commands matching the entry command match criteria are permitted.
	Deny — Commands not matching the entry command match criteria are not permitted.
No. of profiles	The total number of profiles listed.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-7# show system security profile administrative
===============================================================================
User Profile
===============================================================================
User Profile : administrative
Def. Action  : permit-all
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 10
Description  :
Match Command: configure system security
Action       : permit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 20
Description  :
Match Command: show system security
Action       : permit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of profiles:
===============================================================================
```

```
A:ALA-7#
```

source-address

Syntax **source-address**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays source-address configured for applications.

Output **Source Address Output —** The following table describes source address output fields.

Table 25: Show Source Address Output Fields

Label	Description
Application	Displays the source-address application.
IP address Interface Name	Displays the source address IP address or interface name.
Oper status	Up — The source address is operationally up. Down — The source address is operationally down.

Sample Output

```
A:SR-7# show system security source-address
===============================================================================
Source-Address applications
===============================================================================
Application         IP address/Interface Name                   Oper status
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
telnet              10.20.1.7                                   Up
radius              loopback1                                   Up
===============================================================================
A:SR-7#
```

ssh

Syntax **ssh**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays all the SSH sessions as well as the SSH status and fingerprint. The type of SSH application (CLI, SCP, SFTP or NETCONF) is indicated for each SSH connection.

Output **SSH Options Output —** The following table describes SSH output fields .

Label	Description
SSH status	SSH is enabled — Displays that SSH server is enabled. SSH is disabled — Displays that SSH server is disabled.
SSH Preserve Key	Enabled — Displays that preserve-key is enabled. Disabled — Displays that preserve-key is disabled.
SSH protocol version 1	Enabled — Displays that SSH1 is enabled. Disabled — Displays that SSH1 is disabled.
SSH protocol version 2	Enabled — Displays that SSH2 is enabled. Disabled — Displays that SSH2 is disabled.
Key fingerprint	The key fingerprint is the server's identity. Clients trying to connect to the server verify the server's fingerprint. If the server fingerprint is not known, the client may not continue with the SSH session since the server might be spoofed.
Connection	The IP address of the connected router(s) (remote client).
Encryption	des — Data encryption using a private (secret) key. 3des — An encryption method that allows proprietary information to be transmitted over untrusted networks.
Username	The name of the user.
Version	The SSH version number.
Server Name	The type of SSH application (CLI, SCP, SFTP or NETCONF)
Number of SSH sessions	The total number of SSH sessions.

Sample output

```
*A:ALA-49# show system security ssh

===============================================================================
SSH Server
===============================================================================
Administrative State      : Enabled
Operational State         : Up
Preserve Key              : Enabled

SSH Protocol Version 1    : Disabled

SSH Protocol Version 2    : Enabled
DSA Host Key Fingerprint  : 88:41:1c:7e:97:64:df:a0:e4:54:c2:cc:3d:dd:c7:70
RSA Host Key Fingerprint  : 63:b8:c4:8a:17:b7:1c:95:35:91:c9:08:75:cc:31:a3

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Connection          Username            Version ServerName  Status
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
138.120.214.254     admin               2       netconf     connected
138.120.140.148     admin               2       cli         connected
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SSH sessions : 2
===============================================================================
```

user

Syntax **user** [*user-id*] [**detail**]
user [*user-id*] **lockout**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays user registration information.

If no command line options are specified, summary information for all users displays.

Parameters *user-id* — Displays information for the specified user.

Default All users

detail — Displays detailed user information to the summary output.

lockout — Displays information about any users who are currently locked out.

Output **User Output —** The following table describes user output fields.

Label	Description
User ID	The name of a system user.
Need new pwd	Y — The user must change his password at the next login.
	N — The user is not forced to change his password at the next login.
Cannot change pw	Y — The user has the ability to change the login password.
	N — The user does not have the ability to change the login password.
User permissions	Console — Y - The user is authorized for console access. N- The user is not authorized for console access.
	FTP — Y - The user is authorized for FTP access. N - The user is not authorized for FTP access.
	SNMP — Y - The user is authorized for SNMP access. N - The user is not authorized for SNMP access.
Password expires	The number of days in which the user must change his login password.
Attempted logins	The number of times the user has attempted to login irrespective of whether the login succeeded or failed.
Failed logins	The number of unsuccessful login attempts.
Local conf	Y — Password authentication is based on the local password database.
	N — Password authentication is not based on the local password database.
Home directory	Specifies the local home directory for the user for both console and FTP access.

Label	Description (Continued)
Restricted to home	Yes — The user is not allowed to navigate to a directory higher in the directory tree on the home directory device. No — The user is allowed to navigate to a directory higher in the directory tree on the home directory device.
Login exec file	Displays the user's login exec file which executes whenever the user successfully logs in to a console session. profile - the security profile(s) associated with the user locked-out - no / yes (time remaining). Indicates the the user is currently locked-out. After the time expires, or the lockout is manually cleared, the user will be able to attempt to log into the node again. Remaining Login attempts - number of login attempts remaining until the user will be locked-out Remaining Lockout Time - The time until the lockout is automatically cleared and the user can attempt to log into the node again.

Sample Output

```
*A:Dut-C# show system security user detail
===============================================================================
Users
===============================================================================
User ID          New  User Permissions     Password    Login     Failed  Local
                 Pwd  console ftp li snmp  Expires     Attempts  Logins  Conf
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
admin            n    y       n   n  n     never       4         0       y
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of users : 1
===============================================================================


*A:Dut-C# show system security user detail
===============================================================================
User Configuration Detail
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
user id            : admin
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
console parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
new pw required    : no                cannot change pw   : no
home directory     :
restricted to home : no
login exec file    :
profile            : administrative
locked-out         : yes (9:23 remaining)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

```
snmp parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================


*A:Node234# show system security user lockout
===============================================================================
Currently Failed Login Attempts
===============================================================================
User ID Remaining Login attempts Remaining Lockout Time (min:sec)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
jason123 N/A 9:56
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of users : 1
===============================================================================
```

With the introduction of the PKI on an SR (SSH Server) the authentication process can be done via PKI or password. SSH client usually authenticate via PKI and password if PKI is configured on the client. In this case PKI takes precedence over password in most clients.

All client authentications are logged and display in the **show>system>security>user detail**. Table 26 shows the rules where pass and fail attempts are logged.

Table 26: Pass/Fail Login Attempts

Authentication Order	Client (i.e., putty)	Server (i.e., SR)		CLI Show System Security Attempts (SR)	
	Private Key Programmed	Public Key Configured	Password Configured	Logins Attempts	Failed Logins
1. Public Key	Yes	Yes	N/A	Increment	
2. Password	Yes	Yes (No match between client and server. Go to password.)	Yes	Increment	
	Yes	No	Yes	Increment	
	No	N/A	Yes	Increment	
	No	N/A	No		Increment
1. Public Key (only)	Yes	Yes	N/A	Increment	

Table 26: Pass/Fail Login Attempts (Continued)

Authentication Order	Client (i.e., putty)	Server (i.e., SR)		CLI Show System Security Attempts (SR)	
	Private Key Programmed	Public Key Configured	Password Configured	Logins Attempts	Failed Logins
	Yes	Yes (No match between client and server. Go go password.)			Increment
	Yes		N/A		Increment
	No		N/A		Increment

TABLE

```
*A:Dut-C# show system security user detail
===============================================================================
Users
===============================================================================
User ID          New  User Permissions     Password    Login     Failed  Local
                 Pwd  console ftp li snmp  Expires     Attempts  Logins  Conf
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
admin            n    y       n   n  n     never       4         0       y
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of users : 1
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
User Configuration Detail
===============================================================================
===============================================================================
user id            : admin
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
console parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
new pw required    : no                cannot change pw   : no
home directory     :
restricted to home : no
login exec file    :
profile            : administrative
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
snmp parameters
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
```

view

Syntax **view** [*view-name*] [**detail**]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays the SNMP MIB views.

Parameters *view-name* — Specify the name of the view to display output. If no view name is specified, the complete list of views displays.

detail — Displays detailed view information.

Output **View Output —** The following table describes show view output fields.

Table 27: Show View Output Fields

Label	Description
view name	The name of the view. Views control the accessibility of a MIB object within the configured MIB view and subtree.
oid tree	The object identifier of the ASN.1 subtree.
mask	The bit mask that defines a family of view subtrees.
permission	Indicates whether each view is included or excluded
No. of Views	Displays the total number of views.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-48# show system security view
===============================================================================
Views
===============================================================================
view name         oid tree                        mask              permission
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
iso               1                                                 included
read1             1.1.1.1                         11111111          included
write1            2.2.2.2                         11111111          included
testview          1                               11111111          included
testview          1.3.6.1.2                       11111111          excluded
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.2                                     included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.4                                     included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.5                                     included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.6                                     included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.7                                     included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.31                                    included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.77                                    included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.4.1.6527.3.1.2.3.7                        included
mgmt-view         1.3.6.1.4.1.6527.3.1.2.3.11                       included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.2                                     included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.4                                     included
```

```
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.5                                        included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.6                                        included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.7                                        included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.15                                       included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.23                                       included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.31                                       included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.68                                       included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.2.1.77                                       included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.4.1.6527.3.1.2.3.7                           included
vprn-view         1.3.6.1.4.1.6527.3.1.2.3.11                          included
vprn-view       1.3.6.1.4.1.6527.3.1.2.20.1                 includedno-security
1                                                 included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3                                          excluded
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1                                   included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.11.2.1                                   included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.15.1.1                                   included
on-security       2                                 00000000           included
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Views:
===============================================================================
A:ALA-48#
```

certificate

Syntax **certificate**

Context show

Description This command displays certificate information.

ca-profile

Syntax **ca-profile**
ca-profile *name* [**association**]

Context show>certificate

Description This command shows certificate-authority profile information.

Parameters *name* — Specifies the name of the Certificate Authority (CA) profile.

association — Displays associated CA profiles.

ocsp-cache

Syntax **ocsp-cache** [*entry-id*]

Context show>certificate

Description This command displays the current cached OCSP results. The output includes the following information:

- Certificate issuer
- Certificate serial number
- OCSP result
- Cache entry expire time

Parameters *entry-id* — Specifies the local cache entry identifier of the certificate that was validated by the OCSP responder.

statistics

Syntax **statistics**

Context show>certificate

Description This command shows certificate related statistics.

Login Control

users

Syntax **users**

Context show

Description Displays console user login and connection information.

Output **Users Output —** The following table describes show users output fields.

Table 28: Show Users Output Fields

Label	Description
User	The user name.
Type	The user is authorized this access type.
From	The originating IP address.
Login time	The time the user logged in.
Idle time	The amount of idle time for a specific login.
Number of users	Displays the total number of users logged in.

Sample Console Users Output

```
A:ALA-7# show users
===============================================================================
User              Type    From              Login time          Idle time
===============================================================================
testuser          Console     --            21FEB2007 04:58:55  0d 00:00:00  A
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of users : 1
'A' indicates user is in admin mode
===============================================================================
A:ALA-7#
```

Clear Commands

statistics

Syntax **statistics** [**interface** *ip-int-name* | *ip-address*]

Context clear>router>authentication

Description This command clears authentication statistics.

Parameters *ip-int-name* — Clears the authentication statistics for the specified interface name. If the string contains special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.), the entire string must be enclosed within double quotes

ip-address — Clears the authentication statistics for the specified IP address.

ip-filter

Syntax **ip-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context clear>cpm-filter

Description This command clears IP filter statistics.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Specifies a particular CPM IP filter entry.

Values 1 — 2048

ipv6-filter

Syntax **ipv6-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context clear>cpm-filter

Description This command clears IPv6 filter statistics.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Specifies a particular CPM IP filter entry.

Values 1 — 2048

mac-filter

Syntax **mac-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context clear>cpm-filter

Description This command clears MAC filter statistics.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Specifies a particular CPM MAC filter entry.

Values 1 — 2048

ipv6-filter

Syntax **ipv6-filter** [**entry** *entry-id*]

Context clear>cpm-filter

Description This command clears IPv6 filter information.

Parameters **entry** *entry-id* — Specifies a particular CPM IPv6 filter entry.

Values 1 — 2048

CPU Protection Commands

cpu-protection

Syntax **cpu-protection**

Context clear

Description This command enables the context to clear CPU protection data.

excessive-sources

Syntax **excessive-sources**

Context clear>cpu-protection

Description This command clears the records of sources exceeding their per-source rate limit.

protocol-protection

Syntax **protocol-protection**

Context clear>cpu-protection

Description This command clears the interface counts of packets dropped by protocol protection.

violators

Syntax **violators** [**port**][**interface**][**sap**]

Context clear>cpu-protection

Description This command clears the rate limit violator record.

Parameters **port —** Clears entries for ports.

interface — Clears entries for interfaces.

sap — Clears entries for SAPs.

cpm-queue

Syntax **cpm-queue** *queue-id*

Context clear

Description This command clears CPM queue information.

Parameters *queue-id* — Specifies the CPM queue ID.

Values 33 — 2000

radius-proxy-server

Syntax **radius-proxy-server** *server-name* **statistics**

Context clear>router

Description This command clears RADIUS proxy server data.

Parameters *server-name* — Specifies the proxy server name.

statistics — Clears statistics for the specified server.

Debug Commands

radius

Syntax **radius** [**detail**] [**hex**]
no radius

Context debug

Description This command enables debugging for RADIUS connections.

The **no** form of the command disables the debugging.

Parameters **detail —** Displays detailed output.

hex — Displays the packet dump in hex format.

ocsp

Syntax [**no**] **ocsp**

Context debug

Description This command enables debug output of OCSP protocol for the CA profile.

The **no** form of the command disables the debug output.

ca-profile

Syntax [**no**] **ca-profile** *profile-name*

Context debug>ocsp

Description This command enables debug output of a specific CA profile.

Tools Commands

dist-cpu-protection

Syntax **dist-cpu-protection**

Context tools>perform>security
tools>dump>security

Description This command displays to release Distributed CPU Protection parameters and status at the per card and forwarding plane level.

release-hold-down

Syntax **release-hold-down interface** *interface-name* **[protocol** *protocol***] [static-policer** *name***]**
release-hold-down sap *sap-id* **[protocol** *protocol***] [static-policer** *name***]**

Context tools>perform>security>dist-cput protection

Description This command is used to release a Distributed CPU Protection (DCP) policer from a hold-down countdown (or indefinite hold-down if configured as such).

Parameters **interface** *interface-name* **—** Specifies Router interface name.

sap *sap-id* **—** Specify sap identifier.

protocol *protocol* **—** Specifies DCP protocol name (for example, arp, dhcp)

static-policer *name* **—** Specifies DCP static policer name as defined in the DCP policy.

violators

Syntax **violators enforcement {sap|interface} card** *slot-number* **[fp** *fp-number***]**
violators local-monitor {sap|interface} card *slot-number* **[fp** *fp-number***]**

Context tools>dump>security>dist-cput protection

Description This command shows the non-conformant enforcement policers and local monitors.

Parameters **sap** **—** -Indicates to display the violators associated with SAPs

interface **—** - Indicates to display the violators associated with router interfaces.

enforcement — Shows exceed and hold-down for Static and Dynamic Policers.

local-monitor — Shows state of dynamic policer allocation for Local Monitoring Policers.

card *slot-number* — The physical slot number for the card.

Values 1— n (n is platform dependant)

fp *fp-number* — Identifies the instance of the FP (FastPath) chipset. Some cards have a single FP (for example, an IOM3-XP) and some cards can contain multiple FPs (for example, an IOM2 has two FPs and an XCM can house two FPs via its two XMAs).

Values 1— 2

Output **Users Output —** The following table describes show users output fields.

Table 29: Output Parameters

Label	Description
Interface	The name of the router interface
Policer/Protocol	The configured name of the static policer (indicated with an [S]) or the DCP protocol name for a dynamic policer (indicated with a [D]).
[S] / [D]	indicates a static vs dynamic policer
Hld Rem	The remaining time in the hold-down countdown during which a policer is treating all packets as exceeding.

Sample Output

```
*A:Dut-A# tools dump security dist-cpu-protection violators enforcement interface
card 4 fp 1
===============================================================================
Distributed Cpu Protection Current Interface Enforcer Policer Violators
===============================================================================
Interface                      Policer/Protocol                    Hld Rem
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Violators on Slot-4 Fp-1
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
test                           staticArpPolicer               [S] none
test                           icmp                           [D] none
test                           ospf                           [D] none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
[S]-Static [D]-Dynamic [M]-Monitor
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
```

Admin Commands

clear lockout

Syntax **clear lockout** {**user** *name* **| all**}

Context admin>user

Description This command is used to clear any lockouts for a specific user, or for all users.

Parameters *name* — Specifies locked username.

clear password-history

Syntax **clear password-history** {**user** *name* **| all**}

Context admin>user

Description This command is used to clear old passwords used by a specific user, or for all users.

Parameters *name* — Specifies username.

SNMP

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information to configure SNMP.

Topics in this chapter include:

- SNMP Overview on page 284
  - → SNMP Architecture on page 284
  - → Management Information Base on page 284
  - → SNMP Protocol Operations on page 285
  - → SNMP Versions on page 285
  - → Management Information Access Control on page 286
  - → User-Based Security Model Community Strings on page 287
  - → Views on page 287
  - → Access Groups on page 287
  - → Users on page 289
  - → Per-VPRN Logs and SNMP Access on page 289
  - → Per-SNMP Community Source IP Address Validation on page 289
- Which SNMP Version to Use? on page 290
- Configuration Notes on page 292

SNMP Overview

SNMP Architecture

The Service Assurance Manager (SAM) is comprised of two elements: managers and agents. The manager is the entity through which network management tasks are facilitated. Agents interface managed objects. Managed devices, such as bridges, hubs, routers, and network servers can contain managed objects. A managed object can be a configuration attribute, performance statistic, or control action that is directly related to the operation of a device.

Managed devices collect and store management information and use Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP). SNMP is an application-layer protocol that provides a message format to facilitate communication between SNMP managers and agents. SNMP provides a standard framework to monitor and manage devices in a network from a central location.

An SNMP manager controls and monitors the activities of network hosts which use SNMP. An SNMP manager can obtain (get) a value from an SNMP agent or store (set) a value in the agent. The manager uses definitions in the management information base (MIB) to perform operations on the managed device such as retrieving values from variables or blocks of data, replying to requests, and processing traps.

Between the SNMP agent and the SNMP manager the following actions can occur:

- The manager can get information from the agent.
- The manager can set the value of a MIB object that is controlled by an agent.
- The agent can send traps to notify the manager of significant events that occur on the router.

Management Information Base

A MIB is a formal specifications document with definitions of management information used to remotely monitor, configure, and control a managed device or network system. The agent's management information consists of a set of network objects that can be managed with SNMP. Object identifiers are unique object names that are organized in a hierarchical tree structure. The main branches are defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF). When requested, the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA) assigns a unique branch for use by a private organization or company. The branch assigned to Alcatel-Lucent (TiMetra) is 1.3.6.1.4.1.6527.

The SNMP agent provides management information to support a collection of IETF specified MIBs and a number of MIBs defined to manage device parameters and network data unique to Alcatel-Lucent's router.

SNMP Protocol Operations

Between the SNMP agent and the SNMP manager the following actions can occur:

- The manager can get information from the agent.
- The manager can set the value of a MIB object that is controlled by an agent.
- The agent notifies the manager of significant events that occur on the router.

SNMP Versions

The agent supports multiple versions of the SNMP protocol.

- SNMP Version 1 (SNMPv1) is the original Internet-standard network management framework.

  SNMPv1 uses a community string match for authentication.
- The OS implementation uses SNMPv2c, the community-based administrative framework for SNMPv2. SNMPv2c uses a community string match for authentication.
- In SNMP Version 3 (SNMPv3), USM defines the user authentication and encryption features. View Access Control MIB (VACM) defines the user access control features. The SNMP-COMMUNITY-MIB is used to associate SNMPv1/SNMPv2c community strings with SNMPv3 VACM access control.

  SNMPv3 uses a username match for authentication.

Management Information Access Control

By default, the OS implementation of SNMP uses SNMPv3. SNMPv3 incorporates security model and security level features. A security model is the authentication type for the group and the security level is the permitted level of security within a security model. The combination of the security level and security model determines which security mechanism handles an SNMP packet.

To implement SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c configurations, several access groups are predefined. These access groups provide standard read-only, read-write, and read-write-all access groups and views that can simply be assigned community strings. In order to implement SNMP with security features, security models, security levels, and USM communities must be explicitly configured. Optionally, additional views which specify more specific OIDs (MIB objects in the subtree) can be configured.

Access to the management information in as SNMPv1/SNMPv2c agent is controlled by the inclusion of a community name string in the SNMP request. The community defines the sub-set of the agent's managed objects can be accessed by the requester. It also defines what type of access is allowed: read-only or read-write.

The use of community strings provide minimal security and context checking for both agents and managers that receive requests and initiate trap operations. A community string is a text string that acts like a password to permit access to the agent on the router.

Alcatel-Lucent's implementation of SNMP has defined three levels of community-named access:

- Read-Only permission — Grants only read access to objects in the MIB, except security objects.
- Read-Write permission — Grants read and write access to all objects in the MIB, except security objects.
- Read-Write-All permission — Grants read and write access to all objects in the MIB, including security objects.

User-Based Security Model Community Strings

User-based security model (USM) community strings associates a community string with an SNMPv3 access group and its view. The access granted with a community string is restricted to the scope of the configured group.

Views

Views control the access to a managed object. The total MIB of a router can be viewed as a hierarchical tree. When a view is created, either the entire tree or a portion of the tree can be specified and made available to a user to manage the objects contained in the subtree. Object identifiers (OIDs) uniquely identify managed objects. A view defines the type of operations for the view such as read, write, or notify.

OIDs are organized in a hierarchical tree with specific values assigned to different organizations. A view defines a subset of the agent's managed objects controlled by the access rules associated with that view.

The following system-provisioned views are available through the **config**>**system**>**security**>**snmp# view** context, which are particularly useful when configuring SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c:

- "iso" view—intended for administrative-type access to the entire supported object tree (except Lawful Interception)
- "no-security" view—similar to "iso" view, but removes access to several security areas of the object tree (such as SNMP communities, user and profile configuration, SNMP engine ID, etc). The "no-security" view is generally recommended over the "iso" view to reduce access to security objects.
- "li-view" view—provides access to a small set of Lawful Interception related objects
- "mgmt-view" view—provides access to IF-MIB and a few other basics
- "vprn-view" view—used to limit access to objects associated with a specific VPRN (for example, the Per-VPRN Logs and SNMP Access feature)

The Alcatel-Lucent SNMP agent associates SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c community strings with a SNMPv3 view.

Access Groups

Access groups associate a user group and a security model to the views the group can access. An access group is defined by a unique combination of a group name, security model

(SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, or SNMPv3), and security level (no-authorization-no privacy, authorization-no-privacy, or privacy).

An access group, in essence, is a template which defines a combination of access privileges and views. A group can be associated to one or more network users to control their access privileges and views.

When configuring access groups, the “no-security” view is generally recommended over the “iso” view in order to restrict access to security objects.

A set of system-provisioned access groups and system-created communities are available in SR OS. The system-provisioned groups and communities that begin with “cli-” are only used for internal CLI management purposes and are not exposed to external SNMP access.

Additional access parameters must be explicitly configured if the preconfigured access groups and views for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c do not meet your security requirements.

Users

By default, authentication and encryption parameters are not configured. Authentication parameters which a user must use in order to be validated by the router can be modified. SNMP authentication allows the device to validate the managing node that issued the SNMP message and determine if the message has been tampered with.

User access and authentication privileges must be explicitly configured. In a user configuration, a user is associated with an access group, which is a collection of users who have common access privileges and views (see Access Groups).

Per-VPRN Logs and SNMP Access

Configuration of VPRN-specific logs (with VPRN-specific syslog destinations, SNMP trap/notification groups, etc) is supported in addition to the global logs configured under "config log". The event streams for vprn logs contain only events that are associated with the particular vprn.

Each VPRN service can be configured with a set of SNMP v1/v2c community strings. These communities are mapped to the default "snmp-vprn" and "snmp-vprn-ro" views, which limit SNMP access to objects associated with a specific VPRN. For example, walking the ifTable (IF-MIB) using the community configured for VPRN 5 will return counters and status for VPRN 5. See the "vprn <x> snmp community" command description for more details.

Per-SNMP Community Source IP Address Validation

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c requests can be validated against per-snmp-community whitelists (**src-access-list**) of configured source IPv4 and IPv6 addresses. Source IP address lists can be configured and then associated with an SNMP community.

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c requests that fail the source IP address and community validation checks are discarded and are logged as SNMP event 2003 authenticationFailure (suppressed by default under “event-control”).

Which SNMP Version to Use?

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c do not provide security, authentication, or encryption. Without authentication, a non authorized user could perform SNMP network management functions and eavesdrop on management information as it passes from system to system. Many SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c implementations are restricted read-only access, which, in turn, reduces the effectiveness of a network monitor in which network control applications cannot be supported.

To implement SNMPv3, an authentication and encryption method must be assigned to a user in order to be validated by the router. SNMP authentication allows the router to validate the managing node that issued the SNMP message and determine if the message was tampered with.

Figure 9 depicts the configuration requirements to implement SNMPv1/SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3.

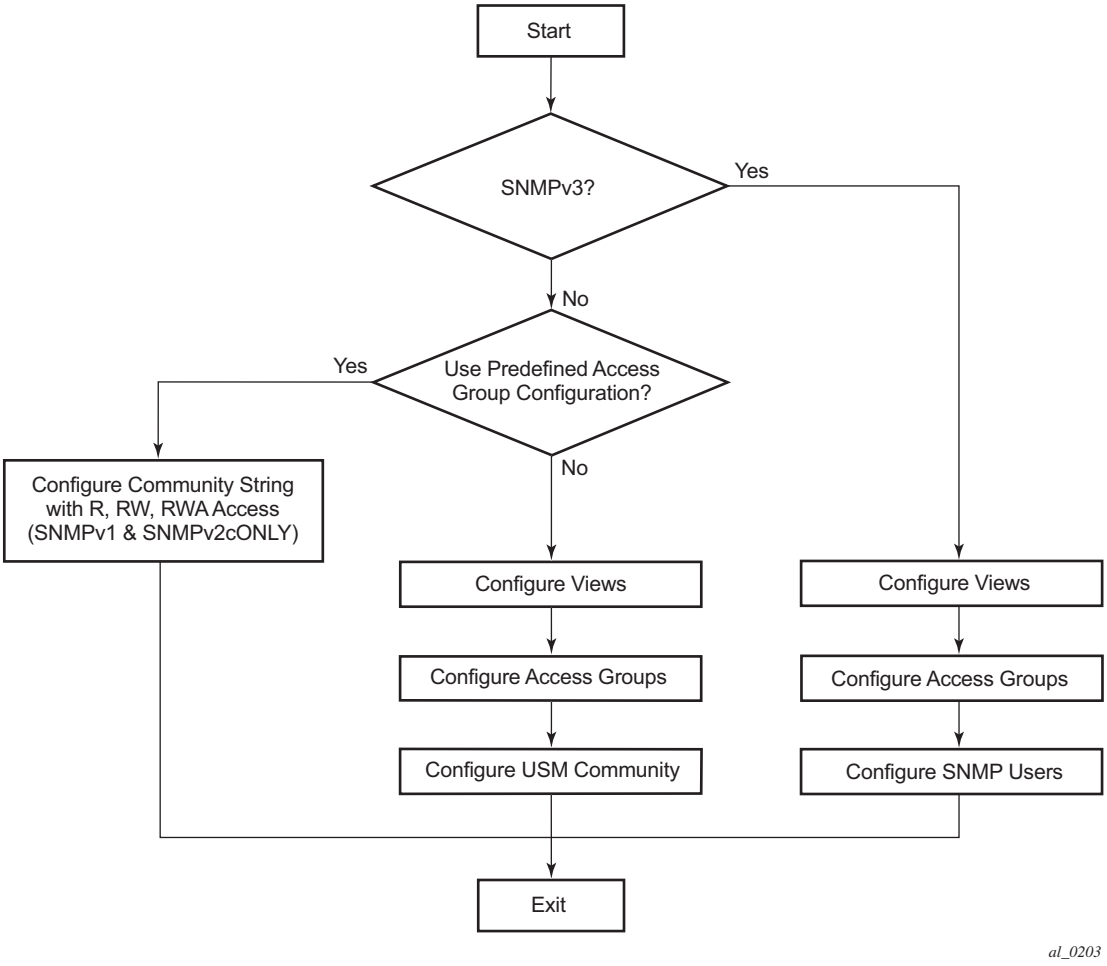


Figure 9: SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c Configuration and Implementation Flow

Configuration Notes

This section describes SNMP configuration caveats.

General

- To avoid management systems attempting to manage a partially booted system, SNMP will remain in a shut down state if the configuration file fails to complete during system startup. While shutdown, SNMP gets and sets are not processed. However, notifications are issued if an SNMP trap group has been configured.

  In order to enable SNMP, the portions of the configuration that failed to load must be initialized properly. Start SNMP with the **config>system>snmp>no shutdown** CLI command.

- Use caution when changing the SNMP engine ID. If the SNMP engine ID is changed in the **config>system>snmp> engineID** *engine-id* context, the current configuration must be saved and a reboot must be executed. If not, the previously configured SNMP communities and logger trap-target notify communities will not be valid for the new engine ID.

Configuring SNMP with CLI

This section provides information about configuring SNMP with CLI.

Topics in this chapter include:

- SNMP Configuration Overview on page 294
- Basic SNMP Security Configuration on page 295
- Configuring SNMP Components on page 296

SNMP Configuration Overview

This section describes how to configure SNMP components which apply to SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, and SNMPv3 on the router.

- Configuring SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c on page 294
- Configuring SNMPv3 on page 294

Configuring SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c

Alcatel-Lucent routers are based on SNMPv3. To use the routers with SNMPv1 and/or SNMPv2c, SNMP community strings must be configured. Three pre-defined access methods are available when SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c access is required. Each access method (**r**, **rw**, or **rwa**) is associated with an SNMPv3 access group that determines the access privileges and the scope of managed objects available. The **community** command is used to associate a community string with a specific access method and the required SNMP version (SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c). The access methods are:

- Read-Only — Grants read only access to the entire management structure with the exception of the security area.
- Read-Write — Grants read and write access to the entire management structure with the exception of the security area.
- Read-Write-All — Grants read and write access to the entire management structure, including security.

If the predefined access groups do not meet your access requirements, then additional access groups and views can be configured. The **usm-community** command is used to associate an access group with an SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c community string.

SNMP trap destinations are configured in the **config>log>snmp-trap-group** context.

Configuring SNMPv3

The OSimplements SNMPv3. If security features other than the default views are required, then the following parameters must be configured:

- Configure views
- Configure access groups
- Configure SNMP users

Basic SNMP Security Configuration

This section provides information to configure SNMP parameters and provides examples of common configuration tasks. The minimal SNMP parameters are:

For SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c:

- Configure community string parameters.

For SNMPv3:

- Configure view parameters
- Configure SNMP group
- Configure access parameters
- Configure user with SNMP parameters

The following displays SNMP default views, access groups, and attempts parameters.

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>snmp# info detail
----------------------------------------------
                view iso subtree 1
                    mask ff type included
                exit
                view no-security subtree 1
                    mask ff type included
                exit
                view no-security subtree 1.3.6.1.6.3
                    mask ff type excluded
                exit
                view no-security subtree 1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1
                    mask ff type included
                exit
                view no-security subtree 1.3.6.1.6.3.11.2.1
                    mask ff type included
                exit
                view no-security subtree 1.3.6.1.6.3.15.1.1
                    mask ff type included
                exit
                access group snmp-ro security-model snmpv1 security-level no-auth-no-
privacy read no-security notify no-security
                access group snmp-ro security-model snmpv2c security-level no-auth-no-
privacy read no-security notify no-security
                access group snmp-rw security-model snmpv1 security-level no-auth-no-
privacy read no-security write no-security notify no-security
                access group snmp-rw security-model snmpv2c security-level no-auth-no-
privacy read no-security write no-security notify no-security
                access group snmp-rwa security-model snmpv1 security-level no-auth-no-
privacy read iso write iso notify iso
                access group snmp-rwa security-model snmpv2c security-level no-auth-no-
privacy read iso write iso notify iso
                access group snmp-trap security-model snmpv1 security-level no-auth-no-
privacy notify iso
                access group snmp-trap security-model snmpv2c security-level no-auth-
no-privacy notify iso
                attempts 20 time 5 lockout 10
```

Configuring SNMP Components

Use the CLI syntax displayed below to configure the following SNMP scenarios:

- Configuring a Community String on page 297
- Configuring View Options on page 297
- Configuring Access Options on page 298
- Configuring USM Community Options on page 299
- Configuring Other SNMP Parameters on page 300

CLI Syntax:

```
config>system>security>snmp
    attempts [count] [time minutes1] [lockout minutes2]
    community community-string access-permissions [version SNMP
          version]
    usm-community community-string group group-name
    view view-name subtree oid-value
       mask mask-value [type {included|excluded}]
    access group group-name security-model security-model secu-
          rity-level security-level [context context-name [pre-
          fix-match]] [read view-name-1] [write view-name-2]
          [notify view-name-3]
```

Configuring a Community String

SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c community strings are used to define the relationship between an SNMP manager and agent. The community string acts like a password to permit access to the agent. The access granted with a community string is restricted to the scope of the configured group.

One or more of these characteristics associated with the string can be specified:

- Read-only, read-write, and read-write-all permission for the MIB objects accessible to the community.
- The SNMP version, SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c.

Default access features are pre-configured by the agent for SNMPv1/SNMPv2c.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure community options:

CLI Syntax: `config>system>security>snmp`
`community community-string access-permissions [version SNMP version]`

The following displays an SNMP community configuration example:

```
*A:cses-A13>config>system>security>snmp# info
----------------------------------------------
                community "uTdc9j48PBRkxn5DcSjchk" hash2 rwa version both
                community "Lla.RtAyRW2" hash2 r version v2c
                community "r0a159kIOfg" hash2 r version both
----------------------------------------------
*A:cses-A13>config>system>security>snmp#
```

Configuring View Options

Use the following CLI syntax to configure view options:

CLI Syntax: `config>system>security>snmp`
`view view-name subtree oid-value`
`mask mask-value [type {included|excluded}]`

The following displays a view configuration example:

```
*A:cses-A13>config>system>security>snmp# info
----------------------------------------------
                view "testview" subtree "1"
                    mask ff
                exit
                view "testview" subtree "1.3.6.1.2"
                    mask ff type excluded
                exit
```

```
                community "uTdc9j48PBRkxn5DcSjchk" hash2 rwa version both
                community "Lla.RtAyRW2" hash2 r version v2c
                community "r0a159kIOfg" hash2 r version both
-----------------------------------------------
*A:cses-A13>config>system>security>snmp#
```

Configuring Access Options

The **access** command creates an association between a user group, a security model and the views that the user group can access. Access must be configured unless security is limited to the preconfigured access groups and views for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2. An access group is defined by a unique combination of the group name, security model and security level.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure access features:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security>snmp
    access group group-name security-model security-model secu-
          rity-level security-level [context context-name [pre-
          fix-match]] [read view-name-1] [write view-name-2]
          [notify view-name-3]
```

The following displays an access configuration with the view configurations.

```
*A:cses-A13>config>system>security>snmp# info
-----------------------------------------------
                view "testview" subtree "1"
                    mask ff
                exit
                view "testview" subtree "1.3.6.1.2"
                    mask ff type excluded
                exit
                access group "test" security-model usm security-level auth-no-pr
ivacy read "testview" write "testview" notify "testview"
                community "uTdc9j48PBRkxn5DcSjchk" hash2 rwa version both
                community "Lla.RtAyRW2" hash2 r version v2c
                community "r0a159kIOfg" hash2 r version both
-----------------------------------------------
*A:cses-A13>config>system>security>snmp#
```

Use the following CLI syntax to configure user group and authentication parameters:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>security# user user-name
    access [ftp] [snmp] [console]
    snmp
       authentication [none]|[[hash]{md5 key|sha key } privacy
       {none|des-key|aes-128-cfb-key key}]
       group group-name
```

The following displays a user's SNMP configuration example.

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security# info
----------------------------------------------
      user "testuser"
          access snmp
          snmp
            authentication hash md5 e14672e71d3e96e7a1e19472527ee969 privacy none
            group testgroup
          exit
      exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security#
```

Configuring USM Community Options

User-based security model (USM) community strings associate a community string with an SNMPv3 access group and its view. The access granted with a community string is restricted to the scope of the configured group.

By default, the OS implementation of SNMP uses SNMPv3. However, to implement SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c, USM community strings must be explicitly configured.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure USM community options:

CLI Syntax: `config>system>security>snmp`
`usm-community community-string group group-name`

The following displays a SNMP community configuration example:

```
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>snmp# info
----------------------------------------------
view "testview" subtree "1"
                    mask ff
                exit
                view "testview" subtree "1.3.6.1.2"
                    mask ff type excluded
                exit
                access group "test" security-model usm security-level auth-no-pr
ivacy read "testview" write "testview" notify "testview"
                community "uTdc9j48PBRkxn5DcSjchk" hash2 rwa version both
                community "Lla.RtAyRW2" hash2 r version v2c
                community "r0a159kIOfg" hash2 r version both
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-1>config>system>security>snmp#
```

The group **grouptest** was configured in the **config>system>security>snmp>access** CLI context.

Configuring Other SNMP Parameters

Use the following CLI syntax to modify the system SNMP options:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>system>snmp
    engineID engine-id
    general-port port
    packet-size bytes
    no shutdown
```

The following example displays the system SNMP default values:

```
A:ALA-104>config>system>snmp# info detail
----------------------------------------------
            shutdown
            engineID "0000xxxx000000000xxxxx00"
            packet-size 1500
            general-port 161
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-104>config>system>snmp#
```

SNMP Command Reference

Command Hierarchies

Configuration Commands

SNMP System Commands

```
config
    — system
        — snmp
            — engineID engine-id
            — no engineID
            — general-port port
            — no general-port
            — packet-size bytes
            — no packet-size
            — streaming
                — [no] shutdown
            — [no] shutdown
```

SNMP Security Commands

Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Services Guide for information about configuring SNMP in a VPRN service.

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — snmp
                — access group group-name security-model security-model security-level security-level [context context-name [prefix-match]] [read view-name-1] [write view-name-2] [notify view-name-3]
                — no access group group-name [security-model security-model] [security-level security-level] [context context-name [prefix-match]] [read view-name-1] [write view-name-2] [notify view-name-3
                — attempts [count] [time minutes1] [lockout minutes2]
                — no attempts
                — community community-string [hash | hash2] access-permissions [version SNMP-version] [src-access-list list-name]
                — no community community-string [hash | hash2]
                — usm-community community-string group group-name [src-access-list list-name]
                — no usm-community community-string
                — [no] src-access-list list-name
                    — src-host host-name address ip-address
                    — no src-host host-name
                — view view-name subtree oid-value
                — no view view-name [subtree oid-value]
                    — mask mask-value [type {included | excluded}]
                    — no mask
```

The following commands configure user-specific SNMP features. Refer to the **Security** section for CLI syntax and command descriptions.

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — [no] user user-name
                — [no] snmp
                    — authentication {[none] | [[hash] {md5 key-1 | sha key-1}
                      privacy {none|des-key|aes-128-cfb-key key-2}]
                    — group group-name
                    — [no] group
```

Show Commands

```
show
    — snmp
        — counters
        — streaming
            — counters
    — system
        — information
        — security
            — access-group [group-name]
            — authentication [statistics]
            — password-options [entry-id]
            — password-options
            — profile [profile-name]
            — snmp
                — community [community-string]
                — src-access-list [list-name]
            — ssh
            — user [user-id] [detail]
            — view [view-name] [detail]
```

Configuration Commands

SNMP System Commands

engineID

Syntax [**no**] **engineID** *engine-id*

Context config>system>snmp

Description This command sets the SNMP engineID to uniquely identify the SNMPv3 node. By default, the engineID is generated using information from the system backplane.

If SNMP engine ID is changed in the **config>system>snmp> engineID** *engine-id* context, the current configuration must be saved and a reboot must be executed. If not, the previously configured SNMP communities and logger trap-target notify communities will not be valid for the new engine ID.

Note: In conformance with IETF standard RFC 2274, *User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3)*, hashing algorithms which generate SNMPv3 MD5 or SHA security digest keys use the engineID. Changing the SNMP engineID invalidates all SNMPv3 MD5 and SHA security digest keys and may render the node unmanageable.

When a chassis is replaced, use the engine ID of the first system and configure it in the new system to preserve SNMPv3 security keys. This allows management stations to use their existing authentication keys for the new system.

Ensure that the engine IDs are not used on multiple systems. A management domain can only have one instance of each engineID.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default setting.

Default The engine ID is system generated.

Parameters *engine-id* — An identifier from 10 to 64 hexadecimal digits (5 to 32 octet number), uniquely identifying this SNMPv3 node. This string is used to access this node from a remote host with SNMPv3.

general-port

Syntax **general-port** *port-number*
no general-port

Context config>system>snmp

Description This command configures the port number used by this node to receive SNMP request messages and to send replies. Note that SNMP notifications generated by the agent are sent from the port specified in the **config>log>snmp-trap-group>trap-target** CLI command.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default **161**

Parameters *port-number* — The port number used to send SNMP traffic other than traps.

Values 1 — 65535 (decimal)

packet-size

Syntax **packet-size** *bytes*
no packet-size

Context config>system>snmp

Description This command configures the maximum SNMP packet size generated by this node. If the packet size exceeds the MTU size of the egress interface the packet will be fragmented.

The **no** form of this command to revert to default.

Default **1500** bytes

Parameters *bytes* — The SNMP packet size in bytes.

Values 484 — 9216

snmp

Syntax **snmp**

Context config>system

Description This command creates the context to configure SNMP parameters.

streaming

Syntax **snmp**

Context config>system>snmp>streaming

Description This command enables the proprietary SNMP request/response bundling and TCP-based transport mechanism for optimizing network management of the router nodes. In higher latency networks, synchronizing router MIBs from network management via streaming takes less time than synchronizing via classic SNMP UDP requests. Streaming operates on TCP port 1491 and runs over IPv4 or IPv6.

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>snmp>streaming

Description This command administratively disables proprietary SNMP request/response bundling and TCP-based transport mechanism for optimizing network management of the router nodes..

The **no** form of the command administratively re-enables SNMP request/response bundling and TCP-based transport mechanism.

Default **shutdown**

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>snmp

Description This command administratively disables SNMP agent operations. System management can then only be performed using the command line interface (CLI). Shutting down SNMP does not remove or change configuration parameters other than the administrative state. This command does not prevent the agent from sending SNMP notifications to any configured SNMP trap destinations. SNMP trap destinations are configured under the **config>log>snmp-trap-group** context.

This command is automatically invoked in the event of a reboot when the processing of the configuration file fails to complete or when an SNMP persistent index file fails while the **bof persist on** command is enabled.

The **no** form of the command administratively enables SNMP which is the default state.

Default **no shutdown**

SNMP Security Commands

access group

Syntax **[no] access group** *group-name* **security-model** *security-model* **security-level** *security-level* [**context** *context-name* [**prefix-match**]] [**read** *view-name-1*] [**write** *view-name-2*] [**notify** *view-name-3*]

Context config>system>security>snmp

Description This command creates an association between a user group, a security model, and the views that the user group can access. Access parameters must be configured unless security is limited to the preconfigured access groups and views for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2. An access group is defined by a unique combination of the group name, security model and security level.

Access groups are used by the usm-community command.

Access must be configured unless security is limited to SNMPv1/SNMPv2c with community strings (see the **community** on page 308).

Default access group configurations cannot be modified or deleted.

To remove the user group with associated, security model(s), and security level(s), use:
no access group *group-name*

To remove a security model and security level combination from a group, use:
no access group *group-name* **security-model** {**snmpv1** | **snmpv2c** | **usm**} **security-level** {**no-auth-no-privacy** | **auth-no-privacy** | **privacy**}

Default **none**

Parameters *group-name* — Specify a unique group name up to 32 characters.

security-model {**snmpv1** | **snmpv2c** | **usm**} **—** Specifies the security model required to access the views configured in this node. A group can have multiple security models. For example, one view may only require SNMPv1/ SNMPv2c access while another view may require USM (SNMPv3) access rights.

security-level {**no-auth-no-priv** | **auth-no-priv** | **privacy**} **—** Specifies the required authentication and privacy levels to access the views configured in this node.

security-level no-auth-no-privacy — Specifies that no authentication and no privacy (encryption) is required. When configuring the user's authentication, select the **none** option.

security-level auth-no-privacy — Specifies that authentication is required but privacy (encryption) is not required. When this option is configured, both the **group** and the **user** must be configured for authentication.

security-level privacy — Specifies that both authentication and privacy (encryption) is required. When this option is configured, both the **group** and the user must be configured for **authentication**. The user must also be configured for **privacy**.

context *context-name* **—** Specifies a set of SNMP objects that are associated with the context-name.

The *context-name* is treated as either a full context-name string or a context name prefix depending on the keyword specified (**exact** or **prefix**).

read *view-name* **—** Specifies the keyword and variable of the view to read the MIB objects. This command must be configured for each view to which the group has read access.

Default **none**

write *view-name* **—** Specifies the keyword and variable of the view to configure the contents of the agent.
This command must be configured for each view to which the group has write access.

Values Up to 32 characters

notify *view-name* **—** specifies keyword and variable of the view to send a trap about MIB objects. This command must be configured for each view to which the group has notify access.

Values none

attempts

Syntax **attempts** [*count*] [**time** *minutes1*] [**lockout** *minutes2*]
no attempts

Context config>system>security>snmp

Description This command configures a threshold value of unsuccessful SNMP connection attempts allowed in a specified time frame. The command parameters are used to counter denial of service (DOS) attacks through SNMP.

If the threshold is exceeded, the host is locked out for the lockout time period.

If multiple **attempts** commands are entered, each command overwrites the previously entered command.

The **no** form of the command resets the parameters to the default values.

Default **attempts 20 time 5 lockout 10** — 20 failed SNMP attempts allowed in a 5 minute period with a 10 minute lockout for the host if exceeded.

Parameters *count* — The number unsuccessful SNMP attempts allowed for the specified **time**.

Default **20**

Values 1 — 64

time *minutes1* **—** The period of time, in minutes, that a specified number of unsuccessful attempts can be made before the host is locked out.

Default **5**

Values 0 — 60

lockout *minutes2* — The lockout period in minutes where the host is not allowed to login. When the host exceeds the attempted count times in the specified time, then that host is locked out from any further login attempts for the configured time period.

Default **10**

Values 0 — 1440

community

Syntax **community** *community-string* [**hash** | **hash2**] *access-permissions* [**version** *SNMP-version*] [**src-access-list** *list-name*]
no community *community-string* [**hash** | **hash2**]

Context config>system>security>snmp

Description This command creates SNMP community strings for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c access. This command is used in combination with the predefined access groups and views. To create custom access groups and views and associate them with SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c access use the **usm-community** command.

When configured, community implies a security model for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c only. For SNMPv3 security, the **access group** command on page 306 must be configured.

The **no** form of the command removes a community string.

Default **none**

Parameters *community-string* — Configure the SNMPv1 and/or SNMPv2c community string.

Values community-string — 32 characters maximum
hash-key — 33 characters maximum
hash2-key — 96 characters maximum

hash | **hash2** — Configures the hashing scheme for *community-string*. **Hash** specifies that the key is entered in an encrypted form. If the hash parameter is not used, the key is assumed to be in a non-encrypted, clear text form. For security, all keys are stored in encrypted form. **Hash2** specifies that the key is entered in a more complex encrypted form.

access-permissions — Configures the access permissions for objects in the MIB.

r — Grants only read access to objects in the MIB, except security objects, using the internal "snmp-ro" access group and the "no-security" snmp view.

rw — Grants read and write access to all objects in the MIB, using the internal "snmp-rw" access group and the "no-security" snmp view.

rwa — Grants read and write access to all objects in the MIB, including security, using the internal "snmp-rwa" access group and the "iso" snmp view.

mgmt — Assigns a unique SMMP community string for SNMP access via the "management" routing instance. This community uses the internal "snmp-mgmt" access group and the "mgmt" snmp view.

vpls-mgmt — Assigns a unique SNMP community string for SNMP access via the "vpls-management" routing instance. This community uses the internal "snmp-vpls-mgmt" access group and "mgmt-view" snmp view.

version {**v1** | **v2c** | **both**} — Configures the scope of the community string to be for SNMPv1, SNMPv2c, or both SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c access.

Default **both**

list-name — Configures the **community** to reference a specific **src-access-list**, which will be used to validate the source IP address of all received SNMP requests that use this **community**. Multiple **community**, **usm-community**, or **vprn snmp community** instances can reference the same **src-access-list**.

mask

Syntax **mask** *mask-value* [**type** {**included** | **excluded**}]
no mask

Context config>system>security>snmp>view *view-name*

Description The mask value and the mask type, along with the *oid-value* configured in the **view** command, determines the access of each sub-identifier of an object identifier (MIB subtree) in the view.

Each bit in the mask corresponds to a sub-identifier position. For example, the most significant bit for the first sub-identifier, the next most significant bit for the second sub-identifier, and so on. If the bit position on the sub-identifier is available, it can be included or excluded.

For example, the MIB subtree that represents MIB-II is 1.3.6.1.2.1. The mask that catches all MIB-II would be 0xfc or 0b11111100.

Only a single mask may be configured per view and OID value combination. If more than one entry is configured, each subsequent entry overwrites the previous entry.

Per RFC 2575, *View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP),* each MIB view is defined by two sets of view subtrees, the included view subtrees, and the excluded view subtrees. Every such view subtree, both the included and the excluded ones, are defined in this table. To determine if a particular object instance is in a particular MIB view, compare the object instance's object identifier (OID) with each of the MIB view's active entries in this table. If none match, then the object instance is not in the MIB view. If one or more match, then the object instance is included in, or excluded from, the MIB view according to the value of vacmViewTreeFamilyType in the entry whose value of vacmViewTreeFamilySubtree has the most sub-identifiers.

The **no** form of this command removes the mask from the configuration.

Default none

Parameters *mask-value* — The mask value associated with the OID value determines whether the sub-identifiers are included or excluded from the view. (Default: all 1^s)

The mask can be entered either:

- In hex. For example, 0xfc.

- In binary. For example, 0b11111100.

  Note: If the number of bits in the bit mask is less than the number of sub-identifiers in the MIB subtree, then the mask is extended with ones until the mask length matches the number of sub-identifiers in the MIB subtree.

type {included | excluded} — Specifies whether to include or exclude MIB subtree objects.
included - All MIB subtree objects that are identified with a 1 in the mask are available in the view. (*Default: included*).

excluded - All MIB subtree objects that are identified with a 1 in the mask are denied access in the view. (*Default: included*).

Default **included**

snmp

Syntax **snmp**

Context config>system>security

Description This command creates the context to configure SNMPv1, SNMPv2, and SNMPv3 parameters.

src-access-list

Syntax **src-access-list** *list-name*
no src-access-list *list-name*

Context config>system>security>snmp

Description This command is used to identify a list of source IP addresses that can be used to validate SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c requests once the list is associated with one or more SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c communities.

An src-address-list referenced by one or more **community** instances is used to verify the source IP addresses of an SNMP request using the **community** regardless of which VPRN/VRF interface (or 'Base' interface) the request arrived on. For example, if an SNMP request arrives on an interface in vprn 100 but the request is referencing a **community**, then the source IP address in the packet would be validated against the src-address-list configured for the **community**. This occurs regardless of whether the request is destined to a VPRN interface address and the VPRN has SNMP access enabled, or the reques is destined to the base system address via GRT leaking. If the request's source IP address does not match the *ip-address* of any of the **src-host**s contained in the list, then the request will be discarded and logged as an SNMP authentication failure.

Using src-access-list validation can have an impact on the time it takes for an SR OS node to reply to an SNMP request. It is recommended to keep the lists short, including only the addresses that are needed, and to place SNMP managers that send the highest volume of requests, such as the 5620 SAM, at the top of the list.

You can configure a maximum of 16 **src-access-list**s. Each **src-access-list** can contain a maximum of 16 **src-host**s.

The **no** form of this command removes the named src-access-list. You cannot remove an **src-access-list** that is referenced by one or more **community** instances.

Default none

Parameters *list-name* — Configures the name or key of the **src-access-list**. The *list-name* parameter must begin with a letter (a-z or A-Z).

src-host

Syntax **src-host** *host-name* **address** *ip-address*
no src-host *host-name*

Context config>system>security>snmp>src-access-list

Description This command is used to configure a source IP address entry that can be used to validate SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c requests.

The **no** form of this command removes the specified entry.

Default none

Parameters *host-name* — Configures the name of the **src-host** entry.

ip-address — Configures an allowed source address for SNMP requests. This can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address.

Values		
	ipv4-address	a.b.c.d
	ipv6-address	x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x
		x:x:x:x:x:x:d.d.d.d
		x: [0..FFFF]H
		d: [0..255]D

usm-community

Syntax **usm-community** *community-string* **group** *group-name* [**src-access-lis**t *list-name*]
no usm-community *community-string*

Context config>system>security>snmp

Description This command is used to associate a community string with an SNMPv3 access group and its view. The access granted with a community string is restricted to the scope of the configured group.

Alcatel-Lucent's SR OS implementation of SNMP uses SNMPv3. In order to implement SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c configurations, several access groups are predefined. In order to implement SNMP with security features (Version 3), security models, security levels, and USM communities must be explicitly configured. Optionally, additional views which specify more specific OIDs (MIB objects in the subtree) can be configured.

The **no** form of this command removes a community string.

Default none

Parameters *community-string* — Configures the SNMPv1/SNMPv2c community string to determine the SNMPv3 access permissions to be used.

group — Specify the group that governs the access rights of this community string. This group must be configured first in the **config system security snmp access group** context. (*Default: none*)

list-name — Configures the **usm-community** to reference a specific **src-access-list** that will be used to validate the source IP address of all received SNMP requests that use this **usm-community**. Multiple **community**, **usm-community**, or **vprn snmp community** instances can reference the same **src-access-list**.

view

Syntax **view** *view-name* **subtree** *oid-value*
no view *view-name* [**subtree** *oid-value*]

Context config>system>security>snmp

Description This command configures a view. Views control the accessibility of a MIB object within the configured MIB view and subtree. Object identifiers (OIDs) uniquely identify MIB objects in the subtree. OIDs are organized hierarchically with specific values assigned by different organizations.

Once the subtree (OID) is identified, a mask can be created to select the portions of the subtree to be included or excluded for access using this particular view. See the **mask** command. The view(s) configured with this command can subsequently be used in read, write, and notify commands which are used to assign specific access group permissions to created views and assigned to particular access groups.

Multiple subtrees can be added or removed from a view name to tailor a view to the requirements of the user access group.

The **no view** *view-name* command removes a view and all subtrees.

The **no view** *view-name* **subtree** *oid-value* removes a sub-tree from the view name.

Default No views are defined.

Parameters *view-name* — Enter a 1 to 32 character view name. (Default: *none*)

oid-value — The object identifier (OID) value for the *view-name*. This value, for example, 1.3.6.1.6.3.11.2.1, combined with the mask and include and exclude statements, configures the access available in the view.

It is possible to have a view with different subtrees with their own masks and include and exclude statements. This allows for customizing visibility and write capabilities to specific user requirements.

Show Commands

counters

Syntaxì **counters**

Context show>snmp

Description This command displays SNMP counters information. SNMP counters will continue to increase even when SNMP is shut down. Some internal modules communicate using SNMP packets.

Output **Counters Output —** The following table describes SNMP counters output fields.

Table 30: Counters Output Fields

Label	Description
in packets	Displays the total number of messages delivered to SNMP from the transport service.
in gets	Displays the number of SNMP get request PDUs accepted and processed by SNMP.
in getnexts	Displays the number of SNMP get next PDUs accepted and processed by SNMP.
in sets	Displays the number of SNMP set request PDUs accepted and processed by SNMP.
out packets	Displays the total number of SNMP messages passed from SNMP to the transport service.
out get responses	Displays the number of SNMP get response PDUs generated by SNMP.
out traps	Displays the number of SNMP Trap PDUs generated by SNMP.
variables requested	Displays the number of MIB objects requested by SNMP.
variables set	Displays the number of MIB objects set by SNMP as the result of receiving valid SNMP set request PDUs.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show snmp counters
===============================================================================
SNMP counters:
===============================================================================
  in packets :  463
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    in gets     : 93
    in getnexts : 0
    in sets     : 370
  out packets:  463
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    out get responses :  463
    out traps         :  0
  variables requested:  33
  variables set      :  497
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

counters

Syntax **counters**

Context show>snmp>streaming

Description This command displays counters information for the proprietary SNMP streaming protocol.Output: Counters Output - The following table describes SNMP streaming counters output fields.

Output **Counters Output —** The following table describes SNMP streaming counters output fields.

Table 31: Counters Output Fields

Label	Description
in getTables	Displays the number of GetTable request packets received.
in getManys	Displays the number of GetMany request packets received.
out responses	Displays the number of response packets sent.

Sample Output

```
*A:Dut-B# show snmp streaming counters
===============================================================================
STREAMING counters:
===============================================================================
    in getTables   : 772
    in getManys    : 26
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    out responses  : 848
===============================================================================
```

information

Syntax **information**

Context show>system

Description This command lists the SNMP configuration and statistics.

Output **System Information Output Fields —** The following table describes system information output fields.

Table 32: Show System Information Output Fields

Label	Description
System Name	The name configured for the device.
System Contact	The text string that identifies the contact name for the device.
System Location	The text string that identifies the location of the device.
System Coordinates	The text string that identifies the system coordinates for the device location. For example, “37.390 -122.0550" is read as latitude 37.390 north and longitude 122.0550 west.
System Up Time	The time since the last reboot.
SNMP Port	The port which SNMP sends responses to management requests.
SNMP Engine ID	The ID for either the local or remote SNMP engine to uniquely identify the SNMPv3 node.
SNMP Max Message Size	The maximum size SNMP packet generated by this node.
SNMP Admin State	Enabled — SNMP is administratively enabled.
	Disabled — SNMP is administratively disabled.
SNMP Oper State	Enabled — SNMP is operationally enabled.
	Disabled — SNMP is operationally disabled.
SNMP Index Boot Status	Persistent — Persistent indexes at the last system reboot was enabled.
	Disabled — Persistent indexes at the last system reboot was disabled.
SNMP Sync State	The state when the synchronization of configuration files between the primary and secondary s finish.
Telnet/SSH/FTP Admin	Displays the administrative state of the Telnet, SSH, and FTP sessions.

Table 32: Show System Information Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Telnet/SSH/FTP Oper	Displays the operational state of the Telnet, SSH, and FTP sessions.
BOF Source	The boot location of the BOF.
Image Source	primary – Specifies whether the image was loaded from the primary location specified in the BOF. secondary – Specifies whether the image was loaded from the secondary location specified in the BOF. tertiary – Specifies whether the image was loaded from the tertiary location specified in the BOF.
Config Source	primary – Specifies whether the configuration was loaded from the primary location specified in the BOF. secondary – Specifies whether the configuration was loaded from the secondary location specified in the BOF. tertiary – Specifies whether the configuration was loaded from the tertiary location specified in the BOF.
Last Booted Config File	Displays the URL and filename of the configuration file used for the most recent boot.
Last Boot Cfg Version	Displays the version of the configuration file used for the most recent boot.
Last Boot Config Header	Displays header information of the configuration file used for the most recent boot.
Last Boot Index Version	Displays the index version used in the most recent boot.
Last Boot Index Header	Displays the header information of the index used in the most recent boot.
Last Saved Config	Displays the filename of the last saved configuration.
Time Last Saved	Displays the time the configuration was most recently saved.
Changes Since Last Save	Yes – The configuration changed since the last save. No – The configuration has not changed since the last save.
Time Last Modified	Displays the time of the last modification.
Max Cfg/BOF Backup Rev	The maximum number of backup revisions maintained for a configuration file. This value also applies to the number of revisions maintained for the BOF file.

Table 32: Show System Information Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Cfg-OK Script	URL — The location and name of the CLI script file executed following successful completion of the boot-up configuration file execution. N/A — No CLI script file is executed.
Cfg-OK Script Status	Successful/Failed — The results from the execution of the CLI script file specified in the Cfg-OK Script location. Not used — No CLI script file was executed.
Cfg-Fail Script	URL — The location and name of the CLI script file executed following a failed boot-up configuration file execution. Not used — No CLI script file was executed.
Cfg-Fail Script Status	Successful/Failed — The results from the execution of the CLI script file specified in the Cfg-Fail Script location. Not used — No CLI script file was executed.
Management IP address	The Management IP address of the node.
DNS Server	The DNS address of the node.
DNS Domain	The DNS domain name of the node.
BOF Static Routes	To — The static route destination. Next Hop — The next hop IP address used to reach the destination. Metric — Displays the priority of this static route versus other static routes. None — No static routes are configured.

Sample Output

```
*A:7950 XRS-20# show system information

===============================================================================
System Information
===============================================================================
System Name            : 7950 XRS-20
System Type            : 7950 XRS-20
System Version         : C-10.0.B1-103
System Contact         :
System Location        :
System Coordinates     :
System Active Slot     : A
System Up Time         : 19 days, 18:43:59.66 (hr:min:sec)

SNMP Port              : 161
SNMP Engine ID         : 0000197f0000ac9fff000000
SNMP Engine Boots      : 1
SNMP Max Message Size  : 1500
SNMP Admin State       : Disabled
SNMP Oper State        : Disabled
SNMP Index Boot Status : Not Persistent
SNMP Sync State        : N/A

Tel/Tel6/SSH/FTP Admin : Enabled/Disabled/Enabled/Disabled
Tel/Tel6/SSH/FTP Oper  : Up/Down/Up/Down

BOF Source             : cf3:
Image Source           : primary
Config Source          : primary
Last Booted Config File: ftp://*:*@kandhcp214/tftpboot/bksimgrp31/images/bksim3
                         106/bksim3106.cfg
Last Boot Cfg Version  : WED MAY 23 11:58:26 2012 UTC
Last Boot Config Header: # TiMOS-C-0.0.I3339 cpm/i386 ALCATEL XRS 7950
                         Copyright (c) 2000-2012 Alcatel-Lucent. # All rights
                         reserved. All use subject to applicable license
                         agreements. # Built on Tue May 22 18:46:56 PDT 2012
                         by builder in /rel0.0/I3339/panos/main # Generated
                         WED MAY 23 11:58:26 2012 UTC
Last Boot Index Version: N/A
Last Boot Index Header : # TiMOS-C-0.0.I3339 cpm/i386 ALCATEL XRS 7950
                         Copyright (c) 2000-2012 Alcatel-Lucent. # All rights
                         reserved. All use subject to applicable license
                         agreements. # Built on Tue May 22 18:46:56 PDT 2012
                         by builder in /rel0.0/I3339/panos/main # Generated
                         WED MAY 23 11:58:26 2012 UTC
Last Saved Config      : ftp://*:*@kandhcp214/tftpboot/bksimgrp31/images/bksim3
                         106/bksim3106.cfg
Time Last Saved        : 2012/05/28 10:38:31
Changes Since Last Save: Yes
User Last Modified     : admin
Time Last Modified     : 2012/06/06 17:06:15
Max Cfg/BOF Backup Rev : 5
Cfg-OK Script          : N/A
Cfg-OK Script Status   : not used
Cfg-Fail Script        : N/A
```

```
Cfg-Fail Script Status : not used

Management IP Addr     : 138.120.214.159/24
Primary DNS Server     : 138.120.252.56
Secondary DNS Server   : 138.120.252.48
Tertiary DNS Server    : 138.120.252.49
DNS Domain             : labs.ca.alcatel-lucent.com
DNS Resolve Preference : ipv4-only
BOF Static Routes      :
  To                   Next Hop
  135.244.0.0/16       138.120.214.1

  138.120.0.0/16       138.120.214.1


ICMP Vendor Enhancement: Disabled
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1# show system information
===============================================================================
System Information
===============================================================================
System Name            : ALA-1
System Type            :
System Version         : B-0.0.I1204
System Contact         :
System Location        :
System Coordinates     :
System Active Slot     : A
System Up Time         : 1 days, 02:12:57.84 (hr:min:sec)

SNMP Port              : 161
SNMP Engine ID         : 0000197f00000479ff000000
SNMP Max Message Size  : 1500
SNMP Admin State       : Enabled
SNMP Oper State        : Enabled
SNMP Index Boot Status : Not Persistent
SNMP Sync State        : OK

Telnet/SSH/FTP Admin   : Enabled/Enabled/Disabled
Telnet/SSH/FTP Oper    : Up/Up/Down

BOF Source             : cf1:
Image Source           : primary
Config Source          : primary
Last Booted Config File: ftp://172.22.184.249/./debby-sim1/debby-sim1-config.cfg
Last Boot Cfg Version  : THU FEB 15 16:58:20 2007 UTC
Last Boot Config Header: # TiMOS-B-0.0.I1042 both/i386 Alcatel-Lucent SR
                         Copyright (c) 2000-2007 Alcatel-Lucent. # All rights
                         reserved. All use subject to applicable license
                         agreements. # Built on Sun Feb 11 19:26:23 PST 2007 by
                         builder in /rel0.0/I1042/panos/main # Generated THU
                         FEB 11 16:58:20 2007 UTC
Last Boot Index Version: N/A
Last Boot Index Header : # TiMOS-B-0.0.I1042 both/i386 Alcatel-Lucent SR
                         Copyright (c) 2000-2007 Alcatel-Lucent. # All rights
                         reserved. All use subject to applicable license
                         agreements. # Built on Sun Feb 11 19:26:23 PST 2007 by
                         builder in /rel0.0/I1042/panos/main # Generated THU
                         FEB 15 16:58:20 2007 UTC
```

```
Last Saved Config      : N/A
Time Last Saved        : N/A
Changes Since Last Save: No
Max Cfg/BOF Backup Rev : 5
Cfg-OK Script          : N/A
Cfg-OK Script Status   : not used
Cfg-Fail Script        : N/A
Cfg-Fail Script Status : not used

Management IP Addr     : 192.168.2.121/20
DNS Server             : 192.168.1.246
DNS Domain             : eng.timetra.com
BOF Static Routes      :
```

access-group

Syntax **access-group** *group-name*

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays access-group information.

Output **System Information Output —** The following table describes the access-group output fields.

Table 33: Show System Security Access-Group Output Fields

Label	Description
Group name	The access group name.
Security model	The security model required to access the views configured in this node.
Security level	Specifies the required authentication and privacy levels to access the views configured in this node.
Read view	Specifies the view to read the MIB objects.
Write view	Specifies the view to configure the contents of the agent.
Notify view	Specifies the view to send a trap about MIB objects.
No. of access groups	The total number of configured access groups.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show system security access-group
===============================================================================
Access Groups
===============================================================================
group name        security  security  read          write         notify
                  model     level     view          view          view
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
snmp-ro           snmpv1    none      no-security                no-security
snmp-ro           snmpv2c   none      no-security                no-security
snmp-rw           snmpv1    none      no-security   no-security  no-security
snmp-rw           snmpv2c   none      no-security   no-security  no-security
snmp-rwa          snmpv1    none      iso           iso          iso
snmp-rwa          snmpv2c   none      iso           iso          iso
snmp-trap         snmpv1    none                                 iso
snmp-trap         snmpv2c   none                                 iso
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Access Groups: 8
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show system security access-group detail
===============================================================================
Access Groups
===============================================================================
group name        security  security  read          write         notify
                  model     level     view          view          view
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
snmp-ro           snmpv1    none      no-security                 no-security
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Access Groups:
...
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

authentication

Syntax **authentication** [**statistics**]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays authentication information.

Output **Authentication Output —** The following table describes the authentication output fields.

Label	Description
sequence	The authentication order in which password authentication, authorization, and accounting is attempted among RADIUS, TACACS+, and local passwords.
server address	The address of the RADIUS, TACACS+, or local server.
status	The status of the server.
type	The type of server.
timeout (secs)	Number of seconds the server will wait before timing out.

Label	Description (Continued)
single connection	Specifies whether a single connection is established with the server. The connection is kept open and is used by all the TELNET/SSH/FTP sessions for AAA operations.
retry count	The number of attempts to retry contacting the server.
radius admin status	The administrative status of the RADIUS protocol operation.
tacplus admin status	The administrative status of the TACACS+ protocol operation.
health check	Specifies whether the RADIUS and TACACS+ servers will be periodically monitored. Each server will be contacted every 30 seconds. If in this process a server is found to be unreachable, or a previously unreachable server starts responding, based on the type of the server, a trap will be sent.
No. of Servers	The total number of servers configured.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-49>show>system>security# authentication
===============================================================================
Authentication                  sequence : radius tacplus local
===============================================================================
server address   status  type    timeout(secs)  single connection  retry count
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10.10.10.103     up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.1        up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.2        up      radius  5              n/a                5
10.10.0.3        up      radius  5              n/a                5
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
radius admin status  : down
tacplus admin status : up
health check         : enabled
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Servers: 4
===============================================================================
A:ALA-49>show>system>security#
```

password-options

Syntax **password-options**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays password options.

Output **Password-Options Output —** The following table describes password-options output fields.

Label	Description
Password aging in days	Number of days a user password is valid before the user must change his password.
Number of invalid attempts permitted per login	Displays the maximum number of unsuccessful login attempts allowed for a user.
Time in minutes per login attempt	Displays the time in minutes that user is to be locked out.
Lockout period (when threshold breached)	Displays the number of minutes the user is locked out if the threshold of unsuccessful login attempts has exceeded.
Authentication order	Displays the most preferred method to authenticate and authorize a user.
Configured complexity options	Displays the complexity requirements of locally administered passwords, HMAC-MD5-96, HMAC-SHA-96 and DES-keys configured in the **authentication** section.
Minimum password length	Displays the minimum number of characters required in the password.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-48>show>system>security# password-options
===============================================================================
Password Options
===============================================================================
Password aging in days                          : 365
Number of invalid attempts permitted per login  : 5
Time in minutes per login attempt               : 5
Lockout period (when threshold breached)        : 20
Authentication order                            : radius tacplus local
Configured complexity options                   :
Minimum password length                         : 8
===============================================================================
A:ALA-48>show>system>security#
```

per-peer-queuing

Syntax **per-peer-queuing**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays displays the number of queues in use by the Qchip, which in turn is used by PPQ, CPM filter, SAP, etc.

Output **Per-Peer_Queuing Output —** The following table describes the per-peer-queuing output fields.

Label	Description
Per Peer Queuing	Displays whether per-peer-queuing is enabled or disabled. When enabled, a peering session is established and the router will automatically allocate a separate hardware queue for that peer. When disabled, no hardware queuing per peer occurs.
Total Num of Queues	Displays the total number of hardware queues.
Num of Queues In Use	Displays the number of hardware queues that are in use.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-48>show>system>security# per-peer-queuing
===============================================
CPM Hardware Queuing
===============================================
Per Peer Queuing        : Enabled
Total Num of Queues     : 8192
Num of Queues In Use    : 0
===============================================
A:ALA-48>show>system>security#
```

profile

Syntax **profile** [*profile-name*]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays user profiles for CLI command tree permissions.

Parameters *profile-name* — Specify the profile name to display information about a single user profile. If no profile name is displayed, the entire list of profile names are listed.

Output **Profile Output —** The following table describes the profile output fields.

Label	Description
User Profile	default – The action to be given to the user profile if none of the entries match the command. administrative – specifies the administrative state for this profile.

Label	Description
Def. Action	none — No action is given to the user profile when none of the entries match the command. permit-all — The action to be taken when an entry matches the command.
Entry	10 - 80 — Each entry represents the configuration for a system user.
Description	A text string describing the entry.
Match Command	administrative — Enables the user to execute all commands. configure system security — Enables the user to execute the **config system security** command. enable-admin — Enables the user to enter a special administrative mode by entering the **enable-admin** command. exec — Enables the user to execute (exec) the contents of a text file as if they were CLI commands entered at the console. exit — Enables the user to execute the **exit** command. help — Enables the user to execute the **help** command. logout — Enables the user to execute the **logout** command. password — Enables the user to execute the **password** command. show config — Enables the user to execute the **show config** command. show — Enables the user to execute the **show** command. show system security — Enables the user to execute the **show system security** command.
Action	permit — Enables the user access to all commands. deny-all — Denies the user access to all commands.

```
A:ALA-48>config>system>snmp# show system security profile
===============================================================================
User Profile
===============================================================================
User Profile : test
Def. Action  : none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 1
Description  :
Match Command:
Action       : unknown
```

```
===============================================================================
User Profile : default
Def. Action  : none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 10
Description  :
Match Command: exec
Action       : permit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 20
Description  :
Match Command: exit
Action       : permit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 30
Description  :
Match Command: help
Action       : permit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
...
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 80
Description  :
Match Command: enable-admin
Action       : permit
===============================================================================

User Profile : administrative
Def. Action  : permit-all
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 10
Description  :
Match Command: configure system security
Action       : permit
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry        : 20
Description  :
Match Command: show system security
Action       : permit
===============================================================================
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of profiles: 3
===============================================================================
A:ALA-48>config>system>snmp#
```

snmp

Syntax **snmp**

Context show>system>security

Description This command enables the context to show SNMP information.

community

Syntax **community** [*community-string*]

Context show>system>security>snmp

Description This command lists SNMP communities and characterisics. Including the *community-name* parameter modifies the output to include all details for the specified community, including the source IP address list and validation failure counters.

Output **Community Ouput —** The following table describes the community output fields.

Sample Output

Table 34: Show Community Output Fields

Label	Description
Community	The community string name for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c access only.
Access	r — The community string allows read-only access. rw — The community string allows read-write access. rwa — The community string allows read-write access. mgmt — The unique SNMP community string assigned to the management router. vpls-mgmt — The unique SNMP community string assigned for vpls management
View	The view name.
Version	The SNMP version.
Group Name	The access group name.
src-access-list	The name of the list of source IP addresses that are allowed to use the community, as configured using the **community** configuration command.
authFailures	The number of SNMP requests that have failed validation using this **community**.
No of Communities	The total number of configured community strings.

Note: The system-created communities that begin with “cli-” are only used for internal CLI management purposes and are not exposed to external SNMP access.

```
A:ALA-1# show system security snmp community

===============================================================================
Communities
```

```
===============================================================================
community           access  view                version   group name
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
cli-li-readwrite    n/a     li-view             v2c       cli-li-readwrite
cli-readonly        r       iso                 v2c       cli-readonly
cli-readwrite       rw      iso                 v2c       cli-readwrite
my-private1         rw      iso                 v1 v2c    snmp-rwa
my-public2          r       no-security         v1 v2c    snmp-ro
test-123            rwa     n/a                 v2c       snmp-trap
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Communities: 6
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show system security snmp community "my-public2"

===============================================================================
Communities
===============================================================================
community           access  view                    version   group name
                            src-access-list                   authFailures
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
my-public2          r       no-security             v1 v2c    snmp-ro
                            my-list1                          5
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

src-access-list

Syntax **src-access-list** [*list-name*]

Context show>system>security>snmp

Description This command displays source access lists and the hosts for each. Including the *list-name* parameter modifies the output show only the specified **src-access-list**.

Output **Source Access List Ouput —** The following table describes the source access list output fields.

Sample Output

Table 35: Show Source Access List Output Fields

Label	Description
List Name	The name of the **src-access-list**.
Host Name	The name of the **src-host**.
Host Address	The IP address of the **src-host**.
Total Access Lists	The total number of source access lists displayed.

```
A:ALA-1# show system security snmp src-access-list
```

```
===============================================================================
Source Access Lists
===============================================================================
List Name
  HostName                                Host Address
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
L1
  H1                                      100.100.100.1
  H2                                      100.100.100.2
L2
  HA                                      100.100.101.1
  HB                                      100.100.101.2
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Total Access Lists: 2
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show system security snmp src-access-list L1
===============================================================================
Source Access Lists
===============================================================================
List Name
  HostName                                Host Address
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
L1
  H1                                      100.100.100.1
  H2                                      100.100.100.2
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Total Access Lists: 1
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

ssh

Syntax **ssh**

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays all the SSH sessions as well as the SSH status and fingerprint.

Output **SSH Options Output —** The following table describes SSH output fields.

Table 36: Show SSH Output Fields

Label	Description
SSH status	SSH is enabled — Displays that SSH server is enabled. SSH is disabled — Displays that SSH server is disabled.
Key fingerprint	The key fingerprint is the server's identity. Clients trying to connect to the server verify the server's fingerprint. If the server fingerprint is not known, the client may not continue with the SSH session since the server might be spoofed.

Table 36: Show SSH Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Connection	The IP address of the connected router(s) (remote client).
Encryption	des — Data encryption using a private (secret) key. 3des — An encryption method that allows proprietary information to be transmitted over untrusted networks.
Username	The name of the user.
Number of SSH sessions	The total number of SSH sessions.

Sample output

```
A:ALA-7# show system security ssh
SSH is enabled
Key fingerprint: 34:00:f4:97:05:71:aa:b1:63:99:dc:17:11:73:43:83
=======================================================
Connection    Encryption    Username
=======================================================
192.168.5.218      3des     admin
-------------------------------------------------------
Number of SSH sessions : 1
=======================================================
A:ALA-7#


A:ALA-49>config>system>security# show system security ssh

SSH is disabled

A:ALA-49>config>system>security#
```

user

Syntax **users** [*user-id*] [**detail**]

Context show>system>security

Description This command displays user information.

Output **User Output —** The following table describes user information output fields.

Table 37: Show User Output Fields

Label	Description
User ID	The name of a system user.

Table 37: Show User Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Need New PWD	Yes — The user must change his password at the next login.
	No — The user is not forced to change his password at the next login.
User Permission	Console — Specifies whether the user is permitted console/Telnet access.
	FTP — Specifies whether the user is permitted FTP access.
	SNMP — Specifies whether the user is permitted SNMP access.
Password expires	The date on which the current password expires.
Attempted logins	The number of times the user has attempted to login irrespective of whether the login succeeded or failed.
Failed logins	The number of unsuccessful login attempts.
Local Conf.	Y — Password authentication is based on the local password database.
	N — Password authentication is not based on the local password database.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show system security user
===============================================================================
Users
===============================================================================
user id           need    user permissions  password    attempted failed  local
                  new pwd console ftp snmp  expires     logins    logins  conf
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
admin             n       y       n   n     never       2         0       y
testuser          n       n       n   y     never       0         0       y
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of users : 2
```

view

Syntax **view** [*view-name*] [**detail**]

Context show>system>security

Description This command lists one or all views and permissions in the MIB-OID tree.

Output **System Security View Output —** The following table describes system security view output fields.

Table 38: Show System Security View Output Fields

Label	Description
View name	The name of the view. Views control the accessibility of a MIB object within the configured MIB view and subtree.
OID tree	The Object Identifier (OID) value. OIDs uniquely identify MIB objects in the subtree.
Mask	The mask value and the mask type, along with the *oid-value* configured in the **view** command, determines the access of each sub-identifier of an object identifier (MIB subtree) in the view.
Permission	Included — Specifies to include MIB subtree objects. Excluded — Specifies to exclude MIB subtree objects.
No. of Views	The total number of configured views.
Group name	The access group name.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show system security view
===============================================================================
Views
===============================================================================
view name         oid tree                          mask              permission
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
iso               1                                                   included
no-security       1                                                   included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3                                         excluded
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1                                  included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.11.2.1                                  included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.15.1.1                                  included
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Views: 6
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

```
A:ALA-1# show system security view no-security detail
===============================================================================
Views
===============================================================================
view name         oid tree                          mask              permission
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
no-security       1                                                   included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3                                         excluded
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.10.2.1                                  included
```

```
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.11.2.1                                  included
no-security       1.3.6.1.6.3.15.1.1                                  included
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
No. of Views: 5
===============================================================================
=======================================
no-security used in
=======================================
group name
---------------------------------------
snmp-ro
snmp-rw
=======================================
A:ALA-1#
```

NETCONF

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information to configure NETCONF.

Topics in this chapter include:

- NETCONF Overview
  - → NETCONF Introduction on page 336
  - → NETCONF in SR OS on page 337
  - → Establishing a NETCONF Session on page 353
  - → XML Content Layer on page 354
  - → XML Content Layer Examples on page 361
  - → CLI Content Layer on page 364
  - → CLI Content Layer Examples on page 365

NETCONF Overview

NETCONF Introduction

NETCONF is a standardized IETF configuration management protocol published in RFC 6241. It is secure, connection oriented, and runs on top of the SSHv2 transport protocol as specified in RFC 6242. NETCONF can be used as an alternative to CLI or SNMP for managing an SR OS node.

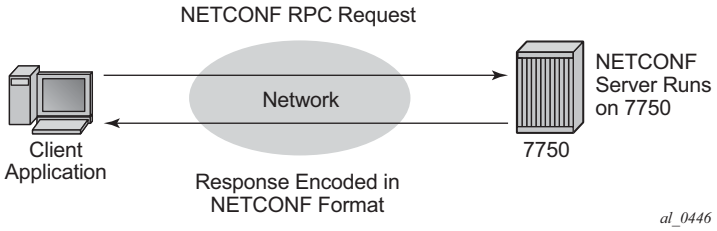


Figure 10: NETCONF RPC Request

NETCONF is an XML-based protocol used to configure network devices. It uses RPC messaging for communication between a NETCONF client and the NETCONF server running on the SR OS node. An RPC message and configuration data is encapsulated within an XML document. These XML documents are exchanged between a NETCONF client and a NETCONF server in a request/response type of interaction. The SR OS NETCONF interface supports both configuration support and retrieval of operational information.

NETCONF can be conceptually partitioned into four layers as described in RFC 6241.

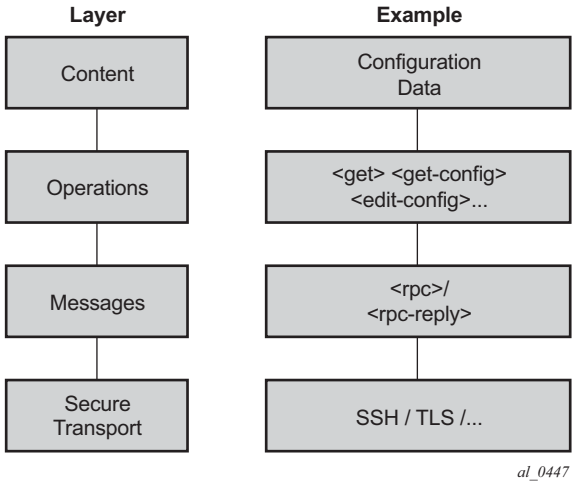


Figure 11: NETCONF Layers (RFC 6241)

NETCONF in SR OS

NETCONF can be used on an SR OS router to perform router management operations including:

- Change the configuration of the router (<edit-config> operation)
- Read the configuration of the router (<get-config> operation, equivalent to the "info" command in CLI)
- Read operational status and data (and associated configuration information) (<get> operation, equivalent to the "show" commands in CLI)

NETCONF is not used for notifications on an SR OS router; for example, log events, syslog, or SNMP notifications (traps).

The equivalent of some admin commands are available via the SR OS NETCONF interface:

- "admin save" can be done using the <copy-config> operation.
- "admin rollback" commands are supported using a CLI content layer <cli-action> RPC.

“bof”, “debug”, “tools”, and other general CLI operational commands (e.g. “telnet” or “ping”) are not supported via NETCONF on an SR OS router.

The SR OS NETCONF server advertises base capability 1.1 (in addition to 1.0).

SR OS supports both a CLI content layer and an XML-based content layer for NETCONF.

YANG Data Models

The SR OS NETCONF XML content layer configuration schema is described in a set of Alcatel-Lucent proprietary YANG modules. The configuration modules are advertised in the SR OS NETCONF server hello.

The configuration YANG data model closely aligns to the SR OS CLI configuration tree structure and commands.

A set of YANG modules are published and distributed as part of an SR OS image in the cflash/support directory (along with files like dictionary-freeradius.txt and stats.dtd).

The following areas of CLI do not have equivalent YANG data models:

- **bof**
- **admin**, **tools**, **debug**, or **show** branches

Transport and Sessions

SSH transport is supported on TCP port 830 with IPv4 or IPv6 in the Base routing instance. NETCONF SSH sessions (like CLI, SCP and sFTP sessions) are subject to any configurable and non-configurable session limits; for example, inbound-max-sessions. Both the SSH server and NETCONF protocol must be enabled in the router configuration in order to use NETCONF. NETCONF sessions can be disconnected using the "admin disconnect" command.

NETCONF sessions do not time out automatically and are not subject to the CLI session timeout. Operators can disconnect sessions manually if they need to.

A client establishing a NETCONF session must log into the router so user accounts must exist for NETCONF on the SR. A new access type 'netconf' is provided. The user must be configured with both 'console' and 'netconf' access.

Only authentication via the local user database is supported for NETCONF users/sessions (no RADIUS or TACACS+ authentication). Access to various CLI config and show commands (authorization) via NETCONF is controlled through the profile assigned to the user that is used to authenticate the underlying SSH session.

Access to LI commands is based on the “access li” setting for the user.

If a NETCONF request attempts to execute a CLI command which is outside the scope of its access profile, an error response will be sent. For example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get>
```

```
                <filter>
                        <oper-data-format-cli-block>
                                <cli-show>system security</cli-show>
                        </oper-data-format-cli-block>
                </filter>
        </get>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>application</error-type>
        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <err-element>cli-show</err-element>
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            command failed - 'show system security'
            MINOR: CLI Command not allowed for this user.
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

NETCONF Operations

The following base protocol operations are supported:

- <get>
- <get-config>
- <edit-config>
- <copy-config>
- <delete-config>
- <validate>
- <close-session>
- <kill-session>

The <lock> and <unlock> base protocol operations are not supported.

The <error-option> is not supported. SR OS implements the stop-on-error behavior by default. The continue-on-error and rollback-on-error are not supported.

<get>

CLI content layer <get> operation is supported. XML content layer <get> operation is not supported.

A <get> request is first analyzed for syntax errors before any execution starts. If a syntax error is found then a single global <rpc-error> for the entire request is sent in the reply.

Responses are provided for each item in the request until the first item with an error is found. The item with an error has a <response> tag containing some error information, followed by an <rpc-error> tag (and sub-tags). The reply is then returned and subsequent items are not executed.

The <rpc-error> for an individual item (i.e. for a non-syntax error) is after the </response> information and not inside the <response>.

Example — <get> request with a non-syntax error in the 2nd item:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get>
                <filter>
                        <oper-data-format-cli-block>
                                <cli-show>router interface "system"</cli-show>
                                <cli-show>router mpls lsp</cli-show>
                                <cli-show>system security ssh</cli-show>
                        </oper-data-format-cli-block>
                </filter>
        </get>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <oper-data-format-cli-block>
            <item>
                <cli-show>router interface "system"</cli-show>
                <response>

===============================================================================
Interface Table (Router: Base)
===============================================================================
Interface-Name                   Adm         Opr(v4/v6)  Mode    Port/SapId
   IP-Address                                                    PfxState
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
system                           Up          Up/Down     Network system
   144.23.63.5/32                                                n/a
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Interfaces : 1
===============================================================================
                </response>
```

```
                </item>
                <item>
                    <cli-show>router mpls lsp</cli-show>
                    <response>
                        MINOR: CLI MPLS is not configured.
                    </response>
                    <rpc-error>
                        <error-type>application</error-type>
                        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
                        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
                        <error-info>
                            <err-element>cli-show</err-element>
                        </error-info>
                        <error-message>
                            command failed - 'show router mpls lsp'
                        </error-message>
                    </rpc-error>
                </item>
            </oper-data-format-cli-block>
        </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

<get-config>

<get-config> returns non-default configuration by default (i.e. the 'trim' mode as per RFC 6243).

<edit-config>

The following values for the <test-option> parameter under <edit-config> are supported:

- test-then-set
- set
- test-only

<copy-config> and <delete-config>

The <copy-config> and <delete-config> base protocol operations are supported for specific combinations of source and target datastores.

The <copy-config> operation is supported for the following combinations of sources and targets:

- <source>=<url> and <target>=<startup> (as long as both are not remote urls)
- <source>=<startup> and <target>=<url> (as long as both are not remote urls)
- <source>=<running> and <target>=<url>
  - → Equivalent of "admin save <file-url>"
  - → An index file is also saved if "persist on" is configured in the bof

- <source>=<running> and <target>=<startup>
  - → Equivalent of "admin save"
  - → An index file is also saved if "persist on" is configured in the bof

<running> cannot be a <target> for a <copy-config>.

Remote url to remote url copies are not supported. For example, if primary-image is a remote url then a <startup> to copy will fail with an error.

The <copy-config> operation uses the CLI Content Layer format. The format of the source and target is block CLI.

The <delete-config> operation is supported for the following targets:

- <url>
- <startup>

<delete-config> is not allowed on the <running> datastore.

<validate>

The validate:1.1 capability is supported:

- The validate:1.1 and 1.0 capabilities are advertised in the NETCONF server's <hello>:
  - → <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.0</capability>
  - → <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.1</capability>
- The <validate> request is supported for an XML content layer request but not for a CLI content layer request. Detection of a <config-format-cli-block> or <oper-data-format-cli-block> tag in a <validate> request will result in an "operation not supported" error response.
- A <validate> request is supported for a selection of config (<source><config>), or for the <running> datastore, which only returns 'OK'. <validate> is not supported for url sources or the <startup> datastore.

Datastores and URLs

SR OS supports the <running> datastore, the <startup> datastore, and <url> tags (**Note:** <url> is not a datastore in itself). The <candidate> datastore is not supported.

All configuration changes (<edit-config>) done to the <running> datastore via NETCONF take immediate operational effect.

The <startup> datastore and <url> tags can only be used with <copy-config> and <delete-config> and are not supported with any other operations (including <edit-config>, <get-config>, <get>, <validate>, etc).

The :startup capability is advertised in the SR OS NETCONF server <hello>:

```
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:startup:1.0</capability>
```

url supports the same options as CLI <file-url>: local urls (CF) and remote urls (ftp and tftp).

The :url capability is advertised in the SR OS NETCONF server <hello>:

```
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:url:1.0?scheme=ftp,tftp,file</
capability>
```

The following examples show the format of each URL scheme (Note the "///" for the 'file' URL. The 'file://localhost/...' format is not supported.):

- <target><url>ftp://name:passwd@a.b.c.d/usr/myfiles/myfile.cfg</url></target>
- <target><url>tftp://name:passwd@a.b.c.d/usr/myfiles/myfile.cfg</url></target>
- <target><url>file:///cf3:/myfiles/myfile.cfg</url></target>
- **Note:** The following format is also supported (no 'file:///'): <target><url>cf3:/myfiles/myfile.cfg</url></target>

The <startup> datastore is identified by following the bof primary-config/secondary-config/tertiary-config paths as configured by the operator. <startup> is effectively an alias for a url (a special url used for system startup) with some extra resiliency (primary/secondary/tertiary).

The bof is not considered as part of any config datastore.

Debug config (such as debug mirrors, or anything saved with "admin debug-save") is not considered as part of any config datastore.

Lawful Interception configuration information is contained in the <running> datastore but is not saved in the <startup> datastore. The equivalent of the CLI "li save" command is available in an <edit-config>.

Configuration changes done via NETCONF are subject to CLI Rollback (revert, save, etc) and are included in the configuration when the operator performs an "admin save" in CLI.

General NETCONF behavior

Pressing Ctrl-C in a NETCONF session will immediately terminate the session.

The SR OS NETCONF implementation does not support XML namespaces (xmlns). Any XML namespace or prefix declarations in the rpc tag are accepted and returned in the rpc-

reply tag but ignored and unused. Any XML namespace or prefix declarations in the rest of the request are ignored and unused. The SR OS NETCONF server puts the correct NETCONF namespace declaration (“urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0”) in all replies.

Example 1 — The standard NETCONF namespace “urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0” defined more than once in the rpc tag:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:alu="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<get-config>
<source> <running/> </source>
<filter>
    <configure>
        <router>
            <interface>
               <interface-name>"system"</interface-name>
            </interface>
        </router>
    </configure>
</filter>
</get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply (no error message):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns:alu="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data>
        <configure xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
            <router>
                <router-name>Base</router-name>
                <interface>
                    <interface-name>system</interface-name>
                    <address>
                        <ip-address-mask>144.23.63.5/32</ip-address-mask>
                    </address>
                    <shutdown>false</shutdown>
                </interface>
            </router>
        </configure>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 2 — A non-NETCONF base namespace defined in the rpc tag:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:alu="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
<get-config>
<source> <running/> </source>
```

```
<filter>
    <configure xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
        <router>
            <interface>
              <interface-name>"system"</interface-name>
            </interface>
        </router>
    </configure>
</filter>
</get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply (non-standard namespace used in rpc tag is ignored):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:alu="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
<data>
     <configure xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
          <router>
               <router-name>Base</router-name>
               <interface>
                    <interface-name>system</interface-name>
                    <address>
                         <ip-address-mask>144.23.63.5/32</ip-address-mask>
                    </address>
                    <shutdown>false</shutdown>
               </interface>
          </router>
     </configure>
</data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 3 — A non-standard NETCONF namespace used in one of the tags but not defined in the rpc tag:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:alu="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<get-config>
<source> <running/> </source>
<filter>
    <configure>
        <router>
            <interface xmlns:alu="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
                 <interface-name>"system"</interface-name>
            </interface>
        </router>
    </configure>
</filter>
</get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply (non-standard namespace used in tag is ignored):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns:alu="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data>
        <configure xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
            <router>
                <router-name>Base</router-name>
                <interface>
                    <interface-name>system</interface-name>
                    <address>
                        <ip-address-mask>144.23.63.5/32</ip-address-mask>
                    </address>
                    <shutdown>false</shutdown>
                </interface>
            </router>
        </configure>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 4 — A non-standard NETCONF namespace/prefix used in one of the tags but not defined in the rpc tag:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns:alu="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
<get-config>
<source> <running/> </source>
<filter>
    <configure>
        <router>
            <interface xmlns:alu="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
                 <alu:interface-name>"system"</alu:interface-name>
            </interface>
        </router>
    </configure>
</filter>
</get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply (non-standard namespace/prefix used in tag is ignored):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns:alu="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data>
        <configure xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
            <router>
                <router-name>Base</router-name>
                <interface>
                    <interface-name>system</interface-name>
                    <address>
                        <ip-address-mask>144.23.63.5/32</ip-address-mask>
```

```
                    </address>
                    <shutdown>false</shutdown>
                </interface>
            </router>
        </configure>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

The chunked framing mechanism is supported (in addition to the EOM mechanism). As per RFC 6242, Section 4.1 - Framing Protocol, "... If the :base:1.1 capability is advertised by both peers, the chunked framing mechanism (see Section 4.2) is used for the remainder of the NETCONF session. Otherwise, the old end-of-message-based mechanism (see Section 4.3) is used."

Example 1 — Chunked message:

```
#302
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?><rpc message-id="101"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0"><get-config><source><running/></
source><filter><config><configure><router><interface><interface-name>system</inter-
face-name></interface></router></configure></config></filter></get-config></rpc>
##
```

Example 2 — Chunked message:

```
#38
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
#85
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <get-config>
#62
    <source><running/></source>
    <filter>
      <configure>
##79
        <system>
            <netconf>
            </netconf>
        </system>
##55
      </configure>
    </filter>
  </get-config>
</rpc>
##
```

Handling of default data (for example, ' info' vs 'info detail') is done using the mechanisms detailed in RFC 6243. The SR OS NETCONF server supports the 'trim' method and advertises that in the <hello>:

```
<capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:with-defaults:1.0?basic-mode=trim</
capability>
```

Pseudo-transactional capabilities are supported. A user can save a rollback checkpoint (for example, prior to doing an <edit-config> or a series of <edit-config>) and perform a rollback revert if needed later.

Example 1 — Two rollback items with responses:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="102" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <cli-action>
    <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
    <admin>rollback compare</admin>
  </cli-action>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="102" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <cli-action>
            <item>
                <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
          <response>
0.150 s
0.450 s
-----------------------------------------------
  configure
     router
-        mpls
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-            lsp "test"
-                shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
-        rsvp
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
     exit
  exit
-----------------------------------------------
Finished in 0.720 s
                </response>
            </item>
            <item>
                <admin>rollback compare</admin>
            <response>
0.160 s
0.070 s
-----------------------------------------------
  configure
```

```
     router
-        mpls
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-            lsp "test"
-                shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
-        rsvp
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
     exit
     service
-        vpls "99" customer 1 create
-            shutdown
-            stp
-                shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
     exit
  exit
-------------------------------------------------
Finished in 0.350 s
               </response>
           </item>
       </cli-action>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 2 — Syntax error in the request resulting in global rpc-error reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="103"
    xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <cli-action>
      <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
      <admin>rollback compare flee-fly</admin>
  </cli-action>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="103" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>application</error-type>
        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <err-element>admin</err-element>
```

```
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            command failed - '/admin rollback compare flee-fly'
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 3 — Error processing the request:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="103"
    xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <cli-action>
      <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
      <admin>rollback compare 1 to flee-fly</admin>
  </cli-action>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="103" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <cli-action>
            <item>
                <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
           <response>
0.160 s
0.180 s
-----------------------------------------------
  configure
     router
-        mpls
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
-        rsvp
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
     exit
  exit
-----------------------------------------------
Finished in 0.460 s
                </response>
            </item>
            <item>
                <admin>rollback compare 1 to flee-fly</admin>
                <response>
                </response>
                <rpc-error>
```

```
                    <error-type>application</error-type>
                    <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
                    <error-severity>error</error-severity>
                    <error-info>
                        <err-element>admin</err-element>
                    </error-info>
                    <error-message>
                        command failed - '/admin rollback compare 1 to flee-fly'
                        MINOR: CLI No such file ('flee-fly').
                    </error-message>
                </rpc-error>
            </item>
        </cli-action>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 4 — Error in the 2nd item of the request, resulting in no 3rd item in the reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="104" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
  <cli-action>
    <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
    <admin>rollback compare 1 to xyz</admin>
    <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
  </cli-action>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="104" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <cli-action>
            <item>
                <admin>rollback compare active-cfg to 1</admin>
          <response>
0.170 s
1.350 s
-----------------------------------------------
  configure
     router
-        mpls
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
-        rsvp
-            shutdown
-            interface "system"
-                no shutdown
-            exit
-        exit
     exit
  exit
```

```
-----------------------------------------------
Finished in 1.640 s
                </response>
            </item>
            <item>
                <admin>rollback compare 1 to xyz</admin>
                <response>
                </response>
                <rpc-error>
                    <error-type>application</error-type>
                    <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
                    <error-severity>error</error-severity>
                    <error-info>
                        <err-element>admin</err-element>
                    </error-info>
                    <error-message>
                        command failed - '/admin rollback compare 1 to xyz'
                        MINOR: CLI No such file ('xyz').
                    </error-message>
                </rpc-error>
            </item>
        </cli-action>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

System Provisioned Configuration (SPC) Objects

There are a set of configuration objects that are provisioned (added to the running datastore) automatically by SR OS; for example, log-id 99.

Some of these items can be deleted/removed by a user (Deletable SPC Objects):

- In CLI these are removed by specifying the keyword 'no' which is then visible in an "info" command or in a saved config (admin save); for example, 'no log-id 99'.
- The Deletable SPC Objects can be removed or re-created via NETCONF <edit-config> requests, but they are not visible in a <get-config> response when they are:
  - → Set to their default values (including all child leaves & objects)
  - → Removed or deleted
- The Deletable SPC Objects are visible in a <get-config> response if a child leaf or object is changed away from the default value; for example, changing log-99 to time-format local.
- The list of Deletable SPC Objects is as follows:

```
Config system security profile default
Config system security profile default entry 10-100
Config system security profile administrative
Config system security profile administrative entry 10-112
Config system security user "admin"
Config system security user console member "default"
```

```
Config system security snmp access group  xyz (a set of access groups)
Config system security ssh client-cipher-list protocol-version 1 cipher 200-210
Config system security ssh client-cipher-list protocol-version 2 cipher 190-235
Config system security ssh server-cipher-list protocol-version 1 cipher 200-205
Config system security ssh server-cipher-list protocol-version 2 cipher 190-235
Config log filter 1001
Config log filter 1001 entry 10
Config log log-id 99 & 100
```

Some SPC objects cannot be deleted (Non-Deletable SPC Objects):

- Although these objects cannot be deleted, some of them contain leafs that can be modified.
- The Non-Deletable SPC Objects are not visible in a <get-config> response when they are set to their default values (including all child leaves & objects).
- The Non-Deletable SPC Objects are visible in a <get-config> response if a child leaf or object is changed away from the default value; for example, setting the card-type.
- The list of Non-Deletable SPC Objects is as follows:

```
Config system security user-template {tacplus_default|radius_default}
Config system security snmp view iso …
Config system security snmp view li-view …
Config system security snmp view mgmt-view …
Config system security snmp view vprn-view …
Config system security snmp view no-security-view …Config log event-control …
Config filter log 101
Config qos … various default policies can’t be deleted
Config qos queue-group-templates … these can’t be deleted
Config card <x>
Config router network-domains network-domain “default”
Config oam-pm bin-group 1
Config call-trace trace-profile “default”
```

There are some Non-Deletable SPC Objects that are visible in a <get-config> request even if they are set to default values:

```
Config system security cpu-protection policy 254 and 255
Config router interface “system"
Config service customer 1
```

Establishing a NETCONF Session

The following example shows a client on a Linux PC initiating a connection to an SR OS NETCONF server. The SSH session must be invoked using an SSH subsystem (as recommended in RFC 6242):

```
ssh -s my_username@a.b.c.d -p 830 netconf
```

The following example shows an exchange of hello messages which include advertisement of capabilities.

From the SR OS server:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<hello xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <capabilities>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.1</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:writable-running:1.0</capabil-
ity>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:validate:1.1</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:startup:1.0</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:url:1.0?scheme=ftp,tftp,file</
capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:capability:with-defaults:1.0?basic-
mode=trim</capability>
        <capability>urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0?module=ietf-net-
conf&amp;revision=2015-02-27&amp;features=writable-running,vali-
date,startup,url&amp;deviations=alu-netconf-deviations-r13</capability>
        <capability>urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:netconf-deviations-r13?mod-
ule=alu-netconf-deviations-r13&amp;revision=2015-02-27</capability>
        <capability>urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13?mod-
ule=alu-cli-content-layer-r13&amp;revision=2015-02-27</capability>
        <capability>urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13?module=conf-
r13&amp;revision=2015-02-27</capability>
        <capability>urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-aaa-r13?module=conf-aaa-
r13&amp;revision=2015-02-27</capability>
     ...
     ...
     ...
     ...
        <capability>urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-vsm-r13?module=conf-vsm-
r13&amp;revision=2015-02-27</capability>
    </capabilities>
    <session-id>54</session-id>
</hello>
]]>]]>
```

From a client:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
     <hello>
          <capabilities>
               <capability>urn:ietf:params:netconf:base:1.0</capability>
          </capabilities>
     </hello>
]]>]]>
```

XML Content Layer

XML is the default content layer format for the SR OS NETCONF server. When using the XML format at the NETCONF content layer, configuration changes and configuration information retrieved are expressed as XML tags.

The XML formatted configuration information must be correctly ordered and has the same dependencies and behavior as the equivalent CLI commands.

<edit-config> with XML Content Layer

An <edit-config> operation is supported with the <running> datastore only. The following <edit-config> operation attribute values are supported:

- merge
- remove
- delete
  - → A 'delete' operation for a leaf or a presence container will not return an error if the item is already deleted.
  - → An error is returned if attempting to delete a list node that doesn't exist.
  - → A 'delete' operation for a container without presence will return an error
- create
  - → A 'create' operation for a leaf or a presence container will not return an error if the item is being set to the same value.
  - → An error is returned if attempting to create a list node that already exists.
  - → A 'create' operation for a container without presence will result in an "OK" response (no error) but will be silently ignored.

'replace' is not supported as an attribute value for the <edit-config> operation.

Both 'delete' and 'remove' operations have the following behavior:

- Delete or remove operations are not supported for boolean leafs. For example, any of the following samples will return an error:
  - → <shutdown operation="delete"/>
  - → <shutdown operation="delete">false</shutdown>
  - → <interface operation="delete">

    <interface-name>abc</interface-name>

    <shutdown>true</shutdown>

    </interface>

    (For this last case <shutdown operation="merge">true</shutdown> could be used instead to make the request valid.)
- A delete or remove operation is the equivalent of 'no xyz' in CLI. This 'no xyz' is applied whether the default for xyz is enabled ('xyz'), disabled ('no xyz') or some specific value. The delete operation is not aware of the default value of the object/leaf being deleted.

- A delete or remove for a leaf, where the request also specifies a value for the leaf, will result in an error.

The <edit-config> <default-operation> parameter is supported with the following values: merge, none. The 'replace' value is not supported. An operation of "none" on a leaf node (inherited or direct) causes that leaf statement to be ignored. No error will be returned if the leaf does not exist in the data model.

For 'merge' and 'create' operations the operations and tags specified in an <edit-config> request are order-aware and order-dependant and the sequence of operations must follow the required sequence of the equivalent CLI commands. The <edit-config> is processed and executed in a top-down order. The same leaf can be enabled, disabled, enabled and then disabled and the final result is whatever was last specified for that leaf in the <edit-config> request.

For 'delete' and 'remove' operations the SR OS NETCONF server will recursively "unwind" any children of the node being deleted or removed first before removing the node itself. The 'deepest' child branch of the request is examined first and any leafs are processed, after which the server works backwards out of the deepest branches back up to the object where the delete operation was specified. Note that if children branches of an object are required to be removed before deleting the object in CLI, then the equivalent delete request in a NETCONF <edit-config> must contain all those children if they exist, such as if the children are configured in the config datastore). For example:

```
<config>
    <configure>
        <service>
            <vpls operation="delete">
                <service-id>11</service-id>
                <interface>
                    <ip-int-name>test</ip-int-name>
                    <shutdown operation="merge">true</shutdown>
                </interface>
                <shutdown operation="merge">true</shutdown>
            </vpls>
        </service>
    </configure>
</config>
```

In the example above, SR OS will first shutdown the test interface, then delete the interface, then shutdown the VPLS and then finally remove it.

Note that the 'operation="merge"' is required in the shutdown nodes because otherwise the inherited operation is delete which is not supported on boolean leafs.

If other children of vpls 11 exist in the config besides the interface 'test' specified in the delete request above, and those children are required in CLI to be deleted before removing vpls 11, then the deletion request above will fail. All configured children must be specified in the delete request.

<get-config> with XML Content Layer

A <get-config> operation is supported with the <running> datastore only.

Subtree filtering for basic subtree selection is supported for XML content layer <get-config> requests. Post-filtering of the selected subtrees is not supported. The details of subtree filter support are as follows:

- Attribute match expressions (section 6.2.2 of RFC 6241) are not supported. See details below about content match nodes.
- Only containers are supported as selection nodes (section 6.2.4 of RFC 6241). Empty leaf nodes or list name nodes are not supported as selection nodes.
  - → Nodes that represent lists must also include content match nodes for all keys of the list; for example, <configure><router><interface><interface-name>abc</interface-name>.
  - → A selection node that is a list, without also specifying the key, is not supported; for example, <configure><router><interface/> is not supported. An alternative is to request the parent containment node that contains the desired list node; for example, <configure><router> instead of <configure><router><interface/>.
- Content match nodes (section 6.2.5 of RFC 6241) are only supported for key leafs; for example, <configure><router><interface><interface-name>abc</interface-name>.
  - → Content match nodes that are leafs but are not also keys will result in an error (not silently ignored).

Example 1 — The following request will return an error:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get-config>
                <source>
                        <running/>
                </source>
                <filter>
                        <configure>
                                <router>
                                        <interface>
                                                <interface-name>abc</interface-name>
                                                <delayed-enable>30</delayed-enable>
                                        </interface>
                                </router>
                        </configure>
                </filter>
        </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>application</error-type>
        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <err-element>get-config</err-element>
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            command failed - 'configure router interface "abc" delayed-enable'
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Multiple key leafs for the same key cannot be requested inside the same instance of the list name node; for example, <interface-name>abc</interface-name> <interface-name>def</interface-name>. Each key value must be inside its own instance of the list name node; for example, <interface> <interface-name>abc</interface-name> </interface> <interface> <interface-name>def</interface-name> </interface>.

Example 2 — A valid <get-config> request (content match on a list key):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get-config>
                <source>
                        <running/>
                </source>
        <filter>
          <configure>
               <router>
               <interface>
                    <interface-name>abc</interface-name>
               </interface>
               </router>
          </configure>
        </filter>
        </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Example 3 — A valid <get-config> request (selection node that is a container):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
     <get-config>
          <source>
               <running/>
          </source>
          <filter>
               <configure>
                    <router/>
```

```
            </configure>
         </filter>
     </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

The reply will contain all the configuration for all child nodes of config>router

Example 4 — An invalid <get-config> request (list name node - invalid selection node):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get-config>
                <source>
                        <running/>
                </source>
                        <filter>
                                <configure>
                                        <router>
                                                <interface>
                                                </interface>
                                        </router>
                                </configure>
                        </filter>
        </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>application</error-type>
        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <err-element>get-config</err-element>
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            command failed - 'configure router interface'
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 5 — An invalid <get-config> request (empty leaf node - invalid selection node):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get-config>
            <source>
                <running/>
            </source>
            <filter>
```

```
                <configure>
                <system>
                        <security>
                                    <ftp-server>
                                              </ftp-server>
                                    </security>
                         </system>
                 </configure>
            </filter>
        </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>protocol</error-type>
        <error-tag>bad-element</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <bad-element>ftp-server</bad-element>
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            Element is not valid in the specified context.
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Example 6 — An invalid <get-config> request (key repeated in the same instance of the list node):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get-config>
                <source>
                        <running/>
                </source>
                <filter>
                        <configure>
                                <router>
                                        <interface>
                                                <interface-name>abc</interface-name>
                                                <interface-name>def</interface-name>
                                        </interface>
                                </router>
                        </configure>
                </filter>
        </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>application</error-type>
        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <err-element>get-config</err-element>
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            command failed - 'configure router interface "abc" "def"'
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

The full configuration (equivalent to the CLI command 'admin display-config') can be obtained via a <get-config> request:

- A — when the <filter> tag is not present

  Example:

  ```
  <get-config>
       <source>
            <running/>
       </source>
  </get-config>
  ```

- B — when only the <configure> tag is present inside a <filter> tag

  Example:

  ```
  <get-config>
       <source>
            <running/>
       </source>
       <filter>
            <configure/>
       </filter>
  </get-config>
  ```

<get-config> requests that specify a non-existent list node or presence container will result in a reply that contains no data for those list nodes or containers. An rpc-error is not sent in this case.

XML Content Layer Examples

The following examples can be used after a NETCONF session has been established including the exchange of the <hello> messages.

Below is an example of a <get-config> request and response to check on whether netconf is shut down or not on the router:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
        <get-config>
                <source> <running/> </source>
                <filter>
                        <configure>
                                <system>
                                        <netconf>
                                        </netconf>
                                </system>
                        </configure>
                </filter>
        </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data>
        <configure xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:conf-r13">
            <system>
                <netconf>
                    <shutdown>false</shutdown>
                </netconf>
            </system>
        </configure>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Below is an example of a <edit-config> request and response to create a basic VPRN service:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <edit-config>
        <target>
            <running/>
        </target>
        <config>
            <configure>
                <service>
                    <vprn operation="create">
                        <service-id>200</service-id>
                        <customer>1</customer>
                    </vprn>
                </service>
            </configure>
        </config>
  </edit-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Below is an example of a <edit-config> request and response to create a basic VPRN service with a SAP (creates the service/interface but fails to create the SAP as the specified port's encapsulation is invalid):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101"
  xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <edit-config>
                <target>
            <running/>
        </target>
        <config>
            <configure>
                <service>
                    <vprn operation="create">
                        <interface>
                            <ip-int-name>"test"</ip-int-name>
                            <sap>
                                <sap-id>"2/1/1"</sap-id>
                            </sap>
                        </interface>
                        <service-id>201</service-id>
                        <customer>1</customer>
                    </vprn>
                </service>
            </configure>
        </config>
  </edit-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <rpc-error>
        <error-type>application</error-type>
        <error-tag>operation-failed</error-tag>
        <error-severity>error</error-severity>
        <error-info>
            <err-element>edit-config</err-element>
        </error-info>
        <error-message>
            command failed - 'configure service vprn "201" customer 1 interface "test"
sap "2/1/1"'
            MINOR: CLI SAP-id has an invalid port number or encapsulation value.
        </error-message>
    </rpc-error>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

CLI Content Layer

When using the CLI format at the NETCONF content layer, configuration changes and configuration information retrieved are expressed as untagged (non-XML) CLI commands; for example, CLI script.

The script must be correctly ordered and has the same dependencies and behavior as CLI. The location of CR/LF (ENTER) within the CLI for an <edit-config> is significant and affects the processing of the CLI commands, such as what CLI branch is considered the "working context". In the following two examples the "working context" after the commands are issued are different.

Example 1:

```
exit all  [<-ENTER]
configure system time zone EST [<-ENTER]
```

Example 2:

```
exit all [<-ENTER]
configure  [<-ENTER]
     system  [<-ENTER]
          time  [<-ENTER]
               zone EST [<-ENTER]
```

After example 1, the CLI working context is the root and immediately sending 'dst-zone CEST' would return an error. After example 2, the CLI working context is config>system>time and sending 'dst-zone CEST' would work as expected.

Configuration changes done via NETCONF trigger the same "change" log events (for example, tmnxConfigCreate) as a normal CLI user doing the same changes.

The <with-defaults> tag (RFC 6243) is not supported in a CLI content layer request.

The operator can get a full configuration including defaults for a CLI Content Layer using an empty <cli-info-detail>. The full configuration (equivalent to the CLI command 'admin display-config [detail]') can be obtained via a <get-config> request in a CLI Content Layer format with an empty <cli-info> or <cli-info-detail> tag inside a <config-format-cli-block>. <report-all> is not supported.

Post-processing commands are ignored: "| match" (pipe match), "| count" (pipe count) and ">" (redirect to file) and CLI ranges are not supported for any command; for example, show card [1..5].

For more information, see "CLI Content Layer Examples".

CLI Content Layer Examples

The following examples can be used after a NETCONF session has been established including the exchange of the <hello> messages.

Below is an example of a config change request and response. Note that 'exit all' at the beginning of the CLI block is not required (it is automatically assumed by the SR OS NETCONF server).

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="104" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
     <edit-config>
     <target><running/></target>
          <config>
               <config-format-cli-block>
                    configure system
                         time zone EST
                         location over-here
                    exit all
               </config-format-cli-block>
          </config>
     </edit-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="104"
xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
     <ok/>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Below is an example of a <get-config> request and response to retrieve configuration information:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
     <get-config>
          <source>
               <running/>
          </source>
          <filter>
               <config-format-cli-block>
                    <cli-info>router</cli-info>
                    <cli-info-detail>system login-control</cli-info-detail>
               </config-format-cli-block>
          </filter>
     </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <config-format-cli-block>
            <item>
                <cli-info>router</cli-info>
                <response>
-----------------------------------------------
#-----------------------------------------------
echo "IP Configuration"
#-----------------------------------------------
        interface "system"
            no shutdown
        exit
-----------------------------------------------
                </response>
            </item>
            <item>
                <cli-info-detail>system login-control</cli-info-detail>
                <response>
-----------------------------------------------
            ftp
                inbound-max-sessions 3
            exit
            ssh
                no disable-graceful-shutdown
                inbound-max-sessions 5
                outbound-max-sessions 5
                no ttl-security
            exit
            telnet
                no enable-graceful-shutdown
                inbound-max-sessions 5
                outbound-max-sessions 5
                no ttl-security
            exit
            idle-timeout 30
            no pre-login-message
            no motd
            login-banner
            no exponential-backoff
-----------------------------------------------
                </response>
            </item>
        </config-format-cli-block>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Below is an example of a <get-config> request and response to retrieve full configuration information. Note that <cli-info-detail/> can be used to get the full configuration including default settings.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
   <get-config>
          <source>
               <running/>
          </source>
          <filter>
              <config-format-cli-block>
                  <cli-info/>
              </config-format-cli-block>
          </filter>
    </get-config>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <config-format-cli-block>
            <item>
                <cli-info></cli-info>
                <response>
# TiMOS-C-0.0.I4301 cpm/x86_64 ALCATEL SR 7750 Copyright (c) 2000-2015 Alcatel-Lucent.
# All rights reserved. All use subject to applicable license agreements.
# Built on Sun Jan 4 19:11:11 PST 2015 by builder in /rel0.0/I4301/panos/main

# Generated WED JAN 07 01:07:43 2015 UTC

exit all
configure
#--------------------------------------------------
echo "System Configuration"
#--------------------------------------------------
    system
        chassis-mode d
        dns
        exit
        load-balancing
            lsr-load-balancing lbl-ip
            system-ip-load-balancing
        exit
        netconf
            no shutdown
        exit
        snmp
            shutdown
            engineID "deadbeefdeadbeef"
        exit
        time
            ntp
                authentication-key 1 key "OAwgNUlbzgI" hash2 type des
                no shutdown
            exit
            sntp
                shutdown
            exit
```

```
            zone EST
        exit
        thresholds
            rmon
            exit
        exit
#--------------------------------------------------
echo "Cron Configuration"
#--------------------------------------------------
        cron
              ...
              ...
              ...
        exit
    exit
#--------------------------------------------------
echo "System Security Configuration"
#--------------------------------------------------
     ...
     ...
     ...
#--------------------------------------------------
echo "System Time NTP Configuration"
#--------------------------------------------------
    system
        time
            ntp
            exit
        exit
    exit

exit all

# Finished WED JAN 07 01:07:43 2015 UTC
------------------------------------------------
------------------------------------------------
               </response>
            </item>
        </config-format-cli-block>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

Below is an example of a <get> request and the response to it:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
     <get>
          <filter>
               <oper-data-format-cli-block>
                    <cli-show>system security ssh</cli-show>
               </oper-data-format-cli-block>
          </filter>
     </get>
</rpc>
]]>]]>
```

Reply:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<rpc-reply message-id="101" xmlns="urn:ietf:params:xml:ns:netconf:base:1.0">
    <data xmlns="urn:alcatel-lucent.com:sros:ns:yang:cli-content-layer-r13">
        <oper-data-format-cli-block>
            <item>
                <cli-show>system security ssh</cli-show>
                <response>

===============================================================================
SSH Server
===============================================================================
Administrative State      : Enabled
Operational State         : Up
Preserve Key              : Enabled

SSH Protocol Version 1    : Disabled

SSH Protocol Version 2    : Enabled
DSA Host Key Fingerprint  : ca:ce:37:90:49:7d:cc:68:22:b3:06:2c:11:cd:3c:8e
RSA Host Key Fingerprint  : 49:7c:21:97:42:35:83:61:06:95:cd:a8:78:4c:1e:76

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Connection                                Username
    Version Cipher                        ServerName  Status
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
135.121.143.254                           admin
    2       aes128-cbc                    netconf     connected
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of SSH sessions : 1
===============================================================================
                </response>
            </item>
        </oper-data-format-cli-block>
    </data>
</rpc-reply>
]]>]]>
```

NETCONF Command Reference

Command Hierarchies

Configuration Commands

NETCONF System Commands

```
config
    — system
        — netconf
            — [no] shutdown
```

NETCONF Security Commands

```
config
    — system
        — security
            — user user-id
                — access [ftp] [snmp] [console] [li][netconf]
config
    — system
        — security
            — profile profile-id
                — netconf
                    — base-op-authorization
                        —[no] kill-session
```

Show Commands

```
show
    — system
        — netconf
            — counters
```

Configuration Commands

NETCONF System Commands

netconf

Syntax **netconf**

Context config>system>security>profile

Description This command authorizes netconf capability for the user.

kill-session

Syntax [**no**] **kill-session**

Context config>system>security>profile>netconf>base-op-authorization

Description This operation authorizes a user associated with the profile to send a <kill-session> NETCONF operation. This <kill-session> operation allows a NETCONF client to kill another NETCONF session, but not the session in which the operation is requested.

Default **no kill-session**

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>system>netconf

Description This command disables the NETCONF server. 'shutdown' is blocked if there are any active NETCONF sessions. Use the “admin disconnect” command to disconnect all NETCONF sessions before shutting down the NETCONF service.

base-op-authorization

Syntax **base-op-authorization**

Context config>system>security>profile>netconf

Description This command enters the context where permission to use various NETCONF operations is controlled.

Show Commands

NETCONF System Commands

netconf

Syntax **netconf**

Context show>system

Description This command displays NETCONF SSH sessions.

Output **SSH Options Output —** The following table describes NETCONF output fields .

Label	Description
Administrative State	Enabled – Displays that NETCONF is enabled. Disabled – Displays that NETCONF is disabled.
Operational State	Up – Displays that NETCONF is operational. Down – Displays that NETCONF is not operational.
Connection	The IP address of the connected router(s) (remote client).
Username	The name of the user.
Session ID	The NETCONF session ID.
Status	Connected or not connected.
Number of sessions	Total NETCONF sessions

```
*A:bksim3107# show system netconf

===============================================================================
NETCONF Server
===============================================================================
Administrative State      : Enabled
Operational State         : Up


-------------------------------------------------------------------
Connection          Username            Session Status
                                        Id
-------------------------------------------------------------------
192.168.7.229       admin               1       connected
192.168.7.229       test1               2       connected
192.168.7.229       test2               3       connected
-------------------------------------------------------------------
Number of NETCONF sessions : 3
===============================================================================
```

counters

Syntax **counters**

Context show>system>netconf

Description This command displays NETCONF counters.

Output **SSH Options Output —** The following table describes NETCONF counter output fields .

Label	Description
RX Messages	Types and numbers of receive messages
Total RX	Total of all receive messages
TX Messages	Types and numbers of send messages
Total TX	Total of all send messages

```
*A:bksim3107# show system netconf counters
===============================================================================
NETCONF counters:
===============================================================================
    Rx Messages
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
      in gets            : 0
      in get-configs     : 0
      in edit-configs    : 0
      in close-sessions  : 0
      in kill-sessions   : 0
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
      Rx Total           : 0
===============================================================================
    Tx Messages
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
      out rpc-errors     : 0
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
      Tx Total           : 0
===============================================================================
```

Event and Accounting Logs

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information about configuring event and accounting logs in the system.

Topics in this chapter include:

- Logging Overview on page 380
- Log Destinations on page 382
- Event Logs on page 387
  - → Event Sources on page 388
  - → Event Control on page 389
  - → Log Manager and Event Logs on page 390
  - → Event Filter Policies on page 391
  - → Event Log Entries on page 392
  - → Simple Logger Event Throttling on page 394
  - → Default System Log on page 395
  - → Event Handling System on page 395
- Accounting Logs on page 397
  - → Accounting Records on page 397
  - → Accounting Files on page 400
  - → Design Considerations on page 400
- Configuration Notes on page 404

Logging Overview

The two primary types of logging supported in the OS are event logging and accounting logs.

Event logging controls the generation, dissemination and recording of system events for monitoring status and troubleshooting faults within the system. The OSgroups events into three major categories or event sources:

- Security events — Events that pertain to attempts to breach system security.
- Change events — Events that pertain to the configuration and operation of the node.
- Main events — Events that pertain to applications that are not assigned to other event categories/sources.
- Debug events — Events that pertain to trace or other debugging information.

The following are events within the OS and have the following characteristics:

- A time stamp in UTC or local time.
- The generating application.
- A unique event ID within the application.
- The VRF-ID.
- A subject identifying the affected object.
- A short text description.

Event control assigns the severity for each application event and whether the event should be generated or suppressed. The severity numbers and severity names supported in the OS conform to ITU standards M.3100 X.733 & X.21 and are listed in Table 39.

Table 39: Event Severity Levels

Severity Number	Severity Name
1	cleared
2	indeterminate (info)
3	critical
4	major
5	minor
6	warning

Events that are suppressed by event control will not generate any event log entries. Event control maintains a count of the number of events generated (logged) and dropped (suppressed) for each application event. The severity of an application event can be configured in event control.

An event log within the OS associates the event sources with logging destinations. Examples of logging destinations include, the console session, a specific telnet or SSH session, memory logs, file destinations, SNMP trap groups and syslog destinations. A log filter policy can be associated with the event log to control which events will be logged in the event log based on combinations of application, severity, event ID range, VRF ID, and the subject of the event.

The OS accounting logs collect comprehensive accounting statistics to support a variety of billing models. The routers collect accounting data on services and network ports on a per-service class basis. In addition to gathering information critical for service billing, accounting records can be analyzed to provide insight about customer service trends for potential service revenue opportunities. Accounting statistics on network ports can be used to track link utilization and network traffic pattern trends. This information is valuable for traffic engineering and capacity planning within the network core.

Accounting statistics are collected according to the parameters defined within the context of an accounting policy. Accounting policies are applied to customer Service Access Points (SAPs) and network ports. Accounting statistics are collected by counters for individual service queues defined on the customer's SAP or by the counters within forwarding class (FC) queues defined on the network ports.

The type of record defined within the accounting policy determines where a policy is applied, what statistics are collected and time interval at which to collect statistics.

The only supported destination for an accounting log is a compact flash system device (cf1or cf2). Accounting data is stored within a standard directory structure on the device in compressed XML format.

Log Destinations

Both event logs and accounting logs use a common mechanism for referencing a log destination. routerssupport the following log destinations:

- Console on page 382
- Session on page 382
- Memory Logs on page 382
- Log Files on page 383
- SNMP Trap Group on page 385
- Syslog on page 385

Only a single log destination can be associated with an event log or with an accounting log. An event log can be associated with multiple event sources, but it can only have a single log destination.

A file destination is the only type of log destination that can be configured for an accounting log.

Console

Sending events to a console destination means the message will be sent to the system console The console device can be used as an event log destination.

Session

A session destination is a temporary log destination which directs entries to the active telnet or SSH session for the duration of the session. When the session is terminated, for example, when the user logs out, the “to session” configuration is removed. Event logs configured with a session destination are stored in the configuration file but the “to session” part is not stored. Event logs can direct log entries to the session destination.

Memory Logs

A memory log is a circular buffer. When the log is full, the oldest entry in the log is replaced with the new entry. When a memory log is created, the specific number of entries it can hold can be specified, otherwise it will assume a default size. An event log can send entries to a memory log destination.

Log Files

Log files can be used by both event logs and accounting logs and are stored on the compact flash devices (specifically cf1:or cf2) in the file system. It is recommended that event and accounting logs not be configured on the cf3: device that is used for software images and bootup configuration.

A log file is identified with a single log file ID, but a log file will generally be composed of a number individual files in the file system. A log file is configured with a rollover parameter, expressed in minutes, which represents the length of time an individual log file should be written to before a new file is created for the relevant log file ID. The rollover time is checked only when an update to the log is performed. Thus, complying to this rule is subject to the incoming rate of the data being logged. For example, if the rate is very low, the actual rollover time may be longer than the configured value.

The retention time for a log file specifies the amount of time the file should be retained on the system based on the creation date and time of the file.

When a log file is created, only the compact flash device for the log file is specified. Log files are created in specific subdirectories with standardized names depending on the type of information stored in the log file.

Event log files are always created in the **\log** directory on the specified compact flash device. The naming convention for event log files is:

`log` *`eeff-timestamp`*

where:

`ee` is the event log ID

`ff` is the log file destination ID

`timestamp` is the timestamp when the file is created in the form of *yyyymmdd-hhmmss* where:

yyyy is the four-digit year (for example, 2007)

mm is the two digit number representing the month (for example, 12 for December)

dd is the two digit number representing the day of the month (for example, 03 for the 3rd of the month)

hh is the two digit hour in a 24-hour clock (for example, 04 for 4 a.m.)

mm is the two digit minute (for example, 30 for 30 minutes past the hour)

ss is the two digit second (for example, 14 for 14)

Accounting log files are created in the **\act-collect** directory on a compact flash device (specifically *cf1* or *cf2*). The naming convention for accounting log files is nearly the same as for log files except the prefix **act** is used instead of the prefix **log**. The naming convention for accounting logs is:

```
act aaff-timestamp.xml.gz
```

where:

aa is the accounting policy ID

ff is the log file destination ID

timestamp is the timestamp when the file is created in the form of *yyyymmdd-hhmmss* where:

yyyy is the four-digit year (for example, 2007)

mm is the two digit number representing the month (for example, 12 for December)

dd is the two digit number representing the day of the month (for example, 03 for the 3rd of the month)

hh is the two digit hour in a 24-hour clock (for example, 04 for 4 a.m.)

mm is the two digit minute (for example, 30 for 30 minutes past the hour)

ss is the two digit second (for example, 14 for 14 seconds)

Accounting logs are `.xml` files created in a compressed format and have a `.gz` extension.

The **\act-collect** directory is where active accounting logs are written. When an accounting log is rolled over, the active file is closed and archived in the **\act** directory before a new active accounting log file created in **\act-collect**.

SNMP Trap Group

An event log can be configured to send events to SNMP trap receivers by specifying an SNMP trap group destination.

An SNMP trap group can have multiple trap targets. Each trap target can have different operational parameters.

A trap destination has the following properties:

- The IP address of the trap receiver.
- The UDP port used to send the SNMP trap.
- SNMP version (v1, v2c, or v3) used to format the SNMP notification.
- SNMP community name for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c receivers.
- Security name and level for SNMPv3 trap receivers.

For SNMP traps that will be sent out-of-band through the Management Ethernet port on the SF/, the source IP address of the trap is the IP interface address defined on the Management Ethernet port. For SNMP traps that will be sent in-band, the source IP address of the trap is the system IP address of the router.

Each trap target destination of a trap group receives the identical sequence of events as defined by the log ID and the associated sources and log filter applied.

Syslog

An event log can be configured to send events to one syslog destination. Syslog destinations have the following properties:

- Syslog server IP address.
- The UDP port used to send the syslog message.
- The Syslog Facility Code (0 - 23) (default 23 - local 7).
- The Syslog Severity Threshold (0 - 7) - events exceeding the configured level will be sent.

Because syslog uses eight severity levels whereas the routeruses six internal severity levels, the severity levels are mapped to syslog severities. Table 40 displays the severity level mappings to syslog severities.

Table 40: Router to Syslog Severity Level Mappings

SR OS Event Severity	Syslog Severity Numerical Code	Syslog Severity name	Syslog Severity Definition
--	0	emergency	System is unusable
critical (3)	1	alert	Action must be taken immediately
major (4)	2	critical	Critical conditions
minor (5)	3	error	Error conditions
warning (6)	4	warning	Warning conditions
--	5	notice	Normal but significant condition
cleared (1) indeterminate (2)	6	info	Informational messages
--	7	debug	Debug-level messages

The general format of an SR OS syslog message is as follows (see RFC3164). Note that the '<' and '>' are informational delimiters to make reading and understanding the format easier and they do not appear in the actual syslog message except as part of the 'PRI':

```
<HEADER> <log-prefix>: <PRI> <MSG>
```

where:

HEADER is MMM DD HH:MM:SS <source IP addr>

log-prefix is an optional 32 characters of text as configured in the log-prefix command. A ':' will not appear at this point in the message if no log-prefix is configured.

<*PRI*> (the '<' and '>' are included in the syslog message) is the configured facility*8+severity (as described in the System Management Guide and RFC3164)

<*MSG*> is <router-name> <application>-<severity>-<Event Name>-<Event ID> [<subject>]: <description>

where:

router-name is vprn1, vprn2, … | Base | management | vpls-management

subject may be empty resulting in []:

Example:

```
Jun  4 07:05:07 10.252.30.36 133 vprn110 RADIUS-MINOR-
tmnxRadSrvPlcySrvOperStateCh-2001 []:  The operational state of RADIUS server 1
(address=10.63.211.22) in RADIUS server policy "rad-server-pol-H3Gaaa" changed
to out-of-service.
```

Event Logs

Event logs are the means of recording system generated events for later analysis. Events are messages generated by the system by applications or processes within the router.

Figure 12 depicts a function block diagram of event logging.

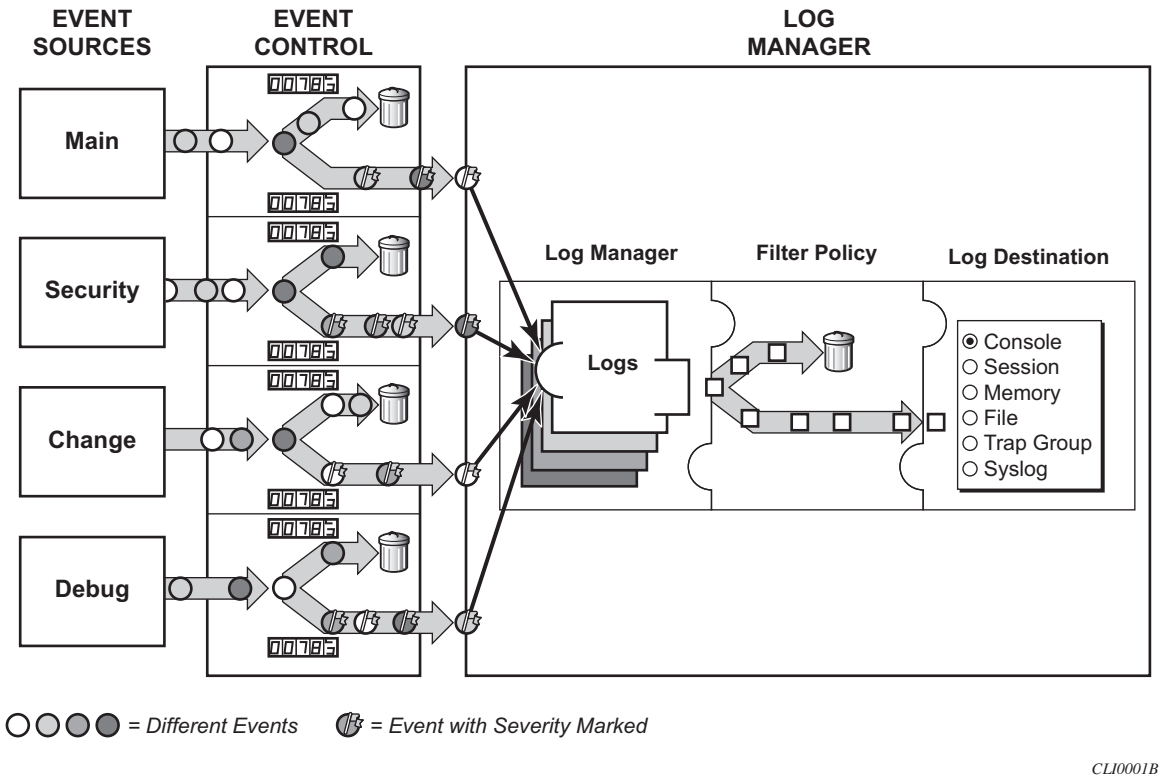


Figure 12: Event Logging Block Diagram

Event Sources

In Figure 12, the event sources are the main categories of events that feed the log manager.

- Security — The security event source is all events that affect attempts to breach system security such as failed login attempts, attempts to access MIB tables to which the user is not granted access or attempts to enter a branch of the CLI to which access has not been granted. Security events are generated by the SECURITY application and the authenticationFailure event in the SNMP application.
- Change — The change activity event source is all events that directly affect the configuration or operation of the node. Change events are generated by the USER application. The Change event stream also includes the tmnxConfigModify (#2006), tmnxConfigCreate (#2007), tmnxConfigDelete (#2008) and tmnxStateChange (#2009) change events from the SYSTEM application.
- Debug — The debug event source is the debugging configuration that has been enabled on the system. Debug events are generated by the DEBUG application.
- Main — The main event source receives events from all other applications within the router.

Examples of applications within the system include IP, MPLS, OSPF, CLI, services, etc. The following example displays a partial sample of the **show log applications** command output which displays all applications.

```
*A:ALA-48# show log applications
===================================
Log Event Application Names
===================================
Application Name
-----------------------------------
...
BGP
CCAG
CFLOWD
CHASSIS
...
MPLS
MSDP
NTP
...
TOD
USER
VRRP
VRTR
===================================
*A:ALA-48#
```

Event Control

Event control pre-processes the events generated by applications before the event is passed into the main event stream. Event control assigns a severity to application events and can either forward the event to the main event source or suppress the event. Suppressed events are counted in event control, but these events will not generate log entries as it never reaches the log manager.

Simple event throttling is another method of event control and is configured similarly to the generation and suppression options. See Simple Logger Event Throttling on page 394.

Events are assigned a default severity level in the system, but the application event severities can be changed by the user.

Application events contain an event number and description that explains why the event is generated. The event number is unique within an application, but the number can be duplicated in other applications.

The following example, generated by querying event control for application generated events, displays a partial list of event numbers and names.

```
router# show log event-control
===============================================================================
Log Events
===============================================================================
Application
 ID#    Event Name                          P   g/s     Logged     Dropped
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
```

Log Manager and Event Logs

Events that are forwarded by event control are sent to the log manager. The log manager manages the event logs in the system and the relationships between the log sources, event logs and log destinations, and log filter policies.

An event log has the following properties:

- A unique log ID

  The log ID is a short, numeric identifier for the event log. A maximum of ten logs can be configured at a time.

- One or more log sources

  The source stream or streams to be sent to log destinations can be specified. The source must be identified before the destination can be specified. The events can be from the main event stream, events in the security event stream, or events in the user activity stream.

- One event log destination

  A log can only have a single destination. The destination for the log ID destination can be one of console, session, syslog, snmp-trap-group, memory, or a file on the local file system.

- An optional event filter policy

  An event filter policy defines whether to forward or drop an event or trap-based on match criteria.

Event Filter Policies

The log manager uses event filter policies to allow fine control over which events are forwarded or dropped based on various criteria. Like other policies with the , filter policies have a default action. The default actions are either:

- Forward
- Drop

Filter policies also include a number of filter policy entries that are identified with an entry ID and define specific match criteria and a forward or drop action for the match criteria.

Each entry contains a combination of matching criteria that define the application, event number, router, severity, and subject conditions. The entry's action determines how the packets should be treated if they have met the match criteria.

Entries are evaluated in order from the lowest to the highest entry ID. The first matching event is subject to the forward or drop action for that entry.

Valid operators are displayed in Table 41:

Table 41: Valid Filter Policy Operators

Operator	Description
eq	equal to
neq	not equal to
lt	less than
lte	less than or equal to
gt	greater than
gte	greater than or equal to

A match criteria entry can include combinations of:

- Equal to or not equal to a given system application.
- Equal to, not equal to, less than, less than or equal to, greater than or greater than or equal to an event number within the application.
- Equal to, not equal to, less than, less than or equal to, greater than or greater than or equal to a severity level.
- Equal to or not equal to a router name string or regular expression match.
- Equal to or not equal to an event subject string or regular expression match.

Event Log Entries

Log entries that are forwarded to a destination are formatted in a way appropriate for the specific destination whether it be recorded to a file or sent as an SNMP trap, but log event entries have common elements or properties. All application generated events have the following properties:

- A time stamp in UTC or local time.
- The generating application.
- A unique event ID within the application.
- A router name identifying the VRF-ID that generated the event.
- A subject identifying the affected object.
- A short text description.

The general format for an event in an event log with either a memory, console or file destination is as follows.

```
nnnn YYYY/MM/DD HH:MM:SS.SS <severity>:<application> # <event_id> <router-name> <subject>
<message>
```

The following is an event log example:

```
475 2006/11/27 00:19:40.38 WARNING: SNMP #2007 Base 1/1/1
"interface 1/1/1 came up"
```

The specific elements that compose the general format are described in Table 42.

Table 42: Log Entry Field Descriptions

Label	Description
nnnn	The log entry sequence number.
YYYY/MM/DD	The UTC date stamp for the log entry. *YYYY* — Year *MM* — Month *DD* — Date
HH:MM:SS.SS	The UTC time stamp for the event. *HH* — Hours (24 hour format) *MM* — Minutes *SS.SS* — Seconds
<severity>	The severity level name of the event. CLEARED — A cleared event (severity number 1). INFO — An indeterminate/informational severity event (severity level 2). CRITICAL — A critical severity event (severity level 3). MAJOR — A major severity event (severity level 4). MINOR — A minor severity event (severity level 5). WARNING — A warning severity event (severity 6).

Table 42: Log Entry Field Descriptions (Continued)

Label	Description
<application>	The application generating the log message.
<event_id>	The application's event ID number for the event.
<router>	The router name representing the VRF-ID that generated the event.
<subject>	The subject/affected object for the event.
<message>	A text description of the event.

Simple Logger Event Throttling

Simple event throttling provides a mechanism to protect event receivers from being overloaded when a scenario causes many events to be generated in a very short period of time. A throttling rate, # events/# seconds, can be configured. Specific event types can be configured to be throttled. Once the throttling event limit is exceeded in a throttling interval, any further events of that type cause the dropped events counter to be incremented. Dropped events counts are displayed by the **show>log>event-control** context. Events are dropped before being sent to one of the logger event collector tasks. There is no record of the details of the dropped events and therefore no way to retrieve event history data lost by this throttling method.

A particular event type can be generated by multiple managed objects within the system. At the point this throttling method is applied the logger application has no information about the managed object that generated the event and cannot distinguish between events generated by object “A” from events generated by object “B”. If the events have the same event-id, they are throttled regardless of the managed object that generated them. It also does not know which events may eventually be logged to destination log-id <n> from events that will be logged to destination log-id <m>.

Throttle rate applies commonly to all event types. It is not configurable for a specific event-type.

A timer task checks for events dropped by throttling when the throttle interval expires. If any events have been dropped, a TIMETRA-SYSTEM-MIB::tmnxTrapDropped notification is sent.

Default System Log

Log 99 is a pre-configured memory-based log which logs events from the main event source (not security, debug, etc.). Log 99 exists by default.

The following example displays the log 99 configuration.

```
ALA-1>config>log# info detail
#------------------------------------------
echo "Log Configuration "
#------------------------------------------
...
        snmp-trap-group 7
        exit
...
        log-id 99
            description "Default system log"
            no filter
            from main
            to memory 500
            no shutdown
        exit
----------------------------------------------
ALA-1>config>log#
```

Event Handling System

The Event Handling System (EHS) is a tool that allows operator-defined behavior to be configured on the router. EHS adds user-controlled programmatic exception handling by allowing a CLI script to be executed upon the detection of a log event (the 'trigger'). Regexp style expression matching is available on various fields in the log event to give flexibility in the trigger definition.

EHS handler objects are used to tie together:

- trigger events (typically log events that match some configurable criteria)
- a set of actions to perform (typically one or more CLI scripts)

EHS, along with CRON, makes use of the generic SR OS CLI script-control functions for scripts. Any command available in CLI (with some limited exceptions such as 'candidate' commands) can be executed in a script as the result of an EHS handler being triggered.

The following figure illustrates the relationships between the different configurable objects used by EHS (and CRON).

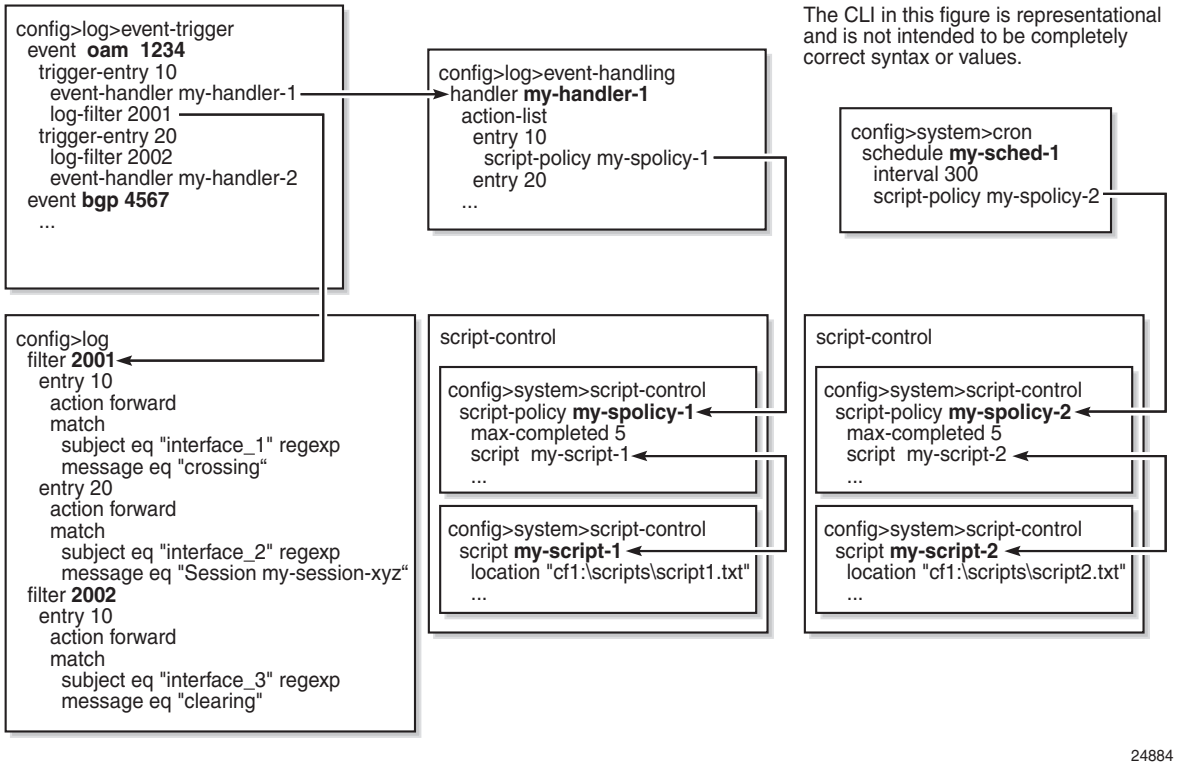


Figure 13: EHS Object Relationships

Complex rules can be configured to match on log events as a trigger for an EHS handler.

When a log event is generated in SR OS it will be subject to discard via suppression and throttling (**config**>**log**>**event-control**) before it is evaluated as a trigger for EHS:

- EHS will not trigger on log events that are suppressed through **config**>**log**>**event-control**
- EHS will not trigger on log events that are throttled by the logger

EHS will trigger on log events that are dropped by user configured log filters that are assigned to individual logs (**config**>**log**>**filter**). The EHS event trigger logic occurs before the distribution of log event streams into individual logs.

Accounting Logs

Before an accounting policy can be created a target log file must be created to collect the accounting records. The files are stored in system memory on compact flash (*cf1:*or *cf2:*) in a compressed (tar) XML format and can be retrieved using FTP or SCP.

A file ID can only be assigned to either one event log ID or one accounting log.

Accounting Records

An accounting policy must define a record name and collection interval. Only one record name can be configured per accounting policy. Also, a record name can only be used in one accounting policy.

The record name, sub-record types, and default collection period for service and network accounting policies are shown below. Table 43, Table 44, and Table 45 provide field descriptions.

When creating accounting policies, one service accounting policy and one network accounting policy can be defined as default. If statistics collection is enabled on a SAP or network port and no accounting policy is applied, then the respective default policy is used. If no default policy is defined, then no statistics are collected unless a specifically defined accounting policy is applied.

Each accounting record name is composed of one or more sub-records which is in turn composed of multiple fields.

Table 43, Table 44, and Table 45 provide field descriptions.

Table 43: Policer Stats Field Descriptions

Field	Field Description
pid	PolicerId
statmode	PolicerStatMode
aod	AllOctetsDropped
aof	AllOctetsForwarded
aoo	AllOctetsOffered
apd	AllPacketsDropped
apf	AllPacketsForwarded
apo	AllPacketsOffered
hod	HighPriorityOctetsDropped
hof	HighPriorityOctetsForwarded
hoo	HighPriorityOctetsOffered
hpd	HighPriorityPacketsDropped
hpf	HighPriorityPacketsForwarded

Table 43: Policer Stats Field Descriptions (Continued)

Field	Field Description
hpo	HighPriorityPacketsOffered
iod	InProfileOctetsDropped
iof	InProfileOctetsForwarded
ioo	InProfileOctetsOffered
ipd	InProfilePacketsDropped
ipf	InProfilePacketsForwarded
ipo	InProfilePacketsOffered
lod	LowPriorityOctetsDropped
lof	LowPriorityOctetsForwarded
loo	LowPriorityOctetsOffered
lpd	LowPriorityPacketsDropped
lpf	LowPriorityPacketsForwarded
lpo	LowPriorityPacketsOffered
opd	OutOfProfilePacketsDropped
opf	OutOfProfilePacketsForwarded
opo	OutOfProfilePacketsOffered
ood	OutOfProfileOctetsDropped
oof	OutOfProfileOctetsForwarded
ooo	OutOfProfileOctetsOffered
uco	UncoloredOctetsOffered
v4po	IPv4PktsOffered *
v4oo	IPv4OctetsOffered *
v6po	IPv6PktsOffered *
v6oo	IPv6OctetsOffered *
v4pf	IPv4PktsForwarded *
v6pf	IPv6PktsForwarded *
v4pd	IPv4PktsDropped *
v6pd	IPv6PktsDropped *
v4of	IPv4OctetsForwarded *
v6of	IPv6OctetsForwarded *
v4od	IPv4OctetsDropped *
v6od	IPv6OctetsDropped *

* Enhanced Subscriber Management (ESM) only.

Table 44: Queue Group Record Types

Record Name	Description
qgone	PortQueueGroupOctetsNetworkEgress
qgosi	PortQueueGroupOctetsServiceIngress
qgose	PortQueueGroupOctetsServiceEgress
qgpne	PortQueueGroupPacketsNetworkEgress
qgpsi	PortQueueGroupPacketsServiceIngress
qgpse	PortQueueGroupPacketsServiceEgress
fpqgosi	ForwardingPlaneQueueGroupOctetsServiceIngress
fpqgoni	ForwardingPlaneQueueGroupOctetsNetworkIngress
fpqgpsi	ForwardingPlaneQueueGroupPacketsServiceIngress
fpqgpni	ForwardingPlaneQueueGroupPacketsNetworkIngress

Table 45: Queue Group Record Type Fields

Field	Field Description
data port	Port (used for port based Queue Groups)
member-port	LAGMemberPort (used for port based Queue Groups)
data slot	Slot (used for Forwarding Plane based Queue Groups)
forwarding-plane	ForwardingPlane (used for Forwarding Plane based Queue Groups)
queue-group	QueueGroupName
instance	QueueGroupInstance
qid	QueueId
pid	PolicerId
statmode	PolicerStatMode
aod...ucp	same as above

Accounting Files

When a policy has been created and applied to a service or network port, the accounting file is stored on the compact flash in a compressed XML file format. The router creates two directories on the compact flash to store the files. The following output displays a directory named **act-collect** that holds accounting files that are open and actively collecting statistics. The directory named **act** stores the files that have been closed and are awaiting retrieval.

```
ALA-1>file cf1:\# dir act*
12/19/2006 06:08a      <DIR>          act-collect
12/19/2006 06:08a      <DIR>          act

ALA-1>file cf1:\act-collect\ # dir
Directory of cf1:\act-collect#

12/23/2006 01:46a      <DIR>          .
12/23/2006 12:47a      <DIR>          ..
12/23/2006 01:46a                 112 act1111-20031223-014658.xml.gz
12/23/2006 01:38a                 197 act1212-20031223-013800.xml.gz
```

Accounting files always have the prefix **act** followed by the accounting policy ID, log ID and timestamp. The accounting log file naming and log file destination properties like rollover and retention are discussed in more detail in Log Files on page 383.

Design Considerations

The router has ample resources to support large scale accounting policy deployments. When preparing for an accounting policy deployment, verify that data collection, file rollover, and file retention intervals are properly tuned for the amount of statistics to be collected.

If the accounting policy collection interval is too brief there may be insufficient time to store the data from all the services within the specified interval. If that is the case, some records may be lost or incomplete. Interval time, record types, and number of services using an accounting policy are all factors that should be considered when implementing accounting policies.

The rollover and retention intervals on the log files and the frequency of file retrieval must also be considered when designing accounting policy deployments. The amount of data stored depends on the type of record collected, the number of services that are collecting statistics, and the collection interval that is used. For example, with a 1GB CF and using the default collection interval, the system is expected to hold 48 hours worth of billing information.

Overhead Reduction in Accounting: Custom Record

User Configurable Records

Users can define a collection of fields that make up a record. These records can be assigned to an accounting policy. These are user-defined records rather than being limited to pre-defined record types. The operator can select what queues and the counters within these queues that need to be collected. Refer to the predefined records containing a given field for XML field name of a custom record field.

Changed Statistics Only

A record is only generated if a significant change has occurred to the fields being written in a given the record. This capability applies to both ingress and egress records regardless on the method of delivery (such as RADIUS and XML). The capability also applies to Application Assurance records; however without an ability to specify different significant change values and per-field scope (for example, all fields of a custom record are collected if any activity was reported against any of the statistics that are part of the custom record).

Configurable Accounting Records

- XML Accounting Files for Service Accounting on page 402

XML Accounting Files for Service Accounting

The custom-record command in the config>log>accounting-policy context provide the flexibility to reduce the volume of data generated, network operators can define the record that needs to be collected. This can eliminate queues or selected counters within these queues that are not relevant for billing.

Record headers including information such as service-ID, SAP-ID, etc., will always be generated.

Significant Change Only Reporting

Another way to decrease accounting messaging related to overhead is to include only “active” objects in a periodical reporting. An “active object” in this context is an object which has seen a “significant” change in corresponding counters. A significant change is defined in terms of a cumulative value (the sum of all reference counters).

This concept is applicable to all methods used for gathering accounting information, such as an XML file and RADIUS, as well as to all applications using accounting, such as service-acct.

Accounting records are reported at the periodical intervals. This periodic reporting is extended with an internal filter which omits periodical updates for objects whose counter change experienced lower changes than a defined (configurable) threshold.

Specific to RADIUS accounting the **significant-change** command does not affect ACCT-STOP messages. ACCT-STOP messages will be always sent, regardless the amount of change of the corresponding host.

For Application Assurance records, a significant change of 1 in any field of a customized record (send a record if any field changed) is supported. When configured, if any statistic field records activity, an accounting record containing all fields will be collected.

Immediate Completion of Records

Record Completion for XML Accounting

AA Accounting per Forwarding Class

This feature allows the operator to report on protocol/application/app-group volume usage per forwarding class by adding a bitmap information representing the observed FC in the XML accounting files. In case the accounted object is deleted or changed, the latest information will be written in the XML file with a “final” tag indication in the record header.

Configuration Notes

This section describes logging configuration caveats.

- A file or filter cannot be deleted if it has been applied to a log.
- File IDs, syslog IDs, or SNMP trap groups must be configured before they can be applied to a log ID.
- A file ID can only be assigned to *either* one log ID *or* one accounting policy.
- Accounting policies must be configured in the **config>log** context before they can be applied to a service SAP or service interface, or applied to a network port.
- The **snmp-trap-id** must be the same as the **log-id**.

Configuring Logging with CLI

This section provides information to configure logging using the command line interface.

Topics in this section include:

- Log Configuration Overview on page 406
  → Log Types on page 406
- Basic Event Log Configuration on page 407
- Common Configuration Tasks on page 408
- Log Management Tasks on page 425

Log Configuration Overview

Configure logging parameters to save information in a log file or direct the messages to other devices. Logging does the following:

- Provides you with logging information for monitoring and troubleshooting.
- Allows you to select the types of logging information to be recorded.
- Allows you to assign a severity to the log messages.
- Allows you to select the source and target of logging information.

Log Types

Logs can be configured in the following contexts:

- Log file — Log files can contain log event message streams or accounting/billing information. Log file IDs are used to direct events, alarms/traps and debug information to their respective targets.
- SNMP trap groups — SNMP trap groups contain an IP address and community names which identify targets to send traps following specified events.
- Syslog — Information can be sent to a syslog host that is capable of receiving selected syslog messages from a network element.
- Event control — Configures a particular event or all events associated with an application to be generated or suppressed.
- Event filters — An event filter defines whether to forward or drop an event or trap based on match criteria.
- Accounting policies — An accounting policy defines the accounting records that will be created. Accounting policies can be applied to one or more service access points (SAPs).
- Event logs — An event log defines the types of events to be delivered to its associated destination.
- Event throttling rate — Defines the rate of throttling events.

Basic Event Log Configuration

The most basic log configuration must have the following:

- Log ID or accounting policy ID
- A log source
- A log destination

The following displays a log configuration example.

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
#------------------------------------------
echo "Log Configuration "
#------------------------------------------
        event-control "" 2001 generate critical
        file-id 1
            description "This is a test file-id."
            location cf1:
        exit
        file-id 2
            description "This is a test log."
            location cf1:
        exit
        snmp-trap-group 7
            trap-target 11.22.33.44 "snmpv2c" notify-community "public"
        exit
        log-id 2
            from main
            to file 2
        exit
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Common Configuration Tasks

The following sections are basic system tasks that must be performed.

- Configuring a File ID on page 410
- Configuring an Event Log on page 408
- Configuring an Accounting Policy on page 411
- Configuring Event Control on page 412
- Configuring a Log Filter on page 414
- Configuring an SNMP Trap Group on page 415
- Configuring a Syslog Target on page 422

Configuring an Event Log

A event log file contains information used to direct events, alarms, traps, and debug information to their respective destinations. One or more event sources can be specified. File IDs, SNMP trap groups, or syslog IDs must be configured before they can be applied to an event log ID.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure a log file:

CLI Syntax:

```
config>log
 log-id log-id
    description description-string
    filter filter-id
    from {[main] [security] [change] [debug-trace]}
    to console
    to file file-id
    to memory [size]
    to session
    to snmp [size]
    to syslog syslog-id}
    time-format {local|utc}
    no shutdown
```

The following displays a log file configuration example:

```
ALA-12>config>log>log-id# info
----------------------------------------------
...
     log-id 2
            description "This is a test log file."
            filter 1
            from main security
            to file 1
     exit
...
----------------------------------------------
ALA-12>config>log>log-id#
```

Configuring a File ID

To create a log file a file ID is defined, specifies the target CF drive, and the rollover and retention interval period for the file. The rollover interval is defined in minutes and determines how long a file will be used before it is closed and a new log file is created. The retention interval determines how long the file will be stored on the CF before it is deleted.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure a log file:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
    file-id log-file-id
        description description-string
        location cflash-id
        rollover minutes [retention hours]
```

The following displays a log file configuration example:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------
        file-id 1
            description "This is a log file."
            location cf1:
            rollover 600 retention 24
        exit
----------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Configuring an Accounting Policy

Before an accounting policy can be created a target log file must be created to collect the accounting records. The files are stored in system memory of compact flash (cf1:) in a compressed (tar) XML format and can be retrieved using FTP or SCP. See Configuring an Event Log on page 408 and Configuring a File ID on page 410.

Accounting policies must be configured in the **config>log** context before they can be applied to a service SAP or service interface, or applied to a network port.

The default accounting policy statement cannot be applied to LDP nor RSVP statistics collection records.

An accounting policy must define a record type and collection interval. Only one record type can be configured per accounting policy.

When creating accounting policies, one service accounting policy and one network accounting policy can be defined as default. If statistics collection is enabled on a SAP or network port and no accounting policy is applied, then the respective default policy is used. If no default policy is defined, then no statistics are collected unless a specifically defined accounting policy is applied.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure an accounting policy:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
 accounting-policy acct-policy-id interval minutes
    description description-string
    default
    record record-name
    to file log-file-id
    no shutdown
```

The following displays a accounting policy configuration example:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
     accounting-policy 5
          description "This is a test accounting policy."
          record service-ingress-packets
          to file 3
     exit
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Configuring Event Control

Use the following CLI syntax to configure event control. Note that the **throttle** parameter used in the **event-control** command syntax enables throttling for a specific event type. The **config>log>throttle-rate** command configures the number of events and interval length to be applied to all event types that have throttling enabled by this **event-control** command.

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
    event-control application-id [event-name|event-number] gen-
          erate [severity-level] [throttle]
    event-control application-id [event-name|event-number] sup-
          press
    throttle-rate events [interval seconds]
```

The following displays an event control configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
#------------------------------------------
echo "Log Configuration"
#------------------------------------------
        throttle-rate 500 interval 10
        event-control "oam" 2001 generate throttle
        event-control "ospf" 2001 suppress
        event-control "ospf" 2003 generate cleared
        event-control "ospf" 2014 generate critical
..
-------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log>filter#
```

Configuring Throttle Rate

This command configures the number of events and interval length to be applied to all event types that have throttling enabled by the **event-control** command.

Use the following CLI syntax to configure the throttle rate.

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log#
          throttle-rate events [interval seconds]
```

The following displays a throttle rate configuration example:

```
*A:gal171>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
        throttle-rate 500 interval 10
        event-control "bgp" 2001 generate throttle
----------------------------------------------
*A:gal171>config>log#
```

Configuring a Log Filter

The following displays a log filter configuration example:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
#------------------------------------------
echo "Log Configuration "
#------------------------------------------
        file-id 1
            description "This is our log file."
            location cf1:
            rollover 600 retention 24
        exit
        filter 1
            default-action drop
            description "This is a sample filter."
            entry 1
                action forward
                match
                    application eq "mirror"
                    severity eq critical
                exit
            exit
        exit
...
       log-id 2
            shutdown
            description "This is a test log file."
            filter 1
            from main security
            to file 1
        exit
...
------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Configuring an SNMP Trap Group

The associated *log-id* does not have to configured before a **snmp-trap-group** can be created, however, the **snmp-trap-group** must exist before the *log-id* can be configured to use it.

The following displays a basic SNMP trap group configuration example:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
      snmp-trap-group 2
         trap-target 10.10.10.104:5 "snmpv3" notify-community "coummunitystring"
        exit
...
     log-id 2
            description "This is a test log file."
            filter 1
            from main security
            to file 1
     exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

The following displays a SNMP trap group, log, and interface configuration examples:

```
A:SetupCLI>config>log# snmp-trap-group 44
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group# info
----------------------------------------------
            trap-target "xyz-test" address xx.xx.x.x snmpv2c notify-community "xyztesting"
            trap-target "test2" address xx.xx.xx.x snmpv2c notify-community "xyztesting"
----------------------------------------------
*A:SetupCLI>config>log>log-id# info
----------------------------------------------
            from main
            to snmp
----------------------------------------------
*A:SetupCLI>config>router# interface xyz-test
*A:SetupCLI>config>router>if# info
----------------------------------------------
            address xx.xx.xx.x/24
            port 1/1/1
----------------------------------------------
*A:SetupCLI>config>router>if#
```

Setting the Replay Parameter

For this example the replay parameter was set by a SNMP SET request for the trap-target address 10.10.10.3 which is bound to port-id 1/1/1.

```
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group 44
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group# info
----------------------------------------------
          trap-target "xyz-test" address 10.10.10.3 snmpv2c notify-community "xyztesting"
replay
           trap-target "test2" address 20.20.20.5 snmpv2c notify-community "xyztesting"
----------------------------------------------
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group#
```

In the following output, note that the **Replay** field changed from disabled to enabled.

```
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group# show log snmp-trap-group 44
===============================================================================
SNMP Trap Group 44
===============================================================================
Description : none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : xyz-test
Address     : 10.10.10.3
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : xyztesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : enabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : never
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : test2
Address     : 20.20.20.5
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : xyztesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : disabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : never
===============================================================================
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group#
```

Since no events are waiting to be replayed, the log displays as before.

```
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group# show log log-id 44
===============================================================================
Event Log 44
===============================================================================
SNMP Log contents  [size=100   next event=3819  (wrapped)]

3818 2008/04/22 23:35:39.89 UTC WARNING: SYSTEM #2009 Base IP
"Status of vRtrIfTable: router Base (index 1) interface xyz-test (index 35) changed
administrative state: inService, operational state: inService"

3817 2008/04/22 23:35:39.89 UTC WARNING: SNMP #2005 Base xyz-test
"Interface xyz-test is operational"

3816 2008/04/22 23:35:39.89 UTC WARNING: SNMP #2005 Base 1/1/1
"Interface 1/1/1 is operational"

3815 2008/04/22 23:35:39.71 UTC WARNING: SYSTEM #2009 Base CHASSIS
"Status of Mda 1/1 changed administrative state: inService, operational state: inService"

3814 2008/04/22 23:35:38.88 UTC MINOR: CHASSIS #2002 Base Mda 1/2
"Class MDA Module : inserted"

3813 2008/04/22 23:35:38.88 UTC MINOR: CHASSIS #2002 Base Mda 1/1
```

Shutdown In-Band Port

A **shutdown** on the in-band port that the trap-target address is bound to causes the route to that particular trap target to be removed from the route table. When the SNMP module is notified of this event, it marks the trap-target as inaccessible and saves the sequence-id of the first SNMP notification that will be missed by the trap-target.

Example:

```
config>log>snmp-trap-group# exit all
#configure port 1/1/1 shutdown
#
# tools perform log test-event
#
```

The **Replay from** field is updated with the sequence-id of the first event that will be replayed when the trap-target address is added back to the route table.

```
*A:SetupCLI# show log snmp-trap-group 44
===============================================================================
SNMP Trap Group 44
===============================================================================
Description : none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : xyz-test
Address     : 10.10.10.3
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : xyztesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : enabled
Replay from : event #3819
Last replay : never
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : test2
Address     : 20.20.20.5
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : xyztesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : disabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : never
===============================================================================
*A:SetupCLI#
```

A display of the event log indicates which trap targets are not accessible and waiting for notification replay and the sequence ID of the first notification that will be replayed. Note that if there are more missed events than the log size, the replay will actually start from the first available missed event.

```
*A:SetupCLI# show log log-id 44
===============================================================================
Event Log 44
===============================================================================
SNMP Log contents  [size=100   next event=3821  (wrapped)]
Cannot send to SNMP target address 10.10.10.3.
Waiting to replay starting from event #3819

3820 2008/04/22 23:41:28.00 UTC INDETERMINATE: LOGGER #2011 Base Event Test
"Test event has been generated with system object identifier tmnxModelSR12Reg.
System description: TiMOS-B-0.0.private both/i386 ALCATEL SR 7750 Copyright (c) 2000-2008
Alcatel-Lucent.
All rights reserved. All use subject to applicable license agreements.
Built on Tue Apr 22 14:41:18 PDT 2008 by test123 in /test123/ws/panos/main"

3819 2008/04/22 23:41:20.37 UTC WARNING: MC_REDUNDANCY #2022 Base operational state of
peer chan*
"The MC-Ring operational state of peer 2.2.2.2 changed to outOfService."

3818 2008/04/22 23:35:39.89 UTC WARNING: SYSTEM #2009 Base IP
"Status of vRtrIfTable: router Base (index 1) interface xyz-test (index 35) changed
administrative state: inService, operational state: inService"

3823 2008/04/22 23:41:49.82 UTC WARNING: SNMP #2005 Base xyz-test
"Interface xyz-test is operational"
```

No Shutdown Port

A **no shutdown** command executed on the in-band port to which the trap-target address is bound will cause the route to that trap target to be re-added to the route table. When the SNMP trap module is notified of this event, it resends the notifications that were missed while there was no route to the trap-target address.

Example:

```
configure# port 1/1/1 no shutdown
#
# tools perform log test-event
```

After the notifications have been replayed the **Replay from** field indicates n/a because there are no more notifications waiting to be replayed and the **Last replay** field timestamp has been updated.

```
*A:SetupCLI# show log snmp-trap-group 44
===============================================================================
SNMP Trap Group 44
===============================================================================
Description : none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : xyz-test
Address     : 10.10.10.3
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : xyztesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : enabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : 04/22/2008 18:52:36
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : test2
Address     : 20.20.20.5
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : xyztesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : disabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : never
===============================================================================
*A:SetupCLI#
```

A display of the event log shows that it is no longer waiting to replay notifications to one or more of its trap target addresses. An event message has been written to the logger that indicates the replay to the trap-target address has happened and displays the notification sequence ID of the first and last replayed notifications.

```
*A:SetupCLI# show log log-id 44
===============================================================================
Event Log 44
```

```
===============================================================================
SNMP Log contents  [size=100   next event=3827  (wrapped)]

3826 2008/04/22 23:42:02.15 UTC MAJOR: LOGGER #2015 Base Log-id 44
"Missed events 3819 to 3825 from Log-id 44 have been resent to SNMP notification target
address 10.10.10.3."

3825 2008/04/22 23:42:02.15 UTC INDETERMINATE: LOGGER #2011 Base Event Test
"Test event has been generated with system object identifier tmnxModelSR12Reg.
System description: TiMOS-B-0.0.private both/i386 ALCATEL SR 7750 Copyright (c) 2000-2008
Alcatel-Lucent.
All rights reserved. All use subject to applicable license agreements.
Built on Tue Apr 22 14:41:18 PDT 2008 by test123 in /test123/ws/panos/main"

3824 2008/04/22 23:41:49.82 UTC WARNING: SYSTEM #2009 Base IP
"Status of vRtrIfTable: router Base (index 1) interface xyz-test (index 35) changed admin-
istrative s
tate: inService, operational state: inService"

3823 2008/04/22 23:41:49.82 UTC WARNING: SNMP #2005 Base xyz-test
"Interface xyz-test is operational"
```

Configuring a Syslog Target

Log events cannot be sent to a syslog target host until a valid syslog ID exists.

The following displays a syslog configuration example:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
        syslog 1
            description "This is a syslog file."
            address 10.10.10.104
            facility user
            level warning
        exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Configuring an Accounting Custom Record

```
A:ALA-48>config>subscr-mgmt>acct-plcy# info
----------------------------------------------
..
            custom-record
                queue 1
                    i-counters
                        high-octets-discarded-count
                        low-octets-discarded-count
                        in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                    exit
                    e-counters
                        in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        in-profile-octets-discarded-count
                        out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        out-profile-octets-discarded-count
                    exit
                exit
                significant-change 20
                ref-queue all
                    i-counters
                        in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                    exit
                    e-counters
                        in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                    exit
                exit
..
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-48>config>subscr-mgmt>acct-plcy#
```

The following is an example custom record configuration.

```
Dut-C>config>log>acct-policy>cr# info
----------------------------------------------
                aa-specific
                    aa-sub-counters
                        short-duration-flow-count
                        medium-duration-flow-count
                        long-duration-flow-count
                        total-flow-duration
                        total-flows-completed-count
                    exit
                    from-aa-sub-counters
                        flows-admitted-count
                        flows-denied-count
                        flows-active-count
                        packets-admitted-count
                        octets-admitted-count
                        packets-denied-count
                        octets-denied-count
                        max-throughput-octet-count
```

```
                            max-throughput-packet-count
                            max-throughput-timestamp
                            forwarding-class
                        exit
                        to-aa-sub-counters
                            flows-admitted-count
                            flows-denied-count
                            flows-active-count
                            packets-admitted-count
                            octets-admitted-count
                            packets-denied-count
                            octets-denied-count
                            max-throughput-octet-count
                            max-throughput-packet-count
                            max-throughput-timestamp
                            forwarding-class
                        exit
                    exit
                    significant-change 1
                    ref-aa-specific-counter any
----------------------------------------------
```

Log Management Tasks

This section discusses the following logging tasks:

- Modifying a Log File on page 426
- Deleting a Log File on page 428
- Modifying a File ID on page 429
- Deleting a File ID on page 430
- Modifying a Syslog ID on page 431
- Deleting a Syslog on page 431
- Modifying an SNMP Trap Group on page 432
- Deleting an SNMP Trap Group on page 433
- Modifying a Log Filter on page 433
- Deleting a Log Filter on page 435
- Modifying Event Control Parameters on page 435
- Returning to the Default Event Control Configuration on page 436

Modifying a Log File

Use the following CLI syntax to modify a log file:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
    log-id log-id
       description description-string
       filter filter-id
       from {[main] [security] [change] [debug-trace]}
       to console
       to file file-id
       to memory [size]
       to session
       to snmp [size]
       to syslog syslog-id}
```

The following displays the current log configuration:

```
ALA-12>config>log>log-id# info
----------------------------------------------
...
    log-id 2
           description "This is a test log file."
           filter 1
           from main security
           to file 1
    exit
...
----------------------------------------------
ALA-12>config>log>log-id#
```

The following displays an example to modify log file parameters:

Example:
```
config# log
config>log# log-id 2
config>log>log-id# description "Chassis log file."
config>log>log-id# filter 2
config>log>log-id# from security
config>log>log-id# exit
```

The following displays the modified log file configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
     log-id 2
            description "Chassis log file."
            filter 2
            from security
            to file 1
     exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Deleting a Log File

The log ID must be shutdown first before it can be deleted. In a previous example, **file 1** is associated with **log-id 2**.

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
     file-id 1
            description "LocationTest."
            location cf1:
            rollover 600 retention 24
        exit
...
     log-id 2
            description "Chassis log file."
            filter 2
            from security
            to file 1
     exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Use the following CLI syntax to delete a log file:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
    no log-id log-id
       shutdown
```

The following displays an example to delete a log file:

Example:
```
config# log
config>log# log-id 2
config>log>log-id# shutdown
config>log>log-id# exit
config>log# no log-id 2
```

Modifying a File ID

NOTE: When the **file-id** location parameter is modified, log files are not written to the new location until a rollover occurs or the log is manually cleared. A rollover can be forced by using the **clear>log** command. Subsequent log entries are then written to the new location. If a rollover does not occur or the log not cleared, the old location remains in effect.

Use the following CLI syntax to modify a log file:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
 file-id log-file-id
    description description-string
    location [cflash-id]
    rollover minutes [retention hours]
```

The following displays the current log configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------
        file-id 1
            description "This is a log file."
            location cf1:
            rollover 600 retention 24
        exit
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

The following displays an example to modify log file parameters:

Example:
```
config# log
config>log# file-id 1
config>log>file-id# description "LocationTest."
config>log>file-id# rollover 2880 retention 500
config>log>file-id# exit
```

The following displays the file modifications:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
       file-id 1
            description "LocationTest."
            location
            rollover 2880 retention 500
        exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Deleting a File ID

NOTE: All references to the file ID must be deleted before the file ID can be removed.

Use the following CLI syntax to delete a log ID:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
 no file-id log-file-id
```

The following displays an example to delete a file ID:

Example:
```
config>log# no file-id 1
```

Modifying a Syslog ID

NOTE: All references to the syslog ID must be deleted before the syslog ID can be removed.

Use the following CLI syntax to modify a syslog ID parameters:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
 syslog syslog-id
    description description-string
    address ip-address
    log-prefix log-prefix-string
    port port
    level {emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|in-
          fo|debug}
    facility syslog-facility
```

The following displays an example of the syslog ID modifications:

Example:
```
config# log
config>log# syslog 1
config>log>syslog$ description "Test syslog."
config>log>syslog# address 10.10.0.91
config>log>syslog# facility mail
config>log>syslog# level info
```

The following displays the syslog configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
        syslog 1
            description "Test syslog."
            address 10.10.10.91
            facility mail
            level info
        exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Deleting a Syslog

Use the following CLI syntax to delete a syslog file:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
 no syslog syslog-id
```

The following displays an example to delete a syslog ID:

Example: config# log
config>log# no syslog **1**

Modifying an SNMP Trap Group

Use the following CLI syntax to modify an SNMP trap group:

CLI Syntax: config>log
snmp-trap-group log-id
trap-target name [address ip-address] [port port] [snmpv1|snmpv2c| snmpv3] notify-community communityName |snmpv3SecurityName [security-level {no-auth-no-privacy|auth-no-privacy|privacy}]

The following displays the current SNMP trap group configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
      snmp-trap-group 10
         trap-target 10.10.10.104:5 "snmpv3" notify-community "coummunitystring"
        exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

The following displays an example of the command usage to modify an SNMP trap group:

Example: config# log
config>log# snmp-trap-group 10
config>log>snmp-trap-group# no trap-target 10.10.10.104:5
config>log>snmp-trap-group# snmp-trap-group# trap-target 10.10.0.91:1 snmpv2c notify-community "com1"

The following displays the SNMP trap group configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
        snmp-trap-group 10
            trap-target 10.10.0.91:1 "snmpv2c" notify-community "com1"
        exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Deleting an SNMP Trap Group

Use the following CLI syntax to delete a trap target and SNMP trap group:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
    no snmp-trap-group log-id
       no trap-target name
```

The following displays the SNMP trap group configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
       snmp-trap-group 10
           trap-target 10.10.0.91:1 "snmpv2c" notify-community "com1"
       exit
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

The following displays an example to delete a trap target and an SNMP trap group.

Example:
```
config>log# snmp-trap-group 10
config>log>snmp-trap-group# no trap-target 10.10.0.91:1
config>log>snmp-trap-group# exit
config>log# no snmp-trap-group 10
```

Modifying a Log Filter

Use the following CLI syntax to modify a log filter:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
    filter filter-id
       default-action {drop|forward}
       description description-string
       entry entry-id
          action {drop|forward}
          description description-string
          match
             application {eq|neq} application-id
             number {eq|neq|lt|lte|gt|gte} event-id
             router {eq|neq} router-instance [regexp]
             severity {eq|neq|lt|lte|gt|gte} severity-level
             subject {eq|neq} subject [regexp]
```

The following output displays the current log filter configuration:

```
ALA-12>config>log# info
#------------------------------------------
echo "Log Configuration "
#------------------------------------------
...
        filter 1
            default-action drop
            description "This is a sample filter."
            entry 1
                action forward
                match
                    application eq "mirror"
                    severity eq critical
                exit
            exit
        exit
...
------------------------------------------
ALA-12>config>log#
```

The following displays an example of the log filter modifications:

Example:
```
config# log
config>log# filter 1
config>log>filter# description "This allows <n>."
config>log>filter# default-action forward
config>log>filter# entry 1
config>log>filter>entry$ action drop
config>log>filter>entry# match
config>log>filter>entry>match# application eq user
config>log>filter>entry>match# number eq 2001
config>log>filter>entry>match# no severity
config>log>filter>entry>match# exit
```

The following displays the log filter configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log>filter# info
----------------------------------------
...
        filter 1
            description "This allows <n>."
            entry 1
                action drop
                match
                    application eq "user"
                    number eq 2001
                exit
            exit
        exit
...
----------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log>filter#
```

Deleting a Log Filter

Use the following CLI syntax to delete a log filter:

CLI Syntax: `config>log`
`no filter` *`filter-id`*

The following output displays the current log filter configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log>filter# info
----------------------------------------
...
        filter 1
            description "This allows <n>."
            entry 1
                action drop
                match
                    application eq "user"
                    number eq 2001
                exit
            exit
        exit
...
----------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log>filter#
```

The following displays an example of the command usage to delete a log filter:

Example: `config>log# no filter 1`

Modifying Event Control Parameters

Use the following CLI syntax to modify event control parameters:

CLI Syntax: `config>log`
`event-control application-id [event-name|event-number] generate[severity-level] [throttle]`
`event-control application-id [event-name|event-number] suppress`

The following displays the current event control configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
    event-control "" 2014 generate critical
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

The following displays an example of an event control modifications:

Example:
```
config# log
        config>log# event-control  2014 suppress
```

The following displays the log filter configuration:

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info
----------------------------------------------
...
        event-control "" 2014 suppress
...
----------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Returning to the Default Event Control Configuration

The **no** form of the **event-control** command returns modified values back to the default values.

Use the following CLI syntax to modify event control parameters:

CLI Syntax:
```
config>log
 no event-control application [event-name |event-nunmber]
```

The following displays an example of the command usage to return to the default values:

Example:
```
config# log
        config>log# no event-control "" 2001
        config>log# no event-control "" 2002
        config>log# no event-control "" 2014
```

```
A:ALA-12>config>log# info detail
----------------------------------------------
#----------------------------------------
echo "Log Configuration"
#----------------------------------------
        event-control "" 2001 generate minor
        event-control "" 2002 generate warning
        event-control "" 2003 generate warning
        event-control "" 2004 generate critical
        event-control "" 2005 generate warning
        event-control "" 2006 generate warning
        event-control "" 2007 generate warning
        event-control "" 2008 generate warning
        event-control "" 2009 generate warning
```

```
        event-control "" 2010 generate warning
        event-control "" 2011 generate warning
        event-control "" 2012 generate warning
        event-control "" 2013 generate warning
        event-control "" 2014 generate warning
        event-control "" 2015 generate critical
        event-control "" 2016 generate warning
...
-------------------------------------------
A:ALA-12>config>log#
```

Log Command Reference

Command Hierarchies

- Log Command Reference on page 439
  - → Accounting Policy Commands on page 440
  - → Custom Record Commands on page 441
  - → File ID Commands on page 444
  - → Event Filter Commands on page 444
  - → Event Handling System (EHS) Commands on page 445
  - → Event Trigger Commands on page 445
  - → Log ID Commands on page 446
  - → SNMP Trap Group Commands on page 446
  - → Syslog Commands on page 447
- Show Commands on page 448
- Clear Command on page 448

Log Configuration Commands

config
- **log**
  - **app-route-notifications**
    - **cold-start-wait** *seconds*
    - **no cold-start-wait**
    - **route-recovery-wait** *seconds*
    - **no route-recovery-wait**
  - **event-control** *application-id* [*event-name* | *event-number*] [**generate** [*severity-level*] [**throttle**] [**specific-throttle-rate** *events-limit* **interval** *seconds* | **disable-specific-throttle**]
  - **event-control** *application-id* [*event-name* | *event-number*] **suppress**
  - **no event-control** *application* [*event-name* | *event-number*]
  - [**no**] **event-damping**
  - **route-preference primary** {**inband** | **outband**} **secondary** {**inband** | **outband** | **none**}
  - **no route-preference**
  - **throttle-rate** *events* [**interval** *seconds*]
  - **no throttle-rate**

Accounting Policy Commands

config
- **log**
  - **collection-interval** *minutes*
  - **no collection-interval**
  - **accounting-policy** *acct-policy-id*
  - **no accounting-policy** *acct-policy-id*
    - [**no**] **default**
    - **description** *description-string*
    - **no description**
    - [**no**] **include-router-info**
    - [**no**] **include-system-info**
    - **record** *record-name*
    - **no record**
    - [**no**] **shutdown**
    - **to file** *log-file-id*

Custom Record Commands

```
config
    — log
        — accounting-policy acct-policy-id [interval minutes]
        — no accounting-policy acct-policy-id
            — collection-interval minutes
            — no collection-interval
            — [no] custom-record
                — [no] aa-specific
                    — [no] flows-active-count [all]
                    — [no] flows-admitted-count
                    — [no] flows-denied-count
                    — [no] forwarding-class
                    — [no] octets-admitted-count
                    — [no] octets-denied-count
                    — [no] packets-admitted-count
                    — [no] packets-denied-count
                — to-aa-sub-counters [all]
                — to-aa-sub-counters
                    — [no] flows-active-count [all]
                    — [no] flows-admitted-count
                    — [no] flows-denied-count
                    — [no] forwarding-class
                    — [no] octets-admitted-count
                    — [no] octets-denied-count
                    — [no] packets-admitted-count
                    — [no] packets-denied-count
                — e-counters [all]
                — no e-counters
                    — [no] in-profile-octets-discarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-packets-discarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-octets-discarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-packets-discarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                — i-counters [all]
                — no i-counters
                    — [no] in-profile-octets-discarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-packets-discarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-octets-discarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-packets-discarded-count
                    — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
            — [no] queue queue-id
                — e-counters [all]
                — no e-counters
                    — [no] in-profile-octets-discarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                    — [no] in-profile-packets-discarded-count
```

```
                        — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                    — i-counters [all]
                    — no i-counters
                        — [no] all-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] all-packets-offered-count
                        — [no] high-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] high-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] high-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] high-packets-offered-count
                        — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] low-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] low-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] low-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] low-packets-offered-count
                        — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] uncoloured-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] uncoloured-packets-offered-count
            — ref-aa-specific-counter any
            — no ref-aa-specific-counter
            — ref-override-counter ref-override-counter-id
            — ref-override-counter all
            — no ref-override-counter
                    — e-counters [all]
                    — no e-counters
                        — [no] in-profile-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] in-profile-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                    — i-counters [all]
                    — no i-counters
                        — [no] all-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] all-packets-offered-count
                        — [no] high-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] high-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] high-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] high-packets-offered-count
                        — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] low-octets-discarded-count
                        — [no] low-packets-discarded-count
                        — [no] low-octets-offered-count
                        — [no] low-packets-offered-count
                        — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                        — [no] uncoloured-octets-offered-count
```

```
                    — [no] uncoloured-packets-offered-count
— ref-queue queue-id
— ref-queue all
— no ref-queue
        — e-counters [all]
        — no e-counters
                — [no] in-profile-octets-discarded-count
                — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                — [no] in-profile-packets-discarded-count
                — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                — [no] out-profile-octets-discarded-count
                — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                — [no] out-profile-packets-discarded-count
                — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
        — i-counters [all]
        — no i-counters
                — [no] all-octets-offered-count
                — [no] all-packets-offered-count
                — [no] high-octets-discarded-count
                — [no] high-octets-offered-count
                — [no] high-packets-discarded-count
                — [no] high-packets-offered-count
                — [no] in-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                — [no] in-profile-packets-forwarded-count
                — [no] low-octets-discarded-count
                — [no] low-packets-discarded-count
                — [no] low-octets-offered-count
                — [no] low-packets-offered-count
                — [no] out-profile-octets-forwarded-count
                — [no] out-profile-packets-forwarded-count
— significant-change delta
— no significant-change
```

File ID Commands

```
config
    — log
        — [no] file-id log-file-id
            — description description-string
            — no description
            — location cflash-id [backup-cflash-id]
            — rollover minutes [retention hours]
            — no rollover
```

Event Filter Commands

Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Services Guide for information about configuring log filters in a VPRN service.

```
config
    — log
        — [no] filter filter-id
            — default-action {drop | forward}
            — no default-action
            — description description-string
            — no description
            — [no] entry entry-id
                — action {drop | forward}
                — no action
                — description description-string
                — no description
                — [no] match
                    — application {eq | neq} application-id
                    — no application
                    — message {eq | neq} pattern pattern [regexp]
                    — no message
                    — number {eq | neq | lt | lte | gt | gte} event-id
                    — no number
                    — router {eq | neq} router-instance [regexp]
                    — no router
                    — severity {eq | neq | lt | lte | gt | gte} severity-level
                    — no severity
                    — subject {eq | neq} subject [regexp]
                    — no subject
```

Event Handling System (EHS) Commands

```
config
    — log
        — event-handling
            — [no] handler event-handler-name
                — action-list
                    — [no] entry entry-id
                        — description description-string
                        — no description
                        — min-delay <[1..604800]>
                        — no min-delay
                        — [no] script-policy script-policy-name [owner
                          owner-name]
                        — no script-policy
                — description description-string
                — no description
                — [no] shutdown
```

Event Trigger Commands

```
config
    — log
        — event-trigger
            — [no] event application-id event-name-id
                — description description-string
                — no description
                — [no] shutdown
                — [no] trigger-entry entry-id
                    — event-handler event-handler-name
                    — [no] event-handler
                    — description description-string
                    — no description
                    — log-filter filter-id
                    — [no] log-filter
```

Log ID Commands

Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Services Guide for information about configuring logs in a VPRN service.

config
- **log**
  - [**no**] **log-id** *log-id*
    - **description** *description-string*
    - **no description**
    - **filter** *filter-id*
    - **no filter**
    - **from** {[**main**] [**security**] [**change**] [**debug-trace**]}
    - **no from**
    - [**no**] **shutdown**
    - **time-format** {**local** | **utc**}
    - **to console**
    - **to file** *log-file-id*
    - **to memory** [*size*]
    - **to session**
    - **to snmp** [*size*]
    - **to syslog** *syslog-id*

SNMP Trap Group Commands

Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Services Guide for information about configuring SNMP trap groups in a VPRN service.

config
- **log**
  - [**no**] **snmp-trap-group** *log-id*
    - **description** *description-string*
    - **no description**
    - **trap-target** *name* [**address** *ip-address*] [**port** *port*] [**snmpv1** | **snmpv2c** | **snmpv3**] **notify-community** *communityName* | *snmpv3SecurityName* [**security-level** {**no-auth-no-privacy** | **auth-no-privacy** | **privacy**}][**replay**]
    - **no trap-target** *name*

Syslog Commands

Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Services Guide for information about configuring syslogs in a VPRN service.

config
- **log**
  - [**no**] **syslog** *syslog-id*
    - **address** *ip-address*
    - **no address**
    - **description** *description-string*
    - **no description**
    - **facility** *syslog-facility*
    - **no facility**
    - **level** {**emergency** | **alert** | **critical** | **error** | **warning** | **notice** | **info** | **debug**}
    - **no level**
    - **log-prefix** *log-prefix-string*
    - **no log-prefix**
    - **port** *port*
    - **no port**

Show Commands

Refer to the 7x50 SR OS Services Guide for information about log show routines for VPRN services.

show
- **log**
  - **accounting-policy** [acct-*policy-id*] [**access** | **network**]
  - **accounting-records**
  - **applications**
  - **event-control** [**application** [*event-name* | *event-number*]]
  - **event-handling**
    - **handler** [*handler-name*]
    - **handler detail**
  - **file-id** [log-*file-id*]
  - **filter-id** [*filter-id*]
  - **log-collector**
  - **log-id** [*log-id*] [**severity** *severity-level*] [**application** *application*] [**sequence** *from-seq* [*to-seq*]] [**count** *count*] [**router** *router-instance* [**expression**] [**subject** *subject* [**regexp**]] [**ascending**|**descending**] [**message** *format* [**msg-regexp**]]
  - **snmp-trap-group** [*log-id*]
  - **syslog** [*syslog-id*]

Clear Command

clear
- **log** *log-id*

Configuration Commands

Generic Commands

description

Syntax **description** *string*
no description

Context config>log>filter
config>log>filte>entry
config>log>log-id
config>log>accounting-policy
config>log>event-handling>handler
config>log>event-handling>handler>action-list>entry
config>log>event-trigger>event
config>log>event-trigger>event>trigger-entry
config>log>file-id
config>log>syslog
config>log>snmp-trap-group

Description This command creates a text description stored in the configuration file for a configuration context. The **description** command associates a text string with a configuration context to help identify the content in the configuration file.

The **no** form of the command removes the string from the configuration.

Default No text description is associated with this configuration. The string must be entered.

Parameters *string* — The description can contain a string of up to 80 characters composed of printable, 7-bit ASCII characters. If the string contains special characters (#, $, spaces, etc.), the entire string must be enclosed within double quotes.

shutdown

Syntax [**no**] **shutdown**

Context config>log>log-id
config>log>accounting-policy
config>log>event-handling>handler
config>log>event-trigger>event

Description This command administratively disables an entity. When disabled, an entity does not change, reset, or remove any configuration settings or statistics. The operational state of the entity is disabled as well

as the operational state of any entities contained within. Many objects must be shut down before they may be deleted.

The **no** form of this command administratively enables an entity.

Default **no shutdown**

Special Cases **log-id** *log-id* — When a *log-id* is shut down, no events are collected for the entity. This leads to the loss of event data.

accounting-policy *accounting Policy* — When an accounting policy is shut down, no accounting data is written to the destination log ID. Counters in the billing data reflect totals, not increments, so when the policy is re-enabled (**no shutdown**) the counters include the data collected during the period the policy was shut down.

app-route-notifications

Syntax **app-route-notifications**

Context config>log

Description Specific system applications in SR OS can take action based on a route to certain IP destinations being available. This CLI branch contains configuration related to these route availability notifications. A delay can be configured between the time that a route is determined as available in the CPM, and the time that the application is notified of the available route. For example, this delay may be used to increase the chances that other system modules (such as IOMs/XCMs/MDAs/XMAs) are fully programmed with the new route before the application takes action. Currently, the only application that acts upon these *route available* or *route changed* notifications with their configurable delays is the SNMP replay feature, which receives notifications of route availability to the SNMP trap receiver destination IP address.

cold-start-wait

Syntax **cold-start-wait** *seconds*
no cold-start-wait

Context config>log>app-route-notifications

Description The time delay that must pass before notifying specific CPM applications that a route is available after a cold reboot.

Default no cold-start-wait

Parameters *seconds* — **Values**seconds: 1 – 300

Default 0

route-recovery-wait

Syntax **route-recovery-wait** *seconds*
no route-recovery-wait

Context config>log>app-route-notifications

Description The time delay that must pass before notifying specific CPM applications after the recovery or change of a route during normal operation.

Default no route-recovery-wait

Parameters *seconds* — **Values**seconds: 1 – 100

Default 0

event-control

Syntax **event-control** *application-id* [*event-name* | *event-number*] [**generate**][*severity-level*] [**throttle**] [**specific-throttle-rate** *events-limit* **interval** *seconds* | **disable-specific-throttle**]
event-control *application-id* [*event-name* | *event-number*] **suppress**
no event-control *application* [*event-name* | *event-number*]

Context config>log

Description This command is used to specify that a particular event or all events associated with an application is either generated or suppressed.

Events are generated by an application and contain an event number and description explaining the cause of the event. Each event has a default designation which directs it to be generated or suppressed.

Events are generated with a default severity level that can be modified by using the *severity-level* option.

Events that are suppressed by default are typically used for debugging purposes. Events are suppressed at the time the application requests the event's generation. No event log entry is generated regardless of the destination. While this feature can save processor resources, there may be a negative effect on the ability to troubleshoot problems if the logging entries are squelched. In reverse, indiscriminate application may cause excessive overhead.

The rate of event generation can be throttled by using the **throttle** parameter.

The **no** form of the command reverts the parameters to the default setting for events for the application or a specific event within the application. The severity, generate, suppress, and throttle options will also be reset to the initial values.

Default Each event has a set of default settings. To display a list of all events and the current configuration use the **event-control** command.

Parameters *application-id* — The application whose events are affected by this event control filter.

Default None, this parameter must be explicitly specified.

Values A valid application name. To display a list of valid application names, use the **applications** command. Some examples of valid applications are:

bgp, cflowd, chassis, debug, igmp, lldp, mirror, ospf, pim, port, snmp, system, user, vrtr

event-name | *event-number* — To generate, suppress, or revert to default for a single event, enter the specific number or event short name. If no event number or name is specified, the command applies to all events in the application. To display a list of all event short names use the **event-control** command.

Default none

Values A valid event name or event number.

generate — Specifies that logger event is created when this event occurs. The generate keyword can be used with two optional parameters, *severity-level* and **throttle**.

Default generate

severity-name — An ASCII string representing the severity level to associate with the specified generated events

Default The system assigned severity name

Values One of: cleared, indeterminate, critical, major, minor, warning.

throttle — Specifies whether or not events of this type will be throttled.
By default, event throttling is on for most event types.

suppress — This keyword indicates that the specified events will not be logged. If the **suppress** keyword is not specified then the events are generated by default.

Default generate

specific-throttle-rate *events-limit* **—** The log event throttling rate can be configured independently for each log event using this keyword. This specific-throttle-rate overrides the globally configured throttle rate (**configure>log>throttle-rate**) for the specific log event.

Values 1 — 20000

interval *seconds* **—** specifies the number of seconds that the specific throttling intervals lasts.

Values 1 — 1200

disable-specific-throttle — Specifies to disable the **specific-throttle-rate**.

event-damping

Syntax [**no**] **event-damping**

Context config>log

Description This command allows the user to set the event damping algorithm to suppress QoS or filter change events.

Note that while this event damping is original behavior for some modules such as service manager, QoS, and filters it can result in the NMS system database being out of sync because of missed change events. On the other hand, if the damping is disabled (**no event-damping**), it may take much longer to **exec** a large CLI configuration file after system bootup.

route-preference

Syntax **route-preference primary** {**inband** | **outband**} **secondary** {**inband** | **outband** | **none**}
no route-preference

Context config>log

Description This command specifies the primary and secondary routing preference for traffic generated for SNMP notifications and syslog messages. If the remote destination is not reachable through the routing context specified by primary route preference then the secondary routing preference will be attempted.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default values.

Default no route-preference

Parameters **primary —** Specifies the primary routing preference for traffic generated for SNMP notifications and syslog messages.

Default outband

secondary — Specifies the secondary routing preference for traffic generated for SNMP notifications and syslog messages. The routing context specified by the secondary route preference will be attempted if the remote destination was not reachable by the primary routing preference, specified by primary route preference. The value specified for the secondary routing preference must be distinct from the value for primary route preference.

Default inband

inband — Specifies that the logging utility will attempt to use the base routing context to send SNMP notifications and syslog messages to remote destinations.

outband — Specifies that the logging utility will attempt to use the management routing context to send SNMP notifications and syslog messages to remote destinations.

none — Specifies that no attempt will be made to send SNMP notifications and syslog messages to remote destinations.

Log File Commands

file-id

Syntax [**no**] **file-id** *file-id*

Context config>log

Description This command creates the context to configure a file ID template to be used as a destination for an event log or billing file.

This command defines the file location and characteristics that are to be used as the destination for a log event message stream or accounting/billing information. The file defined in this context is subsequently specified in the **to** command under **log-id** or **accounting-policy** to direct specific logging or billing source streams to the file destination.

A file ID can only be assigned to either *one* **log-id** or *one* **accounting-policy**. It cannot be reused for multiple instances. A file ID and associated file definition must exist for each log and billing file that must be stored in the file system.

A file is created when the file ID defined in this command is selected as the destination type for a specific log or accounting record. Log files are collected in a "log" directory. Accounting files are collected in an "act" directory.

The file names for a log are created by the system as summarized in the table below:

File Type	File Name
Log File	`log`*`llff-timestamp`*
Accounting File	`act`*`aaff-timestamp`*

Where:

- *ll* is the *log-id*
- *aa* is the accounting *policy-id*
- *ff* is the file-id
- The *timestamp* is the actual timestamp when the file is created. The format for the timestamp is *yyyymmdd-hhmmss* where:
  - *yyyy* is the year (for example, 2006)
  - *mm* is the month number (for example, 12 for December)
  - *dd* is the day of the month (for example, 03 for the 3rd of the month)
  - *hh* is the hour of the day in 24 hour format (for example, 04 for 4 a.m.)
  - *mm* is the minutes (for example, 30 for 30 minutes past the hour)
  - *ss* is the number of seconds (for example, 14 for 14 seconds)
- The accounting file is compressed and has a gz extension.

When initialized, each file will contain:

- The *log-id* description.
- The time the file was opened.
- The reason the file was created.
- If the event log file was closed properly, the sequence number of the last event stored on the log is recorded.

If the process of writing to a log file fails (for example, the compact flash card is full) and if a backup location is not specified or fails, the log file will not become operational even if the compact flash card is replaced. Enter either a **clear log** command or a **shutdown**/**no shutdown** command to reinitialize the file.

If the primary location fails (for example, the compact flash card fills up during the write process), a trap is sent and logging continues to the specified backup location. This can result in truncated files in different locations.

The **no** form of the command removes the *file-id* from the configuration. A *file-id* can only be removed from the configuration if the file is not the designated output for a log destination. The actual file remains on the file system.

Default No default file IDs are defined.

Parameters *file-id* — The file identification number for the file, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 99

location

Syntax **location** *cflash-id* [*backup-cflash-id*]
no location

Context config>log>file *file-id*

Description This command specifies the primary location where the log or billing file will be created.

The **location** command is optional. If the location command not explicitly configured, log files will be created on cf1: and accounting files will be created on cf2: without overflow onto other devices. Generally, cf3: is reserved for system files (configurations, images, etc.).

When multiple location commands are entered in a single file ID context, the last command overwrites the previous command.

When the location of a file ID that is associated with an active log ID is changed, the log events are not immediately written to the new location. The new location does not take affect until the log is rolled over either because the rollover period has expired or a **clear log** *log-id* command is entered to manually rollover the log file.

When creating files, the primary location is used as long as there is available space. If no space is available, an attempt is made to delete unnecessary files that are past their retention date.

If sufficient space is not available an attempt is made to remove the oldest to newest closed log or accounting files. After each file is deleted, the system attempts to create the new file.

A medium severity trap is issued to indicate that a compact flash is either not available or that no space is available on the specified flash and that the backup location is being used.

A high priority alarm condition is raised if none of the configured compact flash devices for this file ID are present or if there is insufficient space available. If space does becomes available, then the alarm condition will be cleared.

Use the **no** form of this command to revert to default settings.

Default Log files are created on cf1: and accounting files are created on .

Parameters *cflash-id* — Specify the primary location.

Values cflash-id: cf1:

rollover

Syntax **rollover** *minutes* [**retention** *hours*]
no rollover

Context config>log>file *file-id*

Description This command configures how often an event or accounting log is rolled over or partitioned into a new file.

An event or accounting log is actually composed of multiple, individual files. The system creates a new file for the log based on the **rollover** time, expressed in minutes.

The **retention** option, expressed in hours, allows you to modify the default time to keep the file in the system. The retention time is based on the rollover time of the file.

When multiple **rollover** commands for a *file-id* are entered, the last command overwrites the previous command.

Default **rollover 1440 retention 12**

Parameters *minutes* — The rollover time, in minutes.

Values 5 — 10080

retention hours. The retention period in hours, expressed as a decimal integer. The retention time is based on the time creation time of the file. The file becomes a candidate for removal once the creation datestamp + rollover time + retention time is less than the current timestamp.

Default 12

Values 1 — 500

Log Filter Commands

filter

Syntax [**no**] **filter** *filter-id*

Context config>log

Description This command creates a context for an event filter. An event filter specifies whether to forward or drop an event or trap based on the match criteria.

Filters are configured in the **filter** *filter-id* context and then applied to a log in the **log-id** *log-id* context. Only events for the configured log source streams destined to the log ID where the filter is applied are filtered.

Any changes made to an existing filter, using any of the sub-commands, are immediately applied to the destinations where the filter is applied.

The **no** form of the command removes the filter association from log IDs which causes those logs to forward all events.

Default No event filters are defined.

Parameters filter-id — The filter ID uniquely identifies the filter.

Values 1 — 1000

default-action

Syntax **default-action** {**drop** | **forward**}
no default-action

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*

Description The default action specifies the action that is applied to events when no action is specified in the event filter entries or when an event does not match the specified criteria.

When multiple **default-action** commands are entered, the last command overwrites the previous command.

The **no** form of the command reverts the default action to the default value (forward).

Default **default-action forward** — The events which are not explicitly dropped by an event filter match are forwarded.

Parameters **drop —** The events which are not explicitly forwarded by an event filter match are dropped.

forward — The events which are not explicitly dropped by an event filter match are forwarded.

Log Filter Entry Commands

action

Syntax

Syntax **action** {**drop** | **forward**}
no action

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*>entry *entry-id*

Description This command specifies a drop or forward action associated with the filter entry. If neither **drop** nor **forward** is specified, the **default-action** will be used for traffic that conforms to the match criteria. This could be considered a No-Op filter entry used to explicitly exit a set of filter entries without modifying previous actions.

Multiple action statements entered will overwrite previous actions.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified **action** statement.

Default Action specified by the **default-action** command will apply.

Parameters **drop —** Specifies packets matching the entry criteria will be dropped.

forward — Specifies packets matching the entry criteria will be forwarded.

entry

Syntax [**no**] **entry** *entry-id*

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*

Description This command is used to create or edit an event filter entry. Multiple entries may be created using unique *entry-id* numbers. The TiMOS implementation exits the filter on the first match found and executes the action in accordance with the action command.

Comparisons are performed in an ascending entry ID order. When entries are created, they should be arranged sequentially from the most explicit entry to the least explicit. Matching ceases when a packet matches an entry. The entry action is performed on the packet, either drop or forward. To be considered a match, the packet must meet all the conditions defined in the entry.

An entry may not have any match criteria defined (in which case, everything matches) but must have at least the keyword action for it to be considered complete. Entries without the action keyword will be considered incomplete and are rendered inactive.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified entry from the event filter. Entries removed from the event filter are immediately removed from all log-id's where the filter is applied.

Default No event filter entries are defined. An entry must be explicitly configured.

Parameters *entry-id.* The entry ID uniquely identifies a set of match criteria corresponding action within a filter. Entry ID values should be configured in staggered increments so you can insert a new entry in an existing policy without renumbering the existing entries.

Values 1 — 999

Log Filter Entry Match Commands

match

Syntax [**no**] **match**

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*>entry *entry-id*

Description This command creates context to enter/edit match criteria for a filter entry. When the match criteria is satisfied, the action associated with the entry is executed.

If more than one match parameter (within one match statement) is specified, then all the criteria must be satisfied (AND functional) before the action associated with the match is executed.

Use the **application** command to display a list of the valid applications.

Match context can consist of multiple match parameters (application, event-number, severity, subject), but multiple **match** statements cannot be entered per entry.

The **no** form of the command removes the match criteria for the *entry-id*.

Default No match context is defined.

application

Syntax **application** {**eq | neq**} *application-id*
no application

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*>entry *entry-id*>match

Description This command adds an OS application as an event filter match criterion.

An OS application is the software entity that reports the event. Applications include IP, MPLS, OSPF, CLI, SERVICES etc. Only one application can be specified. The latest **application** command overwrites the previous command.

The **no** form of the command removes the application as a match criterion.

Default **no application** — No application match criterion is specified.

Parameters **eq** | **neq —** The operator specifying the type of match. Valid operators are listed in the table below.

Operator	Notes
eq	equal to
neq	not equal to

application-id — The application name string.

Values application_assurance, aps, atm, bgp, cflowd, chassis, debug, dhcp, dhcps, diameter, dynsvc, efm_oam, elmi, ering, eth_cfm, etun, fiter, gsmp, igh, igmp,

igmp_snooping, ip, ipsec, isis, l2tp, lag, ldp, li, lldp, logger, mcpath, mc_redundancy, mirror, mld, mld_snooping, mpls, mpls_tp, msdp, nat, ntp, oam, open_flow, ospf, pim, pim_snooping, port, ppp, pppoe, ptp, radius, rip, rip_ng, route_policy, rsvp, security, snmp, stp, svcmgr, system, user, video, vrrp, vrtr, wlan_gw, wpp

message

Syntax **message** {**eq | neq**} **pattern** *pattern* [**regexp**]
no message

Context config>log>filter>entry>match

Description This command adds system messages as a match criterion.

The **no** form of the command removes messages as a match criterion.

Parameters **eq —** Determines if the matching criteria should be equal to the specified value.

neq — Determines if the matching criteria should not be equal to the specified value.

pattern *pattern* — Specifies a message up to 400 characters to be used in the match criteria.

regexp — Specifies the type of string comparison to use to determine if the log event matches the value of **message** command parameters. When the **regexp** keyword is not specified, the default matching algorithm used is a basic substring match.

number

Syntax **number** {**eq | neq | lt | lte | gt | gte**} *event-id*
no number

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*>entry *entry-id*>match

Description This command adds an SR OS application event number as a match criterion.

SR OS event numbers uniquely identify a specific logging event within an application.

Only one **number** command can be entered per event filter entry. The latest **number** command overwrites the previous command.

The **no** form of the command removes the event number as a match criterion.

Default **no event-number** — No event ID match criterion is specified.

Parameters **eq | neq | lt | lte | gt | gte —** This operator specifies the type of match. Valid operators are listed in the table below. Valid operators are:

Operator	Notes
eq	equal to
neq	not equal to

Operator	Notes
lt	less than
lte	less than or equal to
gt	greater than
gte	greater than or equal to

event-id — The event ID, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 4294967295

router

Syntax **router** {**eq** | **neq**} *router-instance* [**regexp**]
no router

Context config>log>filter>entry>match

Description This command specifies the log event matches for the router.

Parameters **eq —** Determines if the matching criteria should be equal to the specified value.

neq — Determines if the matching criteria should not be equal to the specified value.

router-instance — Specifies a router name up to 32 characters to be used in the match criteria.

regexp — Specifies the type of string comparison to use to determine if the log event matches the value of **router** command parameters. When the **regexp** keyword is specified, the string in the **router** command is a regular expression string that will be matched against the subject string in the log event being filtered.

severity

Syntax **severity** {**eq | neq | lt | lte | gt | gte**} *severity-level*
no severity

Context config>log>filter>entry>match

Description This command adds an event severity level as a match criterion. Only one severity command can be entered per event filter entry. The latest severity command overwrites the previous command.

The **no** form of the command removes the severity match criterion.

Default **no severity** — No severity level match criterion is specified.

Parameters **eq | neq | lt | lte | gt | gte —** This operator specifies the type of match. Valid operators are listed in the table below.

Operator	Notes
eq	equal to
neq	not equal to
lt	less than
lte	less than or equal to
gt	greater than
gte	greater than or equal to

severity-name — The ITU severity level name. The following table lists severity names and corresponding numbers per ITU standards M.3100 X.733 & X.21 severity levels.

Severity Number	Severity Name
1	cleared
2	indeterminate (info)
3	critical
4	major
5	minor
6	warning

Values cleared, intermediate, critical, major, minor, warning

subject

Syntax **subject** {**eq|neq**} *subject* [**regexp**]
no subject

Context config>log>filter *filter-id*>entry *entry-id*>match

Description This command adds an event subject as a match criterion.

The subject is the entity for which the event is reported, such as a port. In this case the port-id string would be the subject. Only one **subject** command can be entered per event filter entry. The latest **subject** command overwrites the previous command.

The **no** form of the command removes the subject match criterion.

Default **no subject —** No subject match criterion specified.

Parameters **eq** | **neq —** This operator specifies the type of match. Valid operators are listed in the following table:

Operator	Notes
eq	equal to
neg	not equal to

subject — A string used as the subject match criterion.

regexp — Specifies the type of string comparison to use to determine if the log event matches the value of **subject** command parameters. When the **regexp** keyword is specified, the string in the **subject** command is a regular expression string that will be matched against the subject string in the log event being filtered. When the **regexp** keyword is not specified, the **subject** command string is matched exactly by the event filter.

Event Handling System (EHS) Commands

event-handling

Syntax **event-handling**

Context config>log

Description This command enables the context to configure event handling within the Event Handler System (EHS).

handler

Syntax [**no**] **handler** *event-handler-name*

Context config>log>event-handling

Description This command configures an EHS handler.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified EHS handler.

Parameters *event-handler-name* — Specifies the name of the EHS handler. Can be up to 32 characters maximum.

action-list

Syntax **action-list**

Context config>log>event-handling>handler

Description This command enables the context to configure the EHS handler action list.

entry

Syntax [**no**] **entry** *entry-id*

Context config>log>event-handling>handler>action-list

Description This command configures an EHS handler action-list entry. A handler can have multiple actions where each action, for example, could request the execution of a different script. When the handler is triggered it will walk through the list of configured actions.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified EHS handler action-list entry.

Parameters *entry-id* — Specifies the identifier of the EHS handler entry.

Values 1 — 1500

min-delay

Syntax **min-delay** *<[1..604800]>*
no min-delay

Context config>log>event-handling>handler>action-list>entry

Description This command specifies the minimum delay in seconds between subsequent executions of the action specified in this entry. This is useful, for example, to ensure that a script doesn't get triggered to execute too often.

Parameters *[1..604800]* — Specifies the unit in seconds.

Default no min-delay

script-policy

Syntax **script-policy** *policy-name* [**owner** *policy-owner*]
no script-policy

Context config>log>event-handling>handler>action-list>entry

Description This command configures the script policy parameters to use for this EHS handler action-list entry. The associated script is launched when the handler is triggered.

Parameters *policy-name* — Specifies the script policy name. Can be up to 32 characters maximum.

owner *policy-owner* — Specifies the script policy owner. Can be up to 32 characters maximum.

Default "TiMOS CLI"

Event Trigger Commands

event-trigger

Syntax **event-trigger**

Context config>log

Description This command enables the context to configure log events as triggers for Event Handling System (EHS) handlers.

event

Syntax [**no**] **event** *application-id event-name-id*

Context config>log>event-trigger

Description This command configures a specific log event as a trigger for one or more EHS handlers. Further matching criteria can be applied to only trigger certain handlers with certain instances of the log event.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified trigger event.

Parameters *application-id* — Specifies the type of application that triggers the event.

Values application_assurance | aps | atm | bgp | calltrace | cflowd | chassis | debug | dhcp | dhcps | diameter | dynsvc | efm_oam | elmi | ering | eth_cfm | etun | filter | gsmp | gmpls | igh | igmp | igmp_snooping | ip | ipsec | isis | l2tp | lag | ldp | li | lldp | lmp | logger | mcpath | mc_redundancy | mirror | mld | mld_snooping | mpls | mpls_tp | msdp | nat | ntp | oam | open_flow | ospf | pim | pim_snooping | port | ppp | pppoe | radius | rip | rip_ng | route_policy | rsvp | security | snmp | stp | svcmgr | system | user | video | vrrp | vrtr | wlan_gw | wpp

event-name-id — Specifies the name or numerical identifier of the event.

Values 0 — 4294967295 | *event-name*: 32 characters max

trigger-entry

Syntax [**no**] **trigger-entry** *entry-id*

Context config>log>event-trigger>event

Description This command configures an instance of a trigger for an EHS handler. A trigger entry binds a set of matching criteria for a log event to a particular handler. If the log event occurs in the system and matches the criteria configured in the associated log filter then the handler will be executed.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified trigger entry.

Parameters *entry-id* — Specifies the identifier of the EHS event trigger entry.

Values 1 — 1500

event-handler

Syntax **event-handler** *event-handler*
no event-handler

Context config>log>event-trigger>event>trigger-entry

Description This command configures the event handler to be used for this trigger entry.

Parameters *event-handler* — Specifies the name of the event handler. Can be up to 32 characters maximum.

log-filter

Syntax **log-filter** *filter-id*
no log-filter

Context config>log>event-trigger>event>trigger-entry

Description This command configures the log filter to be used for this trigger entry. The log filter defines the matching criteria that must be met in order for the log event to trigger the handler execution. The log filter is applied to the log event and, if the filtering decision results in a 'forward' action, then the handler is triggered.

It is typically unnecessary to configure match criteria for 'application' or 'number' in the log filter used for EHS since the particular filter is only applied for a specific log event application and number, as configured under **config**>**log**>**event-trigger**.

Parameters *filter-id* — Specifies the identifier of the filter.

Values 1 — 1500

Syslog Commands

syslog

Syntax [**no**] **syslog** *syslog-id*

Context config>log

Description This command creates the context to configure a syslog target host that is capable of receiving selected syslog messages from this network element.

A valid *syslog-id* must have the target syslog host address configured.

A maximum of 10 syslog-id's can be configured.

No log events are sent to a syslog target address until the syslog-id has been configured as the log destination (**to**) in the log-id node.

The syslog ID configured in the **configure/service/vprn** context has a local VPRN scope and only needs to be unique within the specific VPRN instance. The same ID can be reused under a different VPRN service or in the global log context under **config>log**.

Default No syslog IDs are defined.

Parameters *syslog-id* — The syslog ID number for the syslog destination, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 10

address

Syntax **address** *ip-address*
no address

Context config>log>syslog *syslog-id*

Description This command adds the syslog target host IP address to/from a syslog ID.

This parameter is mandatory. If no **address** is configured, syslog data cannot be forwarded to the syslog target host.

Only one address can be associated with a *syslog-id*. If multiple addresses are entered, the last address entered overwrites the previous address.

The same syslog target host can be used by multiple log IDs.

The **no** form of the command removes the syslog target host IP address.

Default **no address** — There is no syslog target host IP address defined for the syslog ID.

Parameters *ip-address* — The IP address of the syslog target host in dotted decimal notation.

facility

Syntax **facility** *syslog-facility*
no facility

Context config>log>syslog *syslog-id*

Description This command configures the facility code for messages sent to the syslog target host.

Multiple syslog IDs can be created with the same target host but each syslog ID can only have one facility code. If multiple facility codes are entered, the last *facility-code* entered overwrites the previous facility-code.

If multiple facilities need to be generated for a single syslog target host, then multiple **log-id** entries must be created, each with its own filter criteria to select the events to be sent to the syslog target host with a given facility code.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default **local7** — syslog entries are sent with the local7 facility code.

Parameters *syslog-facility* — The syslog facility name represents a specific numeric facility code. The code should be entered in accordance with the syslog RFC. However, the software does not validate if the facility code configured is appropriate for the event type being sent to the syslog target host.

Values kernel, user, mail, systemd, auth, syslogd, printer, netnews, uucp, cron, authpriv, ftp, ntp, logaudit, logalert, cron2, local0, local1, local2, local3, local4, local5, local6, local7

Valid responses per RFC3164, *The BSD syslog Protocol,* are listed in the table below.

Numerical Code	Facility Code
0	kernel
1	user
2	mail
3	systemd
4	auth
5	syslogd
6	printer
7	net-news
8	uucp
9	cron
10	auth-priv
11	ftp
12	ntp
13	log-audit
14	log-alert
15	cron2
16	local0

Numerical Code	Facility Code
17	local1
18	local2
19	local3
20	local4
21	local5
22	local6
23	local7

Values 0 — 23

log-prefix

Syntax **log-prefix** *log-prefix-string*
no log-prefix

Context config>log>syslog *syslog-id*

Description This command adds the string prepended to every syslog message sent to the syslog host.

RFC3164, *The BSD syslog Protocol,* allows a alphanumeric string (tag) to be prepended to the content of every log message sent to the syslog host. This alphanumeric string can, for example, be used to identify the node that generates the log entry. The software appends a colon (:) and a space to the string and it is inserted in the syslog message after the date stamp and before the syslog message content.

Only one string can be entered. If multiple strings are entered, the last string overwrites the previous string. The alphanumeric string can contain lowercase (a-z), uppercase (A-Z) and numeric (0-9) characters.

The **no** form of the command removes the log prefix string.

Default **no log-prefix** — no prepend log prefix string defined.

Parameters *log-prefix-string* — An alphanumeric string of up to 32 characters. Spaces and colons (:) cannot be used in the string.

level

Syntax **level** *syslog-level*
no level

Context config>log>syslog *syslog-id*

Description This command configures the syslog message severity level threshold. All messages with severity level equal to or higher than the threshold are sent to the syslog target host.

Only a single threshold level can be specified. If multiple levels are entered, the last **level** entered will overwrite the previously entered commands.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Parameters *value* — The threshold severity level name.

Values emergency, alert, critical, error, warning, notice, info, debug

Router severity level	Numerical Severity (highest to lowest)	Configured Severity	Definition
	0	emergency	system is unusable
3	1	alert	action must be taken immedi-ately
4	2	critical	critical condition
5	3	error	error condition
6	4	warning	warning condition
	5	notice	normal but significant condition
1 cleared 2 indeterminate	6	info	informational messages
	7	debug	debug-level messages

port

Syntax **port** *value*
no port

Context config>log>syslog *syslog-id*

Description This command configures the UDP port that will be used to send syslog messages to the syslog target host.

The port configuration is needed if the syslog target host uses a port other than the standard UDP syslog port 514.

Only one port can be configured. If multiple **port** commands are entered, the last entered port overwrites the previously entered ports.

The **no** form of the command reverts to default value.

Default **no port**

Parameters *value* — The value is the configured UDP port number used when sending syslog messages.

Values 1 — 65535

throttle-rate

Syntax **throttle-rate** *events* [**interval** *seconds*]
no throttle-rate

Context config>log

Description This command configures an event throttling rate.

Parameters *events* — Specifies the number of log events that can be logged within the specified interval for a specific event. Once the limit has been reached, any additional events of that type will be dropped, for example, the event drop count will be incremented. At the end of the throttle interval if any events have been dropped a trap notification will be sent.

Values 1 — 20000

Default 2000

interval *seconds* — Specifies the number of seconds that an event throttling interval lasts.

Values 1 — 1200

Default 1

SNMP Trap Groups

snmp-trap-group

Syntax [**no**] **snmp-trap-group** *log-id*

Context config>log

Description This command creates the context to configure a group of SNMP trap receivers and their operational parameters for a given log-id.

A group specifies the types of SNMP traps and specifies the log ID which will receive the group of SNMP traps. A trap group must be configured in order for SNMP traps to be sent.

To suppress the generation of all alarms and traps see the **event-control** command. To suppress alarms and traps that are sent to this log-id, see the **filter** command. Once alarms and traps are generated they can be directed to one or more SNMP trap groups. Logger events that can be forwarded as SNMP traps are always defined on the main event source.

The **no** form of the command deletes the SNMP trap group.

Default There are no default SNMP trap groups.

Parameters *log-id* — The log ID value of a log configured in the **log-id** context. Alarms and traps cannot be sent to the trap receivers until a valid *log-id* exists.

Values 1 — 99

trap-target

Syntax **trap-target** *name* [**address** *ip-address*] [**port** *port*] [**snmpv1** | **snmpv2c** | **snmpv3**] **notify-community** *communityName* | *snmpv3SecurityName* [**security-level** {**no-auth-no-privacy** | **auth-no-privacy** | **privacy**}]
no trap-target *name*

Context config>log>snmp-trap-group

Description This command adds/modifies a trap receiver and configures the operational parameters for the trap receiver. A trap reports significant events that occur on a network device such as errors or failures.

Before an SNMP trap can be issued to a trap receiver, the **log-id**, **snmp-trap-group** and at least one **trap-target** must be configured.

The **trap-target** command is used to add/remove a trap receiver from an **snmp-trap-group**. The operational parameters specified in the command include:

- The IP address of the trap receiver
- The UDP port used to send the SNMP trap
- SNMP version

- SNMP community name for SNMPv1 and SNMPv2c receivers.
- Security name and level for SNMPv3 trap receivers.

A single **snmp-trap-group** *log-id* can have multiple trap-receivers. Each trap receiver can have different operational parameters.

An address can be configured as a trap receiver more than once as long as a different port is used for each instance.

To prevent resource limitations, only configure a maximum of 10 trap receivers.

Note that if the same **trap-target** *name* **port** *port* parameter value is specified in more than one SNMP trap group, each trap destination should be configured with a different *notify-community* value. This allows a trap receiving an application, such as NMS, to reconcile a separate event sequence number stream for each router event log when multiple event logs are directed to the same IP address and port destination.

The **no** form of the command removes the SNMP trap receiver from the SNMP trap group.

Default No SNMP trap targets are defined.

Parameters *name* — Specifies the name of the trap target up to 28 characters in length.

address *ip-address* — The IP address of the trap receiver in dotted decimal notation. Only one IP address destination can be specified per trap destination group.

Values ipv4-address a.b.c.d (host bits must be 0)

port *port* — The destination UDP port used for sending traps to the destination, expressed as a decimal integer. Only one port can be specified per **trap-target** statement. If multiple traps need to be issued to the same address then multiple ports must be configured.

Default 162

Values 1 — 65535

snmpv1 | *snmpv2c* | *snmpv3* — Specifies the SNMP version format to use for traps sent to the trap receiver.

The keyword **snmpv1** selects the SNMP version 1 format. When specifying **snmpv1**, the **notify-community** must be configured for the proper SNMP community string that the trap receiver expects to be present in alarms and traps messages. If the SNMP version is changed from **snmpv3** to **snmpv1,** then the **notify-community** parameter must be changed to reflect the community string rather than the *security-name* that is used by **snmpv3**.

The keyword **snmpv2c** selects the SNMP version 2c format. When specifying **snmpv2c**, the **notify-community** must be configured for the proper SNMP community string that the trap receiver expects to be present in alarms and traps messages. If the SNMP version is changed from **snmpv3** to **snmpv2c,** then the **notify-community** parameter must be changed to reflect the community string rather than the *security-name* that is used by **snmpv3**.

The keyword **snmpv3** selects the SNMP version 3 format. When specifying **snmpv3**, the **notify-community** must be configured for the SNMP *security-name*. If the SNMP version is changed from **snmpv1** or **snmpv2c** to **snmpv3**, then the **notify-community** parameter must be changed to reflect the *security-name* rather than the community string used by **snmpv1** or **snmpv2c**.

Pre-existing conditions are checked before the snmpv3SecurityName is accepted. These are:

- The user name must be configured.
- The v3 access group must be configured.
- The v3 notification view must be configured.

Default snmpv3

Values snmpv1, snmpv2c, snmpv3

notify-community *community* | *security-name* — Specifies the community string for **snmpv1** or **snmpv2c** or the **snmpv3** *security-name*. If no **notify-community** is configured, then no alarms nor traps will be issued for the trap destination. If the SNMP version is modified, the **notify-community** must be changed to the proper form for the SNMP version.

community — The community string as required by the **snmpv1** or **snmpv2c** trap receiver. The community string can be an ASCII string up to 31 characters in length.

security-name — The *security-name* as defined in the config>system>security>user context for SNMP v3. The *security-name* can be an ASCII string up to 31 characters in length.

security-level {*no-auth-no-privacy* | *auth-no-privacy* | *privacy*} — Specifies the required authentication and privacy levels required to access the views configured on this node when configuring an **snmpv3** trap receiver.

The keyword **no-auth-no-privacy** specifies no authentication and no privacy (encryption) are required.

The keyword **auth-no-privacy** specifies authentication is required but no privacy (encryption) is required. When this option is configured the *security-name* must be configured for **authentication**.

The keyword **privacy** specifies both authentication and privacy (encryption) is required. When this option is configured the *security-name* must be configured for **authentication** and **privacy**.

Default no-auth-no-privacy. This parameter can only be configured if SNMPv3 is also configured.

Values no-auth-no-privacy, auth-no-privacy, privacy

replay — Enable replay of missed events to target. If replay is applied to an SNMP trap target address, the address is monitored for reachability. Reachability is determined by whether or not there is a route in the routing table by which the target address can be reached. Before sending a trap to a target address, the SNMP module asks the PIP module if there is either an in-band or out-of-band route to the target address. If there is no route to the SNMP target address, the SNMP module saves the sequence-id of the first event that will be missed by the trap target. When the routing table changes again so that there is now a route by which the SNMP target address can be reached, the SNMP module replays (for example, retransmits) all events generated to the SNMP notification log while the target address was removed from the route table. Note that because of route table change convergence time, it is possible that one or more events may be lost at the beginning or end of a replay sequence. The cold-start-wait and route-recovery-wait timers under config>log>app-route-notifications can help reduce the probability of lost events.

filter

Syntax **filter** *filter-id*
no filter

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This command adds an event filter policy with the log destination.

The **filter** command is optional. If no event filter is configured, all events, alarms and traps generated by the source stream will be forwarded to the destination.

An event filter policy defines (limits) the events that are forwarded to the destination configured in the log-id. The event filter policy can also be used to select the alarms and traps to be forwarded to a destination **snmp-trap-group**.

The application of filters for debug messages is limited to application and subject only.

Accounting records cannot be filtered using the **filter** command.

Only one filter-id can be configured per log destination.

The **no** form of the command removes the specified event filter from the *log-id*.

Default **no filter** — No event filter policy is specified for a *log-id.*

Parameters *filter-id.* The event filter policy ID is used to associate the filter with the *log-id* configuration. The event filter policy ID must already be defined in **config>log>filter** *filter-id*.

Values 1 — 1000

from

Syntax **from** {**[main]** [**security**] [**change**] [**debug-trace**]}
no from

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This command selects the source stream to be sent to a log destination.

One or more source streams must be specified. The source of the data stream must be identified using the **from** command before you can configure the destination using the **to** command. The **from** command can identify multiple source streams in a single statement (for example: **from main change debug-trace**).

Only one **from** command may be entered for a single *log-id*. If multiple **from** commands are configured, then the last command entered overwrites the previous **from** command.

The **no** form of the command removes all previously configured source streams.

Default No source stream is configured.

Parameters **main —** Instructs all events in the main event stream to be sent to the destination defined in the **to** command for this destination *log-id*. The main event stream contains the events that are not explicitly directed to any other event stream. To limit the events forwarded to the destination, configure filters using the **filter** command.

security — Instructs all events in the security event stream to be sent to the destination defined in the **to** command for this destination *log-id*. The security stream contains all events that affect attempts to breach system security such as failed login attempts, attempts to access MIB tables to which the user is not granted access or attempts to enter a branch of the CLI to which access has not been granted. To limit the events forwarded to the destination, configure filters using the **filter** command.

change — Instructs all events in the user activity stream to be sent to the destination configured in the **to** command for this destination *log-id*. The change event stream contains all events that directly affect the configuration or operation of this node. To limit the events forwarded to the change stream destination, configure filters using the **filter** command.

debug-trace — Instructs all debug-trace messages in the debug stream to be sent to the destination configured in the **to** command for this destination *log-id*. Filters applied to debug messages are limited to application and subject.

log-id

Syntax [**no**] **log-id** *log-id*

Context config>log

Description This command creates a context to configure destinations for event streams.

The **log-id** context is used to direct events, alarms/traps, and debug information to respective destinations.

A maximum of 10 logs can be configured.

Before an event can be associated with this log-id, the **from** command identifying the source of the event must be configured.

Only one destination can be specified for a *log-id*. The destination of an event stream can be an in-memory buffer, console, session, snmp-trap-group, syslog, or file.

Use the **event-control** command to suppress the generation of events, alarms, and traps for all log destinations.

An event filter policy can be applied in the log-id context to limit which events, alarms, and traps are sent to the specified log-id.

Log-IDs 99 and 100 are created by the agent. Log-ID 99 captures all log messages.
Log-ID 100 captures log messages with a severity level of major and above.

Note that Log-ID 99 provides valuable information for the admin-tech file. Removing or changing the log configuration may hinder debugging capabilities. It is strongly recommended not to alter the configuration for Log-ID 99.

The **no** form of the command deletes the log destination ID from the configuration.

Default No log destinations are defined.

Parameters *log-id* — The log ID number, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 100

to console

Syntax **to console**

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This command specifies a log ID destination. This parameter is mandatory when configuring a log destination. This command instructs the events selected for the log ID to be directed to the console. If the console is not connected, then all the entries are dropped.

The source of the data stream must be specified in the **from** command prior to configuring the destination with the **to** command.

The **to** command cannot be modified or re-entered. If the destination or maximum size of an SNMP or memory log needs to be modified, the log ID must be removed and then re-created.

Default No destination is specified.

to file

Syntax **to file** *log-file-id*

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This command specifies a log ID destination. This parameter is mandatory when configuring a log destination. This command instructs the events selected for the log ID to be directed to a specified file.

The source of the data stream must be specified in the **from** command prior to configuring the destination with the **to** command.

The **to** command cannot be modified or re-entered. If the destination or maximum size of an SNMP or memory log needs to be modified, the log ID must be removed and then re-created.

Default No destination is specified.

Parameters *log-file-id* — Instructs the events selected for the log ID to be directed to the *log-file-id*. The characteristics of the *log-file-id* referenced here must have already been defined in the **config>log>file** *log-file-id* context.

Values 1 — 99

to memory

Syntax **to memory** [*size*]

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This command specifies a log ID destination. This parameter is mandatory when configuring a log destination. This command instructs the events selected for the log ID to be directed to a memory log.

A memory file is a circular buffer. Once the file is full, each new entry replaces the oldest entry in the log.

The source of the data stream must be specified in the **from** command prior to configuring the destination with the **to** command.

The **to** command cannot be modified or re-entered. If the destination or maximum size of an SNMP or memory log needs to be modified, the log ID must be removed and then re-created.

Default none

Parameters *size* — The *size* parameter indicates the number of events that can be stored in the memory.

Default 100

Values 50 — 1024

to session

Syntax **to session**

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This command specifies a log ID destination. This parameter is mandatory when configuring a log destination. This command instructs the events selected for the log ID to be directed to the current console or telnet session. This command is only valid for the duration of the session. When the session is terminated the "to session" configuration is removed. A log ID with a *session* destination is saved in the configuration file but the "to session" part is not stored.

The source of the data stream must be specified in the **from** command prior to configuring the destination with the **to** command.

The **to** command cannot be modified or re-entered. If the destination or maximum size of an SNMP or memory log needs to be modified, the log ID must be removed and then re-created.

Default none

to snmp

Syntax **to snmp** [*size*]

Context config>log>log-id *log-id*

Description This is one of the commands used to specify the log ID destination. This parameter is mandatory when configuring a log destination. This command instructs the alarms and traps to be directed to the **snmp-trap-group** associated with *log-id*.

A local circular memory log is always maintained for SNMP notifications sent to the specified snmp-trap-group for the *log-id*.

The source of the data stream must be specified in the **from** command prior to configuring the destination with the **to** command.

The **to** command cannot be modified or re-entered. If the destination or maximum size of an SNMP or memory log needs to be modified, the log ID must be removed and then re-created.

Default none

Parameters *size* — The *size* parameter defines the number of events stored in this memory log.

Default 100

Values 50 — 1024

to syslog

Syntax **to syslog** *syslog-id*

Context config>log>log-id

Description This is one of the commands used to specify the log ID destination. This parameter is mandatory when configuring a log destination.

This command instructs the alarms and traps to be directed to a specified syslog. To remain consistent with the standards governing syslog, messages to syslog are truncated to 1k bytes.

The source of the data stream must be specified in the **from** command prior to configuring the destination with the **to** command.

The **to** command cannot be modified or re-entered. If the destination or maximum size of an SNMP or memory log needs to be modified, the log ID must be removed and then re-created.

Default none

Parameters *syslog-id* — Instructs the events selected for the log ID to be directed to the *syslog-id*. The characteristics of the *syslog-id* referenced here must have been defined in the **config>log>syslog** *syslog-id* context.

Values 1 — 10

time-format

Syntax **time-format {local | utc}**

Context config>log>log-id

Description This command specifies whether the time should be displayed in local or Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) format.

Default utc

Parameters **local** — Specifies that timestamps are written in the system's local time.

utc — Specifies that timestamps are written using the UTC value. This was formerly called Greenwich Mean Time (GMT) and Zulu time.

Accounting Policy Commands

accounting-policy

Syntax **accounting-policy** *policy-id* [**interval** *minutes*]
no accounting-policy *policy-id*

Context config>log

Description This command creates an access or network accounting policy. An accounting policy defines the accounting records that are created.

Access accounting policies are policies that can be applied to one or more SAPs. Changes made to an existing policy, using any of the sub-commands, are applied immediately to all SAPs where this policy is applied.

If an accounting policy is not specified on a SAP, then accounting records are produced in accordance with the access policy designated as the **default**. If a default access policy is not specified, then no accounting records are collected other than the records for the accounting policies that are explicitly configured.

Only one policy can be regarded as the default access policy. If a policy is configured as the default policy, then a **no default** command must be used to allow the data that is currently being collected to be written before a new access default policy can be configured.

Network accounting policies are policies that can be applied to one or more network ports. Any changes made to an existing policy, using any of the sub-commands, will be applied immediately to all network ports where this policy is applied.

If no accounting policy is defined on a network port, accounting records will be produced in accordance with the default network policy as designated with the **default** command. If no network default policy is created, then no accounting records will be collected other than the records for the accounting policies explicitly configured.

Only one policy can be regarded as the default network policy. If a policy is configured as the default policy, then a **no default** command must be used to allow the data that is currently being collected to be written before a new network default policy can be configured.

The **no** form of the command deletes the policy from the configuration. The accounting policy cannot be removed unless it is removed from all the SAPs, network ports or channels where the policy is applied.

Default No default accounting policy is defined.

Parameters *policy-id* — The policy ID that uniquely identifies the accounting policy, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 99

collection-interval

Syntax **collection-interval** *minutes*
no collection-interval

Context config>log>acct-policy

Description This command configures the accounting collection interval.

Parameters *minutes* — Specifies the interval between collections, in minutes.

Values 1 — 120
A range of 1 — 4 is only allowed when the record type is set to SAA.

default

Syntax [**no**] **default**

Context config>log>accounting-policy

Description This command configures the default accounting policy to be used with all SAPs that do not have an accounting policy.

If no access accounting policy is defined on a SAP, accounting records are produced in accordance with the default access policy. If no default access policy is created, then no accounting records will be collected other than the records for the accounting policies that are explicitly configured.

If no network accounting policy is defined on a network port, accounting records will be produced in accordance with the default network policy. If no network default policy is created, then no accounting records will be collected other than the records for the accounting policies explicitly configured.

Only one access accounting policy ID can be designated as the default access policy. Likewise, only one network accounting policy ID can be designated as the default network accounting policy.

The record name must be specified prior to assigning an accounting policy as default.

If a policy is configured as the default policy, then a **no default** command must be issued before a new default policy can be configured.

The **no** form of the command removes the default policy designation from the policy ID. The accounting policy will be removed from all SAPs or network ports that do not have this policy explicitly defined.

include-router-info

Syntax [**no**] **include-router-info**

Context config>log>accounting-policy

Description This command allows operator to optionally include router information at the top of each accounting file generated for a given accounting policy.

When the no version of this command is selected, optional router information is not include at the top of the file.

Default no include-router-info

include-system-info

Syntax [**no**] **include-system-info**

Context config>log>accounting-policy

Description This command allows the operator to optionally include router information at the top of each accounting file generated for a given accounting policy.

When the **no** version of this command is selected, optional router information is not include at the top of the file.

Default no include-router-info

record

Syntax [**no**] **record** *record-name*

Context config>log>accounting-policy *policy-id*

Description This command adds the accounting record type to the accounting policy to be forwarded to the configured accounting file. A record name can only be used in one accounting policy. To obtain a list of all record types that can be configured, use the **show log accounting-records** command.

NOTE: aa, video and subscriber records are not applicable to the 7950 XRS.

```
A:ALA-49# show log accounting-records
===========================================================
Accounting Policy Records
===========================================================
Record # Record Name                          Def. Interval
-----------------------------------------------------------
1        service-ingress-octets               5
2        service-egress-octets                5
3        service-ingress-packets              5
4        service-egress-packets               5
5        network-ingress-octets               15
6        network-egress-octets                15
7        network-ingress-packets              15
8        network-egress-packets               15
9        compact-service-ingress-octets       5
10       combined-service-ingress             5
11       combined-network-ing-egr-octets      15
12       combined-service-ing-egr-octets      5
13       complete-service-ingress-egress      5
14       combined-sdp-ingress-egress          5
15       complete-sdp-ingress-egress          5
16       complete-subscriber-ingress-egress 5
17       aa-protocol                          15
18       aa-application                       15
19       aa-app-group                         15
20       aa-subscriber-protocol               15
21       aa-subscriber-application            15
23       custom-record-subscriber             5
24       custom-record-service                5
25       custom-record-aa-sub                 15
26       queue-group-octets                   15
27       queue-group-packets                  15
28       combined-queue-group                 15
29       combined-mpls-lsp-ingress            5
30       combined-mpls-lsp-egress             5
31       combined-ldp-lsp-egress              5
32       saa                                  5
33       complete-pm                          5
34       video                                10
35       kpi-system                           5
36       kpi-bearer-mgmt                      5
37       kpi-bearer-traffic                   5
38       kpi-ref-point                        5
39       kpi-path-mgmt                        5
40       kci-iom-3                            5
41       kci-system                           5
42       kci-bearer-mgmt                      5
```

```
43       kci-path-mgmt                       5
44       complete-kpi                        5
45       complete-kci                        5
46       kpi-bearer-group                    5
47       kpi-ref-path-group                  5
48       kpi-kci-bearer-mgmt                 5
49       kpi-kci-path-mgmt                   5
50       kpi-kci-system                      5
51       complete-kpi-kci                    5
52       aa-performance                      15
53       complete-ethernet-port              15
54       extended-service-ingress-egress     5
55       complete-network-ing-egr            15
56       aa-partition                        15
57       complete-pm                         5
0        unknown-record-name                 0
59       kpi-bearer-traffic-gtp-endpoint     5
60       kpi-ip-reas                         5
61       kpi-radius-group                    5
62       kpi-ref-pt-failure-cause-code       5
63       kpi-dhcp-group                      5
         complete-pm                         5
===============================================================
A:ALA-49#
```

To configure an accounting policy for access ports, select a service record (for example, service-ingress-octets). To change the record name to another service record then the record command with the new record name can be entered and it will replace the old record name.

When configuring an accounting policy for network ports, a network record should be selected. When changing the record name to another network record, the record command with the new record name can be entered and it will replace the old record name.

If the change required modifies the record from network to service or from service to network, then the old record name must be removed using the **no** form of this command.

Only one record may be configured in a single accounting policy. For example, if an accounting-policy is configured with a **access-egress-octets** record, in order to change it to **service-ingress-octets**, use the **no record** command under the accounting-policy to remove the old record and then enter the **service-ingress-octets** record.

Note that collecting excessive statistics can adversely affect the CPU utilization and take up large amounts of storage space.

The **no** form of the command removes the record type from the policy.

Default No accounting record is defined

Parameters *record-name* — The accounting record name. The following table lists the accounting record names available and the default collection interval.

Record Type	Accounting Record Name	Default Interval
1	service-ingress-octets	5
2	service-egress-octets	5

Record Type	Accounting Record Name	Default Interval
3	service-ingress-packets	5
4	service-egress-packets	5
5	network-ingress-octets	15
6	network-egress-octets	15
7	network-ingress-packets	15
8	network-egress-packets	15
9	compact-service-ingress-octets	5
10	combined-service-ingress	5
11	combined-network-ing-egr-octets	15
12	combined-service-ing-egr-octets	5
13	complete-service-ingress-egress	5
14	combined-sdp-ingress-egress	5
15	complete-sdp-ingress-egress	5
16	complete-subscriber-ingress-egress	5
17	aa-protocol	15
18	aa-application	15
19	aa-app-group	15
20	aa-subscriber-protocol	15
21	aa-subscriber-application	15
23	custom-record-subscriber	5
24	custom-record-service	5
25	custom-record-aa-sub	15
26	queue-group-octets	15
27	queue-group-packets	15
28	combined-queue-group	15
29	combined-mpls-lsp-ingress	5
30	combined-mpls-lsp-egress	5
31	combined-ldp-lsp-egress	5

Record Type	Accounting Record Name	Default Interval
32	saa	5
33	complete-pm	5
34	video	10
35	kpi-system	5
36	kpi-bearer-mgmt	5
37	kpi-bearer-traffic	5
38	kpi-ref-point	5
39	kpi-path-mgmt	5
40	kpi-iom-3	5
41	kci-system	5
42	kci-bearer-mgmt	5
43	kci-path-mgmt	5
44	complete-kpi	5
45	complete-kci	5
46	kpi-bearer-group	5
47	kpi-ref-path-group	5
48	kpi-kci-bearer-mgmt	5
49	kpi-kci-path-mgmt	5
50	kpi-kci-system	5
51	complete-kpi-kci	5
52	aa-performance	15
53	complete-ethernet-port	15
54	extended-service-ingress-egress	5
55	complete-network-ing-egr	15

to

Syntax **to file** *file-id*

Context config>log>accounting-policy *policy-id*

This command specifies the destination for the accounting records selected for the accounting policy.

Default No destination is specified.

Parameters *file-id* — The *file-id* option specifies the destination for the accounting records selected for this destination. The characteristics of the file-id must have already been defined in the config>log>file context. A file-id can only be used once.

The file is generated when the file policy is referenced. This command identifies the type of accounting file to be created. The file definition defines its characteristics.

If the **to** command is executed while the accounting policy is in operation, then it becomes active during the next collection interval.

Values 1 — 99

Accounting Policy Custom Record Commands

collection-interval

Syntax **collection-interval** *minutes*
no collection-interval

Context config>log>acct-policy

Description This command configures the accounting collection interval.

The **no** form of the command returns the value to the default.

Default 60

Parameters *minutes* — Specifies the collection interval in minutes.

Values 5 — 120

custom-record

Syntax [**no**] **custom-record**

Context config>log>acct-policy

Description This command enables the context to configure the layout and setting for a custom accounting record associated with this accounting policy.

The **no** form of the command reverts the configured values to the defaults.

aa-specific

Syntax [**no**] **aa-specific**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr

Description This command enables the context to configure information for this custom record.

The **no** form of the command

flows-active-count

Syntax [**no**] **flows-active-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the active flow count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the active flow count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

Default no flows-active-count

flows-admitted-count

Syntax [**no**] **flows-admitted-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the admitted flow count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the flow’s admitted count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

Default no flows-admitted-count

flows-denied-count

Syntax [**no**] **flows-denied-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the flow’s denied count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

The **no** form of the command excludes the flow’s denied count.

Default no flows-denied-count

forwarding-class

Syntax [**no**] **forwarding-class**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command enables the collection of a Forwarding Class bitmap information added to the XML aa-sub and router level accounting records.

Default no forwarding-class

octets-admitted-count

Syntax [**no**] **octets-admitted-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the admitted octet count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

The **no** form of the command excludes the admitted octet count.

Default no octets-admitted-count

octets-denied-count

Syntax [**no**] **octets-denied-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the denied octet count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

The **no** form of the command excludes the denied octet count.

Default no octets-denied-count

packets-admitted-count

Syntax [**no**] **packets-admitted-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the admitted packet count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

The **no** form of the command excludes the admitted packet count.

Default no packets-admitted-count

packets-denied-count

Syntax [**no**] **packets-denied-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-from-sub-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa>aa-to-sub-cntr

Description This command includes the denied packet count in the AA subscriber's custom record.

The **no** form of the command excludes the denied packet count.

Default no packets-denied-count

to-aa-sub-counters

Syntax **to-aa-sub-counters**
no to-aa-sub-counters

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>aa

Description This command enables the context to configure Application Assurance “to subscriber” counter parameters.

The **no** form of the command excludes the “to subscriber” count.

queue

Syntax [**no**] **queue** *queue-id*

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr

Description This command specifies the queue-id for which counters will be collected in this custom record. The counters that will be collected are defined in egress and ingress counters.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Parameters *queue-id* — Specifies the queue-id for which counters will be collected in this custom record.

e-counters

Syntax [**no**] **e-counters**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>override-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-override-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue

Description This command configures egress counter parameters for this custom record.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

i-counters

Syntax **i-counters** [**all**]
no i-counters

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>override-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-override-cntr
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue

Description This command configures ingress counter parameters for this custom record.

The **no** form of the command

Parameters **all** — Specifies all ingress counters should be included.

in-profile-octets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **in-profile-octets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the in-profile octets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the in-profile octets discarded count.

in-profile-octets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **in-profile-octets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the in-profile octets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the in-profile octets forwarded count.

in-profile-packets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **in-profile-packets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the in-profile packets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the in-profile packets discarded count.

in-profile-packets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **in-profile-packets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the in-profile packets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the in-profile packets forwarded count.

out-profile-octets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **out-profile-octets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the out of profile packets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the out of profile packets discarded count.

out-profile-octets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **out-profile-octets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the out of profile octets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the out of profile octets forwarded count.

out-profile-packets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **out-profile-packets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the out of profile packets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the out of profile packets discarded count.

out-profile-packets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **out-profile-packets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>e-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>e-count

Description This command includes the out of profile packets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the out of profile packets forwarded count.

all-octets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **all-octets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes all octets offered in the count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the octets offered in the count.

Default no all-octets-offered-count

all-packets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **all-packets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes all packets offered in the count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the packets offered in the count.

Default no all-packets-offered-count

high-octets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **high-octets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the high octets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the high octets discarded count.

Default no high-octets-discarded-count

high-octets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **high-octets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the high octets offered count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the high octets offered count.

high-packets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **high-packets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the high packets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the high packets discarded count.

Default no high-packets-discarded-count

high-packets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **high-packets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the high packets offered count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the high packets offered count.

Default no high-packets-offered -count

in-profile-octets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **in-profile-octets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the in profile octets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the in profile octets forwarded count.

Default no in-profile-octets-forwarded-count

in-profile-packets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **in-profile-packets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the in profile packets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the in profile packets forwarded count.

Default no in-profile-packets-forwarded-count

low-octets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **low-octets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the low octets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the low octets discarded count.

Default no low-octets-discarded-count

low-packets-discarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **low-packets-discarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the low packets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the low packets discarded count.

Default no low-packets-discarded-count

low-octets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **low-octets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the low octets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the low octets discarded count.

low-packets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **low-packets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the low packets discarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the low packets discarded count.

out-profile-octets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **out-profile-octets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the out of profile octets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the out of profile octets forwarded count.

Default no out-profile-octets-forwarded-count

out-profile-packets-forwarded-count

Syntax [**no**] **out-profile-packets-forwarded-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>oc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>roc>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the out of profile packets forwarded count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the out of profile packets forwarded count.

Default no out-profile-packets-forwarded-count

uncoloured-octets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **uncoloured-packets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the uncoloured octets offered in the count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the uncoloured octets offered in the count.

uncoloured-packets-offered-count

Syntax [**no**] **uncoloured-packets-offered-count**

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr>queue>i-count
config>log>acct-policy>cr>ref-queue>i-count

Description This command includes the uncolored packets offered count.

The **no** form of the command excludes the uncoloured packets offered count.

ref-aa-specific-counter

Syntax **ref-aa-specific-counter any**
no ref-aa-specific-counter

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr

Description This command enables the use of significant-change so only those aa-specific records which have changed in the last accounting interval are written.

The **no** form of the command disables the use of significant-change so all aa-specific records are written whether or not they have changed within the last accounting interval.

Parameters **any** — Indicates that a record is collected as long as any field records activity when non-zero significant-change value is configured.

ref-override-counter

Syntax **ref-override-counter** *ref-override-counter-id*
ref-override-counter all
no ref-override-counter

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr

Description This command configures a reference override counter.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default no ref-override-counter

ref-queue

Syntax **ref-queue** *queue-id*
ref-queue all
no ref-queue

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr

Description This command configures a reference queue.

The **no** form of the command reverts to the default value.

Default no ref-queue

significant-change

Syntax **significant-change** *delta*
no significant-change

Context config>log>acct-policy>cr

Description This command configures the significant change required to generate the record.

Parameters *delta* — Specifies the delta change (significant change) that is required for the custom record to be written to the xml file.

Values 0 — 4294967295 (For custom-record-aa-sub only values 0 or 1 are supported.)

Show Commands

accounting-policy

Syntax **accounting-policy** [*acct-policy-id*] [**access** | **network**]

Context show>log

Description This command displays accounting policy information.

Parameters *policy-id* — The policy ID that uniquely identifies the accounting policy, expressed as a decimal integer.

Values 1 — 99

access — Only displays access accounting policies.

network — Only displays network accounting policies.

Output **Accounting Policy Output —** The following table describes accounting policy output fields.

Table 46: Show Accounting Policy Output Fields

Label	Description
Policy ID	The identifying value assigned to a specific policy.
Type	Identifies accounting record type forwarded to the configured accounting file.
	access – Indicates that the policy is an access accounting policy.
	network – Indicates that the policy is a network accounting policy.
	none – Indicates no accounting record types assigned.
Def	Yes – Indicates that the policy is a default access or network policy.
	No – Indicates that the policy is not a default access or network policy.
Admin State	Displays the administrative state of the policy.
	Up – Indicates that the policy is administratively enabled.
	Down – Indicates that the policy is administratively disabled.
Oper State	Displays the operational state of the policy.
	Up – Indicates that the policy is operationally up.
	Down – Indicates that the policy is operationally down.

Table 46: Show Accounting Policy Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Intvl	Displays the interval, in minutes, in which statistics are collected and written to their destination. The default depends on the record name type.
File ID	The log destination.
Record Name	The accounting record name which represents the configured record type.
This policy is applied to	Specifies the entity where the accounting policy is applied.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show log accounting-policy
===============================================================================
Accounting Policies
===============================================================================
Policy Type    Def Admin Oper  Intvl     File Record Name
Id                 State State           Id
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1      network No  Up    Up    15        1    network-ingress-packets
2      network Yes Up    Up    15        2    network-ingress-octets
10     access  Yes Up    Up    5         3    complete-service-ingress-egress
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show log accounting-policy 10
===============================================================================
Accounting Policies
===============================================================================
Policy Type    Def Admin Oper  Intvl     File Record Name
Id                 State State           Id
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10     access  Yes Up    Up    5         3 complete-service-ingress-egress
Description : (Not Specified)

This policy is applied to:
    Svc Id: 100  SAP : 1/1/8:0     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 101  SAP : 1/1/8:1     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 102  SAP : 1/1/8:2     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 103  SAP : 1/1/8:3     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 104  SAP : 1/1/8:4     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 105  SAP : 1/1/8:5     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 106  SAP : 1/1/8:6     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 107  SAP : 1/1/8:7     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 108  SAP : 1/1/8:8     Collect-Stats
    Svc Id: 109  SAP : 1/1/8:9     Collect-Stats
...
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#

A:ALA-1# show log accounting-policy network
```

```
===============================================================================
Accounting Policies
===============================================================================
Policy Type    Def Admin Oper  Intvl     File Record Name
Id                 State State           Id
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1      network No  Up    Up    15        1    network-ingress-packets
2      network Yes Up    Up    15        2    network-ingress-octets
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show log accounting-policy access
===============================================================================
Accounting Policies
===============================================================================
Policy Type    Def Admin Oper  Intvl     File Record Name
Id                 State State           Id
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
10     access  Yes Up    Up    5         3 complete-service-ingress-
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

accounting-records

Syntax **accounting-records**

Context show>log

Description This command displays accounting policy record names.

Output **Accounting Records Output.** The following table describes accounting records output fields.

Table 47: Accounting Policy Output Fields

Label	Description
Record #	The record ID that uniquely identifies the accounting policy, expressed as a decimal integer.
Record Name	The accounting record name.
Def. Interval	The default interval, in minutes, in which statistics are collected and written to their destination.

Sample Output

NOTE: aa, video and subscriber records are not applicable to the 7950 XRS.

```
A:ALA-1# show log accounting-records
===========================================================
Accounting Policy Records
===========================================================
Record # Record Name                        Def. Interval
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------
1        service-ingress-octets             5
2        service-egress-octets              5
3        service-ingress-packets            5
4        service-egress-packets             5
5        network-ingress-octets             15
6        network-egress-octets              15
7        network-ingress-packets            15
8        network-egress-packets             15
9        compact-service-ingress-octets     5
10       combined-service-ingress           5
11       combined-network-ing-egr-octets    15
12       combined-service-ing-egr-octets    5
13       complete-service-ingress-egress    5
14       combined-sdp-ingress-egress        5
15       complete-sdp-ingress-egress        5
16       complete-subscriber-ingress-egress 5
17       aa-protocol                        15
18       aa-application                     15
19       aa-app-group                       15
20       aa-subscriber-protocol             15
21       aa-subscriber-application          15
22       aa-subscriber-app-group            15
=======================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

applications

Syntax **applications**

Context show>log

Description This command displays a list of all application names that can be used in event-control and filter commands.

Output **Sample Output**

```
*A:7950 XRS-20# show log applications

==================================
Log Event Application Names
==================================
Application Name
----------------------------------
BGP
...
CHASSIS
...
IGMP
...
LDP
LI
...
MIRROR
...
MPLS
...
```

```
OSPF
PIM
...
PORT
...
SYSTEM
...
USER
...
VRTR
...
===================================
A:ALA-1#
```

event-control

Syntax **event-control** [**application** [*event-name* | *event-number*]]

Context show>log

Description This command displays event control settings for events including whether the event is suppressed or generated and the severity level for the event.

If no options are specified all events, alarms and traps are listed.

Parameters **application —** Only displays event control for the specified application.

Default All applications.

Values bgp, cflowd, chassis, debug, igmp, lldp, mirror, ospf, pim, port, snmp, system, user, vrtr

event-name — Only displays event control for the named application event.

Default All events for the application.

event-number — Only displays event control for the specified application event number.

Default All events for the application.

Output **Show Event Control Output —** The following table describes the output fields for the event control.

Label	Description
Application	The application name.
ID#	The event ID number within the application. L ID# — An "L" in front of an ID represents event types that do not generate an associated SNMP notification. Most events do generate a notification, only the exceptions are marked with a preceding "L".
Event Name	The event name.
P	CL — The event has a cleared severity/priority.

Label	Description (Continued)
	CR — The event has critical severity/priority.
	IN — The event has indeterminate severity/priority.
	MA — The event has major severity/priority.
	MI — The event has minor severity/priority.
	WA — The event has warning severity/priority.
g/s	gen — The event will be generated/logged by event control.
	sup — The event will be suppressed/dropped by event control.
	thr — Specifies that throttling is enabled.
Logged	The number of events logged/generated.
Dropped	The number of events dropped/suppressed.

Sample Output

```
A:gal171# show log event-control
===============================================================================
Log Events
===============================================================================
Application
 ID#    Event Name                          P   g/s     Logged     Dropped
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
CHASSIS:
   2001 cardFailure                        MA  gen          0           0
   2002 cardInserted                       MI  gen          4           0
   2003 cardRemoved                        MI  gen          0           0
   2004 cardWrong                          MI  gen          0           0
   2005 EnvTemperatureTooHigh              MA  gen          0           0
...
DEBUG:
L  2001 traceEvent                         MI  gen          0           0
DOT1X:
FILTER:
   2001 filterPBRPacketsDropped            MI  gen          0           0
IGMP_SNOOPING:
IP:
L  2001 clearRTMError                      MI  gen          0           0
L  2002 ipEtherBroadcast                   MI  gen          0           0
L  2003 ipDuplicateAddress                 MI  gen          0           0
L  2004 ipArpInfoOverwritten               MI  gen          0           0
L  2005 fibAddFailed                       MA  gen          0           0
L  2006 qosNetworkPolicyMallocFailed       MA  gen          0           0
L  2007 ipArpBadInterface                  MI  gen          0           0
L  2008 ipArpDuplicateIpAddress            MI  gen          0           0
L  2009 ipArpDuplicateMacAddress           MI  gen          0           0
ISIS:
   2001 vRtrIsisDatabaseOverload           WA  gen          0           0
   2002 vRtrIsisManualAddressDrops         WA  gen          0           0
   2003 vRtrIsisCorruptedLSPDetected       WA  gen          0           0
   2004 vRtrIsisMaxSeqExceedAttempt        WA  gen          0           0
```

```
   2005 vRtrIsisIDLenMismatch            WA  gen          0            0
   2006 vRtrIsisMaxAreaAddrsMismatch     WA  gen          0            0
....
USER:
L  2001 cli_user_login                   MI  gen          2            0
L  2002 cli_user_logout                  MI  gen          1            0
L  2003 cli_user_login_failed            MI  gen          0            0
L  2004 cli_user_login_max_attempts      MI  gen          0            0
L  2005 ftp_user_login                   MI  gen          0            0
L  2006 ftp_user_logout                  MI  gen          0            0
L  2007 ftp_user_login_failed            MI  gen          0            0
L  2008 ftp_user_login_max_attempts      MI  gen          0            0
L  2009 cli_user_io                      MI  sup          0           48
L  2010 snmp_user_set                    MI  sup          0            0
L  2011 cli_config_io                    MI  gen       4357            0
VRRP:
   2001 vrrpTrapNewMaster                MI  gen          0            0
   2002 vrrpTrapAuthFailure              MI  gen          0            0
   2003 tmnxVrrpIPListMismatch           MI  gen          0            0
   2004 tmnxVrrpIPListMismatchClear      MI  gen          0            0
   2005 tmnxVrrpMultipleOwners           MI  gen          0            0
   2006 tmnxVrrpBecameBackup             MI  gen          0            0
L  2007 vrrpPacketDiscarded              MI  gen          0            0
VRTR:
   2001 tmnxVRtrMidRouteTCA              MI  gen          0            0
   2002 tmnxVRtrHighRouteTCA             MI  gen          0            0
   2003 tmnxVRtrHighRouteCleared         MI  gen          0            0
   2004 tmnxVRtrIllegalLabelTCA          MA  gen          0            0
   2005 tmnxVRtrMcastMidRouteTCA         MI  gen          0            0
   2006 tmnxVRtrMcastMaxRoutesTCA        MI  gen          0            0
   2007 tmnxVRtrMcastMaxRoutesCleared    MI  gen          0            0
   2008 tmnxVRtrMaxArpEntriesTCA         MA  gen          0            0
   2009 tmnxVRtrMaxArpEntriesCleared     MI  gen          0            0
   2011 tmnxVRtrMaxRoutes                MI  gen          0            0
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

```
A:ALA-1# show log event-control ospf
===============================================================================
Log Events
===============================================================================
Application
 ID#    Event Name                          P   g/s     Logged     Dropped
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
   2001 ospfVirtIfStateChange               WA  gen          0            0
   2002 ospfNbrStateChange                  WA  gen          1            0
   2003 ospfVirtNbrStateChange              WA  gen          0            0
   2004 ospfIfConfigError                   WA  gen          0            0
   2005 ospfVirtIfConfigError               WA  gen          0            0
   2006 ospfIfAuthFailure                   WA  gen          0            0
   2007 ospfVirtIfAuthFailure               WA  gen          0            0
   2008 ospfIfRxBadPacket                   WA  gen          0            0
   2009 ospfVirtIfRxBadPacket               WA  gen          0            0
   2010 ospfTxRetransmit                    WA  sup          0            0
   2011 ospfVirtIfTxRetransmit              WA  sup          0            0
   2012 ospfOriginateLsa                    WA  sup          0          404
   2013 ospfMaxAgeLsa                       WA  gen          3            0
   2014 ospfLsdbOverflow                    WA  gen          0            0
```

```
   2015 ospfLsdbApproachingOverflow      WA  gen          0           0
   2016 ospfIfStateChange                WA  gen          2           0
   2017 ospfNssaTranslatorStatusChange   WA  gen          0           0
   2018 vRtrOspfSpfRunsStopped           WA  gen          0           0
   2019 vRtrOspfSpfRunsRestarted         WA  gen          0           0
   2020 vRtrOspfOverloadEntered          WA  gen          1           0
   2021 vRtrOspfOverloadExited           WA  gen          0           0
   2022 ospfRestartStatusChange          WA  gen          0           0
   2023 ospfNbrRestartHelperStatusChange WA  gen          0           0
   2024 ospfVirtNbrRestartHelperStsChg   WA  gen          0           0
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show log event-control ospf ospfVirtIfStateChange
===============================================================================
Log Events
===============================================================================
Application
 ID#    Event Name                       P   g/s     Logged     Dropped
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
   2001 ospfVirtIfStateChange            WA  gen          0           0
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

event-handling

Syntax **event-handling**

Context show>log

Description This command enables the context to display Event Handling System (EHS) information.

handler

Syntax **handler** [*handler-name*]
handler detail

Context show>log>event-handling

Description This command enters the context to display EHS handler information.

Parameters *handler-name* — Specifies the name of a specific handler. 32 characters maximum.

detail — Keyword to list details of all handlers.

Output **Show Handler Output —** The following table describes handler output fields.

Label	Description
Handler	The name of the handler.
Description	The handler description string.
Admin State	The administrative state of the handler.

Label	Description (Continued)
Oper State	The operational state of the handler.
Handler Action-List Entry	
Entry-id	The action-list entry identifier.
Description	The action-list entry description string.
Admin State	The administrative state of the action-list entry.
Policy Name	The name of the related script policy.
Policy Owner	The owner of the related script policy.
Last Exec	The timestamp of the last successful execution of the action-list entry.
Handler Action-List Entry Execution Statistics	
Enqueued	The number of times the action-list entry was successfully passed on to the SR OS sub-system or module that will attempt to process and execute the action. For a script-policy entry, this indicates that the script request has been enqueued but does not necessarily indicate that the script has successfully launched or completed. For status and information about the script, use the **show**>**system**>**script-control** command.
Err Launch	The number of times the action-list entry was not successfully handed over to the next SR OS sub-system or module in the processing chain. This can be caused by a variety of conditions including a full script request input queue.
Err Adm Status	The number of times the action-list entry was not executed because the entry was administratively disabled.
Total	The total number of times that the action-list entry attempted execution.

Sample Output

```
A:node1>show>log>event-handling# handler

===============================================================================
Event Handling System - Handler List
===============================================================================
Handler                         Admin   Oper    Description
Name                            State   State
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
h-sample                        up      up
h-main                          up      up
h-backup                        down    down
===============================================================================
```

```
*A:7950 XRS-20# show log event-handling handler "h-sample"

===============================================================================
Event Handling System - Handlers
===============================================================================

===============================================================================
Handler          : h-sample
===============================================================================
Description      : (Not Specified)
Admin State      : up                                Oper State : up

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Handler Action-List Entry
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry-id         : 10
Description      : (Not Specified)
Admin State      : up                                Oper State : up
Script
  Policy Name    : sp-sample
  Policy Owner   : TiMOS CLI
Min Delay        : 0
Last Exec        : 05/24/2015 19:03:31
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Handler Action-List Entry Execution Statistics
  Enqueued       : 4
  Err Launch     : 0
  Err Adm Status : 0
Total            : 4
===============================================================================
```

file-id

Syntax **file-id** [*log-file-id*]

Context show>log

Description This command displays event file log information.

If no command line parameters are specified, a summary output of all event log files is displayed.

Specifying a file ID displays detailed information on the event file log.

Parameters *log-file-id* — Displays detailed information on the specified event file log.

Output **Log File Output —** The following table describes the output fields for a log file summary.

Label	Description
file-id	The log file ID.
rollover	The rollover time for the log file which is how long in between partitioning of the file into a new file.

Label	Description (Continued)
retention	The retention time for the file in the system which is how long the file should be retained in the file system.
admin location	The primary flash device specified for the file location. none — indicates no specific flash device was specified.
oper location	The actual flash device on which the log file exists.
file-id	The log file ID.
rollover	The rollover time for the log file which is how long in between partitioning of the file into a new file.
retention	The retention time for the file in the system which is how long the file should be retained in the file system.
file name	The complete pathname of the file associated with the log ID.
expired	Indicates whether or not the retention period for this file has passed.
state	in progress — Indicates the current open log file. complete — Indicates the old log file.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show log file-id
===============================================================
File Id List
===============================================================
file-id   rollover  retention   admin     backup    oper
                              location  location  location
---------------------------------------------------------------
1           60         4        cf1:      cf2:      cf1:
2           60         3        cf1:      cf3:      cf1:
3         1440        12        cf1:      none      cf1:
10        1440        12        cf1:      none      none
11        1440        12        cf1:      none      none
15        1440        12        cf1:      none      none
20        1440        12        cf1:      none      none
===============================================================
A:ALA-1#


A:ALA-1# show log file-id 10
===============================================================
File Id List
===============================================================
file-id   rollover  retention   admin     backup    oper
                              location  location  location
---------------------------------------------------------------
10   1440        12        cf3:      cf2:      cf1:
Description : Main
```

```
===============================================================
File Id 10 Location cf1:
===============================================================
file name                                expired   state
---------------------------------------------------------------
cf1:\log\log0302-20060501-012205         yes       complete
cf1:\log\log0302-20060501-014049         yes       complete
cf1:\log\log0302-20060501-015344         yes       complete
cf1:\log\log0302-20060501-015547         yes       in progress
===============================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

filter-id

Syntax **filter-id** [*filter-id*]

Context show>log

Description This command displays event log filter policy information.

Parameters *filter-id* — Displays detailed information on the specified event filter policy ID.

Output **Event Log Filter Summary Output —** The following table describes the output fields for event log filter summary information.

Table 48: Event Log Filter Summary Output Fields

Label	Description
Filter Id	The event log filter ID.
Applied	no. The event log filter is not currently in use by a log ID.
	yes. The event log filter is currently in use by a log ID.
Default Action	drop. The default action for the event log filter is to drop events not matching filter entries.
	forward. The default action for the event log filter is to forward events not matching filter entries.
Description	The description string for the filter ID.

Sample Output

```
*A:ALA-48>config>log# show log filter-id
===============================================================================
Log Filters
===============================================================================
Filter Applied Default Description
Id             Action
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
1      no      forward
5      no      forward
```

```
10     no      forward
1001   yes     drop    Collect events for Serious Errors Log
===============================================================================
*A:ALA-48>config>log#
```

Event Log Filter Detailed Output — The following table describes the output fields for detailed event log filter information .

Table 49: Event Log Filter Detail Output Fields

Label	Description
Filter-id	The event log filter ID.
Applied	no — The event log filter is not currently in use by a log ID. yes — The event log filter is currently in use by a log ID.
Default Action	drop — The default action for the event log filter is to drop events not matching filter entries. forward — The default action for the event log filter is to forward events not matching filter entries.
Description (Filter-id)	The description string for the filter ID.

.

Table 50: Log Filter Match Criteria Output Fields

Label	Description
Entry-id	The event log filter entry ID.
Action	default — There is no explicit action for the event log filter entry and the filter's default action is used on matching events. drop — The action for the event log filter entry is to drop matching events. forward — The action for the event log filter entry is to forward matching events.
Description (Entry-id)	The description string for the event log filter entry.
Application	The event log filter entry application match criterion.
Event Number	The event log filter entry application event ID match criterion.

Table 50: Log Filter Match Criteria Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Severity	cleared — The log event filter entry application event severity cleared match criterion. indeterminate — The log event filter entry application event severity indeterminate match criterion. critical — The log event filter entry application event severity critical match criterion. major — The log event filter entry application event severity cleared match criterion. minor — The log event filter entry application event severity minor match criterion. warning — The log event filter entry application event severity warning match criterion.
Subject	Displays the event log filter entry application event ID subject string match criterion.
Router	Displays the event log filter entry application event ID **router** *router-instance* string match criterion.
Operator	There is an operator field for each match criteria: application, event number, severity, and subject. equal — Matches when equal to the match criterion. greaterThan — Matches when greater than the match criterion. greaterThanOrEqual — Matches when greater than or equal to the match criterion. lessThan — Matches when less than the match criterion. lessThanOrEqual — Matches when less than or equal to the match criterion. notEqual — Matches when not equal to the match criterion. off — No operator specified for the match criterion.

Sample Output

```
*A:ALA-48>config>log# show log filter-id 1001
===============================================================================
Log Filter
===============================================================================
Filter-id     : 1001     Applied       : yes      Default Action: drop
Description   : Collect events for Serious Errors Log
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Log Filter Match Criteria
```

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Entry-id      : 10                      Action        : forward
Application   :                         Operator      : off
Event Number  : 0                       Operator      : off
Severity      : major                   Operator      : greaterThanOrEqual
Subject       :                         Operator      : off
Match Type    : exact string                          :
Router        :                         Operator      : off
Match Type    : exact string                          :
Description   : Collect only events of major severity or higher
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
*A:ALA-48>config>log#
```

log-collector

Syntax **log-collector**

Context show>log

Description Show log collector statistics for the main, security, change and debug log collectors.

Output **Log-Collector Output —** The following table describes log-collector output fields.

Table 51: Show Log-Collector Output Fields

Label	Description
<Collector Name>	Main — The main event stream contains the events that are not explicitly directed to any other event stream. Security — The security stream contains all events that affect attempts to breach system security such as failed login attempts, attempts to access MIB tables to which the user is not granted access or attempts to enter a branch of the CLI to which access has not been granted. Change — The change event stream contains all events that directly affect the configuration or operation of this node. Debug — The debug-trace stream contains all messages in the debug stream.
Dest. Log ID	Specifies the event log stream destination.
Filter ID	The value is the index to the entry which defines the filter to be applied to this log's source event stream to limit the events output to this log's destination. If the value is 0, then all events in the source log are forwarded to the destination.
Status	Enabled — Logging is enabled. Disabled — Logging is disabled.

Table 51: Show Log-Collector Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Dest. Type	Console — A log created with the console type destination displays events to the physical console device. Events are displayed to the console screen whether a user is logged in to the console or not. Session — A user logged in to the console device or connected to the CLI via a remote telnet or SSH session can also create a log with a destination type of 'session'. Events are displayed to the session device until the user logs off. Syslog — Log events are sent to a syslog receiver. SNMP traps — Events defined as SNMP traps are sent to the configured SNMP trap destinations and are logged in NOTIFICATION-LOG-MIB tables. File — All selected log events will be directed to a file on one of the ’s compact flash disks. Memory — All selected log events will be directed to an in-memory storage area.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show log log-collector
===============================================================================
Log Collectors
===============================================================================
Main                Logged   : 1224                    Dropped  : 0
  Dest Log Id: 99    Filter Id: 0      Status: enabled    Dest Type: memory
  Dest Log Id: 100   Filter Id: 1001   Status: enabled    Dest Type: memory

Security            Logged   : 3                       Dropped  : 0

Change              Logged   : 3896                    Dropped  : 0

Debug               Logged   : 0                       Dropped  : 0

===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

log-id

Syntax **log-id** [*log-id*] [**severity** *severity-level*] [**application** *application*] [**sequence** *from-seq* [*to-seq*]] [**count** *count*] [**router** *router-instance* [**expression**]] [**message** *message* [**regular-**

expression]] [**subject** *subject* [**regexp**]] [**ascending** | **descending**] [**message** *format* [**msg-regexp**]]

Context show>log

Description This command displays an event log summary with settings and statistics or the contents of a specific log file, SNMP log, or memory log.

If the command is specified with no command line options, a summary of the defined system logs is displayed. The summary includes log settings and statistics.

If the log ID of a memory, SNMP, or file event log is specified, the command displays the contents of the log. Additional command line options control what and how the contents are displayed.

Contents of logs with console, session or syslog destinations cannot be displayed. The actual events can only be viewed on the receiving syslog or console device.

Parameters *log-id* — Displays the contents of the specified file log or memory log ID. The log ID must have a destination of an SNMP or file log or a memory log for this parameter to be used.

Default Displays the event log summary

Values 1 — 99

severity *severity-level* — Displays only events with the specified and higher severity.

Default All severity levels

Values cleared, indeterminate, critical, major, minor, warning

application *application* — Displays only events generated by the specified application.

Default All applications

Values bgp, cflowd, chassis, debug, igmp, lldp, mirror, ospf, pim, port, snmp, system, user, vrtr

expression — Specifies to use a regular expression as match criteria for the router instance string.

sequence *from-seq* [*to-seq*] — Displays the log entry numbers from a particular entry sequence number (*from-seq*) to another sequence number (*to-seq*). The *to-seq* value must be larger than the *from-seq* value.

If the *to-seq* number is not provided, the log contents to the end of the log is displayed unless the **count** parameter is present in which case the number of entries displayed is limited by the **count**.

Default All sequence numbers

Values 1 — 4294967295

count *count* — Limits the number of log entries displayed to the *number* specified.

Default All log entries

Values 1 — 4294967295

router-instance — Specifies a router name up to 32 characters to be used in the display criteria.

message *format* — Specifies a message string up to 400 characters to be used in the display criteria.

msg-regexp — Specifies to use a regular expression as parameters with the specified *message* string.

subject *subject* — Displays only log entries matching the specified text *subject* string. The subject is the object affected by the event, for example the port-id would be the subject for a link-up or link-down event.

regexp — Specifies to use a regular expression as parameters with the specified *subject* string..

ascending | **descending** — Specifies sort direction. Logs are normally shown from the newest entry to the oldest in **descending** sequence number order on the screen. When using the **ascending** parameter, the log will be shown from the oldest to the newest entry.

Default Descending

Output **Show Log-ID Output —** The following table describes the log ID field output.

Label	Description
Log Id	An event log destination.
Source	no – The event log filter is not currently in use by a log ID. yes – The event log filter is currently in use by a log ID.
Filter ID	The value is the index to the entry which defines the filter to be applied to this log's source event stream to limit the events output to this log's destination. If the value is 0, then all events in the source log are forwarded to the destination.
Admin State	Up – Indicates that the administrative state is up. Down – Indicates that the administrative state is down.
Oper State	Up – Indicates that the operational state is up. Down – Indicates that the operational state is down.
Logged	The number of events that have been sent to the log source(s) that were forwarded to the log destination.
Dropped	The number of events that have been sent to the log source(s) that were not forwarded to the log destination because they were filtered out by the log filter.
Dest. Type	Console – All selected log events are directed to the system console. If the console is not connected, then all entries are dropped. Syslog – All selected log events are sent to the syslog address. SNMP traps – Events defined as SNMP traps are sent to the configured SNMP trap destinations and are logged in NOTIFICATION-LOG-MIB tables. File – All selected log events will be directed to a file on one of the 's compact flash disks. Memory – All selected log events will be directed to an in-memory storage area.

Label	Description (Continued)
Dest ID	The event log stream destination.
Size	The allocated memory size for the log.
Time format	The time format specifies the type of timestamp format for events sent to logs where log ID destination is either syslog or file. When the time format is UTC, timestamps are written using the Coordinated Universal Time value. When the time format is local, timestamps are written in the system's local time.

Sample Output

```
A:ALA-1# show log log-id
===============================================================================
Event Logs
===============================================================================
Log Source    Filter Admin Oper  Logged  Dropped Dest       Dest  Size
Id            Id     State State                 Type       Id
-------------------------------------------------------------------
1   none      none   up    down  52      0       file       10     N/A
2   C         none   up    up    41      0       syslog     1      N/A
99  M         none   up    up    2135    0       memory            500
===============================================================================
A:ALA-1#
```

Sample Memory or File Event Log Contents Output

```
A:gal171# show log log-id 99
===============================================================================
Event Log 99
===============================================================================
Description : Default System Log
Memory Log contents  [size=500   next event=70  (not wrapped)]

69 2007/01/25 18:20:40.00 UTC CRITICAL: SYSTEM #2029 Base Redundancy
"The active CPM card A is operating in singleton mode.  There is no standby CPM card."

68 2007/01/25 17:48:38.16 UTC WARNING: SYSTEM #2006 Base LOGGER
"New event throttle interval 10, configuration modified"



67 2007/01/25 00:34:53.97 UTC CRITICAL: SYSTEM #2029 Base Redundancy
"The active CPM card A is operating in singleton mode.  There is no standby CPM card."

66 2007/01/24 22:59:22.00 UTC CRITICAL: SYSTEM #2029 Base Redundancy
"The active CPM card A is operating in singleton mode.  There is no standby CPM card."

65 2007/01/24 02:08:47.92 UTC CRITICAL: SYSTEM #2029 Base Redundancy
"The active CPM card A is operating in singleton mode.  There is no standby CPM card."
```

```
...
===============================================================================
A:gal171


A:NS061550532>config>log>snmp-trap-group# show log log-id 1
===============================================================================
Event Log 1
===============================================================================
SNMP Log contents  [size=100   next event=3  (not wrapped)]
Cannot send to SNMP target address 10.1.1.1.
Waiting to replay starting from event #2

14 2000/01/05 00:54:09.11 UTC WARNING: MPLS #2007 Base VR 1:
"Instance is in administrative state: inService, operational state: inService"

13 2000/01/05 00:54:09.11 UTC WARNING: MPLS #2008 Base VR 1:
"Interface linkToIxia is in administrative state: inService, operational state:
inService"
....
===============================================================================
A:NS061550532>config>log>snmp-trap-group#
```

snmp-trap-group

Syntax **snmp-trap-group** [*log-id*]

Context show>log

Description This command displays SNMP trap group configuration information.

Parameters *log-id* — Displays only SNMP trap group information for the specified trap group log ID.

Values 1 — 99

Output **SNMP Trap Group Output —** The following table describes SNMP trap group output fields.

Table 52: SNMP Trap Group Output Fields

Label	Description
Log-ID	The log destination ID for an event stream.
Address	The IP address of the trap receiver,
Port	The destination UDP port used for sending traps to the destination, expressed as a decimal integer.
Version	Specifies the SNMP version format to use for traps sent to the trap receiver. Valid values are snmpv1, snmpv2c, snmpv3.
Community	The community string required by **snmpv1** or **snmpv2c** trap receivers.
Security-Level	The required authentication and privacy levels required to access the views on this node.

Sample Output

```
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group# show log snmp-trap-group 44
===============================================================================
SNMP Trap Group 44
===============================================================================
Description : none
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : ntt-test
Address     : 10.10.10.3
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : ntttesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : disabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : never
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Name        : test2
Address     : 20.20.20.5
Port        : 162
Version     : v2c
Community   : ntttesting
Sec. Level  : none
Replay      : disabled
Replay from : n/a
Last replay : never
===============================================================================
A:SetupCLI>config>log>snmp-trap-group#
```

syslog

Syntax **syslog** [*syslog-id*]

Context show>log

Description This command displays syslog event log destination summary information or detailed information on a specific syslog destination.

Parameters *syslog-id* — Displays detailed information on the specified syslog event log destination.

Values 1 — 10

Output **Syslog Event Log Destination Summary Output —** The following table describes the syslog output fields.

Table 53: Show Log Syslog Output Fields

Label	Description
Syslog ID	The syslog ID number for the syslog destination.
IP Address	The IP address of the syslog target host.

Table 53: Show Log Syslog Output Fields (Continued)

Label	Description
Port	The configured UDP port number used when sending syslog messages.
Facility	The facility code for messages sent to the syslog target host.
Severity Level	The syslog message severity level threshold.
Below Level Dropped	A count of messages not sent to the syslog collector target because the severity level of the message was above the configured severity. The higher the level, the lower the severity.
Prefix Present	Yes — A log prefix was prepended to the syslog message sent to the syslog host. No — A log prefix was not prepended to the syslog message sent to the syslog host.
Description	A text description stored in the configuration file for a configuration context.
LogPrefix	The prefix string prepended to the syslog message.
Log-id	Events are directed to this destination.

Sample Output

```
*A:ALA-48>config>log# show log syslog
===============================================================================
Syslog Target Hosts
===============================================================================
Id     Ip Address                                       Port         Sev Level
         Below Level Drop                                 Facility    Pfx Level
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
2      unknown                                          514          info
         0                                                local7       yes
3      unknown                                          514          info
         0                                                local7       yes
5      unknown                                          514          info
         0                                                local7       yes
10     unknown                                          514          info
         0                                                local7       yes
===============================================================================
*A:ALA-48>config>log#

*A:MV-SR>config>log# show log syslog 1
===============================================================================
Syslog Target 1
===============================================================================
IP Address       : 192.168.15.22
Port             : 514
Log-ids          : none
Prefix           : Sr12
Facility         : local1
Severity Level   : info
Prefix Level     : yes
```

```
Below Level Drop : 0
Description      : Linux Station Springsteen
===============================================================================
*A:MV-SR>config>log#
```

Clear Commands

log

Syntax **log** *log-id*

Context clear

Description Reinitializes/rolls over the specified memory/file event log ID. Memory logs are reinitialized and cleared of contents. File logs are manually rolled over by this command.

This command is only applicable to event logs that are directed to file destinations and memory destinations.

SNMP, syslog and console/session logs are not affected by this command.

Parameters *log-id.* The event log ID to be initialized/rolled over.

Values 1 — 100

sFlow

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information to configure sFlow.

Topics in this chapter include:

- sFlow Overview on page 530
- sFlow Features on page 531
  - → sFlow Counter Polling Architecture on page 531
  - → sFlow Support on Logical Ethernet Ports on page 532
  - → sFlow SAP Counter Map on page 532
- sFlow Record Formats on page 533

sFlow Overview

Some Layer 2 network deployments collect statistics on physical Ethernet ports and on Layer 2 interfaces at a high-frequency using a push model to, among others, monitor traffic, diagnose network issues, and/or provide billing. SR OS supports cflowd and XML accounting; however, those mechanisms are either Layer-3 specific, or focus on providing statistics at extremely large scale (thus use a pull model and cannot support high-frequency counter updates). To meet the statistics collection requirements of such Layer 2 deployments, SROS supports sFlow statistics export using sFlow version 5.

The following list main caveats for sFlow support:

- sFlow is supported on 7950 XRS product family and on 7750 SR12E only
- sFlow data sources require multi-core line cards, enabling sFlow on a card that is not a multi-core is not blocked and can be detected by SNMP trap/log generated by sFlow
- To meet high-frequency export of counters, sFlow implementation is targeted for low per-port VLL/VPLS SAP scale only. The configuration is blocked if the per-port VLL/VPLS SAP limit exceeds sFlow limit. Contact your Alcatel-Lucent representative for per-platform scaling limits applicable.

sFlow Features

This section describes sFlow functionality supported in SR OS.

sFlow Counter Polling Architecture

When sFlow is enabled on an SROS router, the system takes upon a role of an sFlow network device as described in sFlow protocol version 5. A single sFlow agent can be configured for counter polling (flow sampling is not supported). There is no support for sub-agents.

The sFlow agent sends sFlow data to an operator-configured sFlow receiver. A single receiver is supported with configurable primary and backup IPv4 or IPv6 UDP destination sockets for redundancy (each sFlow packet exported is duplicated to both sockets when both are configured). The receiver's UDP sockets can be reachable either in-band or out-of-band (default) and must both be IPv4 or IPv6. An operator can also set the maximum size of the sFlow datagrams. Operators are expected to set this value to avoid IP fragmentation (Datagrams exceeding the specified size are fragmented before handed to IP layer).

The sFlow agent manages all sFlow data sources in the system. SROS supports sFlow data that are physical ports. When a port is configured as an sFlow data source, counters for that port and all VPLS and ePipe SAPs on that port are collected and exported using sFlow (see later on section for record format). Flow data sources can only be configured when an sFlow receiver is configured. To remove the sFlow receiver, all sFlow data sources must first be de-configured at the port level.

Each data source is processed at a 15-second, non-configurable interval. If multiple data sources exist on a line card, the line card distributes the processing of each data source within a 15 second interval to avoid sFlow storms. When a timer expires to trigger a data source processing, data is collected for the physical port and for all VLL and VPLS SAPs on that port and exported using sFlow version 5 records as described in later subsections of this document. Each port and all SAP records for a given data source for a given interval are collected and sent with the counter sequence number and the timestamp value (the time value corresponds to the time counters were actually collected by a line card). The timestamp value uses line card's sysUptime value, which is synchronized with CPM time automatically by the system. A line card sends the counters to a CPM card, where sFlow UDP datagrams are created, sequenced with the CPM sequence number and sent to the receiver. If no UDP sockets are configured, no errors are generated because data is not sent. If no UDP sockets are reachable, the created UDP sFlow datagrams are dropped.

Note that line cards will reset the counter record sequence numbers if, as a result of configuration or operational change, the return statistics no longer provide continuity with the previous interval. The following lists examples of then this takes place:

- The card hard or soft resets
- The MDA resets

- The sFlow agent counter map changes

Note that CPM will reset the sFlow datagram sequence numbers if, as a result of configuration or operational change, the sFlow datagram to be sent no longer provides continuity with the previous datagram. The following lists examples of when this takes place:

- HA switch
- CTL reboot
- Creation of an sFlow receiver

sFlow Support on Logical Ethernet Ports

sFlow data sources operate in a context of physical Ethernet port. To enable sFlow on Ethernet logical ports and their SAPs, an operator must explicitly enable sFlow on every physical Ethernet port that is a member of the given logical port. Currently only LAG logical ports are supported (including MC-LAG). Note that sFlow configuration does not change automatically when a port is added or removed to or from a LAG.

For SAPs on a LAG, egress statistics will increment based on ports used by each SAP on LAG egress while ingress statistics will increment based on ports used by each SAP on LAG ingress unless LAG features like, for example, per-fp-ingress-queuing or per-fp-sap-optimization result in SAP statistics collection against a single LAG port.

If logical-level view is required, for example, per LAG statistics, a receiver is expected to perform data correlation based on per-physical port interface and SAP records exported for the given logical port's physical ports and their SAPs. sFlow data records contain information that allows physical ports/SAP records correlation to a logical port. See sFlow Record Formats.

Note: Correlation of records must allow for small difference in timestamp values returned for member ports or SAP on a LAG because all ports run independent timestamps.

sFlow SAP Counter Map

To allow per SAP sFlow statistics export, operators must configure ingress and egress sFlow counter maps. The counter maps are required, because SROS systems support more granular per policer/queue counters and not IF-MIB counters per VLL/VPLS SAPs. In an absence of a map configured, 0's will be returned in corresponding statistics records.

A single ingress and a single egress counter map are supported. The maps specify which ingress and which egress SAP QoS policy queue/policer statistics map to sFlow unicast, multicast, and broadcast counters returned in an sFlow SAP record. Multiple queues and/or policers can map to each of unicast, multicast, broadcast counters. A single queue/policer can only map to one type of

traffic. Queues, policers configured in a SAP QoS policy but not configured in an sFlow map or vice-versa are ignored when sFlow statistics are collected.

sFlow Record Formats

Table 54 describes sFlow record used and exported:

Table 54: sFlow Record Fields

Record	Field	Value
sFlow Datagram Header (SAP and port)	Datagram version	5
	Agent Address	Active CPM IPv4 address (from BoF)
	Sub-agent ID	0
	Sequence number	CPM inserted sFlow datagram sequence number
	SysUptime	sysUptime when the counters for records included in the datagram were collected by the line card
	NumSamples	Number of counter records in the datagram
Counter header (SAP and Port)	Enterprise	0 (standard sFlow)
	sFlow Sample Type	4 (Expanded counter sample)
	Sample Length	sFlow packet size excluding header
	Sequence number	Line card-inserted sequence number
	Source ID Type	0
	Source ID Index	tmnxPortId of the physical port (sFlow data source)
	Counter records	Count of counter records in the datagram

Table 54: sFlow Record Fields (Continued)

Record	Field	Value
Ethernet Interface Counters (EIC) – port (Ethernet Layer)	Enterprise	Statistics returned are based on dot3StatsEntry in EtherLike-MIB.mib. Statistics support may depend on hardware type.
	Format	
	Flow data length	
	Alignment Errors	
	FCS Errors	
	Single Collision Frames	
	Multiple Collision Frames	
	SQE Test Errors	
	Deferred Transmissions	
	Late Collisions	
	Excessive Collisions	
	Internal Mac Transmit Errors	
	Carrier Sense Errors	
	Frame Too Longs	
	Internal Mac Receive Errors	
	Symbol Errors	

Table 54: sFlow Record Fields (Continued)

Record	Field	Value
Generic Interface Counters (GIC) – port/SAP	Enterprise	0 (standard sFlow)
	Format	1 (GIC)
	Flow data length	88
	ifIndex	Port: ifIndex (tmnxPortId) of phys port SAP: SapEncapValue - part of SAP SNMP key
	ifType	Port: 6 (EthernetCsmacd) SAP: 1 (Other)
	ifSpeed	Port: Port speed value SAP: • top 32 bits: svcId for SAP (TIMETRA-SAP.mib) • lower 32 bits: sapPortId (TIMETRA-SAP.mib) **Notes:** The values plus ifIndex in the record are SAP SNMP key. **Notes:** SapPortId is LAG's tmnxPortId for SAPs on a LAG and port's tmnxPortId for SAPs on physical port
	ifDirection	Derived from MAU MIB (0 = unknown, 1 = full duplex, 2 = half duplex, 3 = in, 4 = out)
	ifAdminStatus	0 (down) 1 (up)
	ifOperStatus	0 (down) 1 (up)
	Input Octets	Statistics return for port are based on ifEntry or ifXEntry in IF-MIB.mib as applicable. Statistics returned for SAPs are sum of counters based on the sFlow ingress/egress counter map configured.
	Input Packets	
	Input Multicast packets	
	Input Broadcast packets	
	Input Discarded packets	

Table 54: sFlow Record Fields (Continued)

Record	Field	Value
Generic Interface Counters (GIC) – port/SAP (Continued)	Input Errors	Statistics return for port are based on ifEntry or ifXEntry in IF-MIB.mib as applicable. Statistics returned for SAPs are sum of counters based on the sFlow ingress/egress counter map configured.
	Input Unknown Protocol Packets	
	Output Octets	
	Output Packets	
	Output Multicast packets	
	Output Broadcast packets	
	Output Discarded packets	
	Output Errors	
	Promiscuous Mode	0 (FALSE)

Notes:

- 0 is returned for statistics that are not supported by a given hardware type.
- If required, CPM executes rollover logic to convert internal 64-bit counters to a 32-bit sFlowd counter returned.

sFlow Command Reference

Command Hierarchies

- System Commands
- Show Commands

To enable sFlow collection, an operator must enable sFlow on physical Ethernet ports in addition to the following configuration. Refer to the Ethernet Port Commands section in the 7750 or 7950 SR OS Interface Configuration Guide for the CLI required to enable sFlow on physical ports.

System Commands

config
- **sflow**
  - **egress-counter-map** { **policer** *policer-id* | **queue** *queue-id*} **traffic-type** {**unicast** | **multi-cast** | **broadcast** } [**create**]
  - **no egress-counter-map** { **policer** *policer-id* | **queue** *queue-id* }
  - **ingress-counter-map** { **policer** *policer-id* | **queue** *queue-id* } **traffic-type** { **unicast** | **multi-cast** | **broadcast** } [**create**]
  - **no ingress-counter-map** { **policer** *policer-id* | **queue** *queue-id* }
  - **receiver** *receiver-name* [**create**]
  - **no receiver**
    - **ip-addr-primary** *ip-address[:port]*
    - **no ip-addr-primary**
    - **ip-addr-backup** *ip-address[:port]*
    - **no ip-addr-backup**
    - **max-data-size** *bytes*

Show Commands

show
- **sflow**

Configuration Commands

sFlow System Commands

sflow

Syntax **sflow**

Context config>sflow

Description This command enables context to configured sflow agent parameters.

egress-counter-map

Syntax **egress-counter-map policer** *policer-id* **traffic-type** {**unicast** | **multicast** | **broadcast**} [**create**]
egress-counter-map queue *queue-id* **traffic-type** {**unicast** | **multicast** | **broadcast**} [**create**]
no egress-counter-map policer *policer-id*
no egress-counter-map queue *queue-id*

Context config>sflow

Description This command configures the egress counter map for sFlow. The map must be configured so sFlow agent understands how to interpret data collected against SAP queues and policers. Multiple queues and policers can be mapped to the same **traffic-type** using separate line entries.

The **no** form of this command deletes a SAP policy queue/policer from the map.

Default No mapping is created by default.

Parameters *policer-id* — Specifies the policer ID in a SAP egress QoS policy. If the SAP policy does not have a policer with the specified ID, the map entry will be ignored for this SAP.

Values 1 — 8

queue-id — Specifies the queue ID in a SAP egress QoS policy. If the SAP policy does not have a queue with the specified ID, the map entry will be ignored for this SAP.

Values 1 — 8

ingress-counter-map

Syntax **ingress-counter-map policer** *policer-id* **traffic-type** {**unicast** | **multicast** | **broadcast**} [**create**]
ingress-counter-map queue *queue-id* **traffic-type** {**unicast** | **multicast** | **broadcast**} [**create**]
no ingress-counter-map policer *policer-id*
no ingress-counter-map queue *queue-id*

Context config>sflow

Description This command configures the ingress counter map for sFlow. The map must be configured so sFlow agent understands how to interpret data collected against SAP queues and policers. Multiple queues/policers can be mapped to the same **traffic-type** using separate line entries.

The **no** form of this command deletes a SAP policy queue/policer from the map.

Default No mapping is created by default.

Parameters *policer-id* — Specifies the policer ID in a SAP ingress QoS policy. If the SAP policy does not have a policer with the specified ID, the map entry will be ignored for this SAP.

Values 1 — 32

queue-id — Specifies the queue ID in a SAP ingress QoS policy. If the SAP policy does not have a queue with the specified ID, the map entry will be ignored for this SAP.

Values 1 — 32

receiver

Syntax **receiver** *receiver-name* [**create**]
no receiver

Context config>sflow

Description This command creates an sFlow receiver context or enters existing sFlow receiver context for the sFlow agent.

The **no** form of this command deletes an existing sFlow receiver context.

Default No receivers are created by default.

Parameters *receiver-names* — String of up to 127 characters.

ip-addr-primary

Syntax **ip-addr-primary** *ip-address[:port]*
no ip-addr-primary

Context config>sflow>receiver

Description This command configures primary IPv4 or IPv6 destination address for the sFlow agent to send sFlow datagrams to. Optionally a destination port can also be configured (by default port 6343 is used).

The **no** form of this command deletes primary sFlow receiver destination.

Default **no ip-addr-primary**

Parameters *ip-address* — Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address to send the sFlow datagrams to.

Values

a.b.c.d	(IPv4)
x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x	(IPv6)
[x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x]	(IPv6)
x - [0..FFFF]H	

port — Specifies the UDP destination port to send the sFlow datagrams to.

Values 1 — 65535

ip-addr-backup

Syntax **ip-addr-backup** *ip-address[:port]*
no ip-addr-backup

Context config>sflow>receiver

Description This command configures back-up IPv4 or IPv6 destination address for the sFlow agent to send sFlow datagrams to. Optionally a destination port can also be configured (by default port 6343 is used).

The **no** form of this command deletes backup sFlow receiver destination.

Default **no ip-addr-backup**

Parameters *ip-address* — Specifies the IPv4 or IPv6 address to send the sFlow datagrams to.

Values

a.b.c.d	(IPv4)
x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x	(IPv6)
[x:x:x:x:x:x:x:x]	(IPv6)
x - [0..FFFF]H	

port — Specifies the UDP destination port to send the sFlow datagrams to.

Values 1 — 65535

max-data-size

Syntax **max-data-size** *bytes*

Context config>sflow>receiver

Description This configures maximum data size for sFlow UDP datagrams sent to the collector.

To restore default configuration, execute max-data-size 1400.

Default **1400** bytes

Parameters *bytes* — An integer

Values 200— 1500

Show Commands

sflow

Syntax **sflow**

Context show>sflow

Description This command displays the primary and backup receiver statistics, the mapping configuration and a summary of how many ports and SAPs have sFlow enabled.

Show sFlow Output Fields — The following table describes show sflow output fields.

Label	Description
sFlow Status	
Receiver	Displays the configured name for the sFlow receiver.
Max Data Size	The configured maximum data size for sFlow UDP packets.
IP Addr Primary	The primary IP address and destination port for sFlow receiver.
IP Addr Backup	The backup IP address and destination port for sFlow receiver.
Packets Sent	The number of packets sent successfully to the primary or backup receiver destination, since the destination was configured, CPM card HA switchover, or system reboot.
Packet Errors	The number of packets that could not be sent to the primary or backup receiver destination because of an error, since the destination was configured, CPM card HA switchover, or system reboot. An example of an error is destination IP not reachable.
Last Packet Sent	Displays the date and time of the last packet sent.
Counter Pollers	
Port	Displays the port on which sFlow is enabled.
No. of SAPs	The number of SAPs on the port with sFlow enabled.
No. of sFlow counter pollers	The number of sFlow counter pollers.
Counter Mappings	
Direction	Displays the direction of traffic (ingress or egress) the map entry applies to.

Label	Description
Policer/Queue	Displays the policer or queue instance being mapped by sFlow map.
Traffic type	Displays the type of sFlow traffic statistics (unicast, multicast or broadcast) that the policer/queue maps to.
No. of sFlow counter mappings	The number of entries in the sFlow ingress and egress counter map.

Sample Output

```
*B:bkvm10# show sflow
===============================================================================
sFlow Status
===============================================================================
Receiver             : pat
Max Data Size        : 312

IP Addr Primary      : 138.120.142.163:6343
Packets Sent         : 2572
Packet Errors        : 2
Last Packet Sent     : 07/08/2014 22:23:57nt

IP Addr Backup       : N/A
Packets Sent         : 0
Packet Errors        : 0
Last Packet Sent     : No Pkts sent
-----------------------------------
Counter Pollers
-----------------------------------
Port           No. of SAPs
-----------------------------------
1/1/2          3
1/2/1          0
-----------------------------------
No. of sFlow counter pollers: 2
-----------------------------------
-------------------------------------------------
Counter Mappings
-------------------------------------------------
Direction      Policer/Queue  Traffic Type
-------------------------------------------------
egress         queue 1        unicast
egress         queue 5        multicast
egress         queue 8        broadcast
ingress        policer 1      unicast
ingress        policer 6      multicast
ingress        policer 12     broadcast
-------------------------------------------------
No. of sFlow counter mappings: 6
-------------------------------------------------
===============================================================================
```

Facility Alarms

In This Chapter

This chapter provides information about Facility Alarms.

Topics in this chapter include:

- Facility Alarms Overview on page 546
- Facility Alarms vs. Log Events on page 547
- Facility Alarm Severities and Alarm LED Behavior on page 549
- Facility Alarm Hierarchy on page 550
- Facility Alarm Hierarchy on page 550

Facility Alarms Overview

Facility Alarms provide a useful tool for operators to easily track and display the basic status of their equipment facilities.

CLI display (show routines) allows the system operator to easily identify current facility alarm conditions and recently cleared alarms without searching event logs or monitoring various card and port show commands to determine the health of basic equipment in the system such as cards and ports.

The SR OS alarm model is based on RFC 3877, *Alarm Management Information Base (MIB)*, (which evolved from the IETF DISMAN drafts).

Facility Alarms vs. Log Events

Facility Alarms are different than (log) events. Events are a single point in time and are generally stateless. Facility Alarms have a state (at least two states: active and clear) and duration and can be modeled with state transition events (raised, cleared).

The Facility Alarms module processes log events in order to generate the raised and cleared state for the alarms. If a raising log event is suppressed under event-control, then the associated Alarm will not be raised. If a clearing log event is suppressed under event-control, then it is still processed for the purpose of clearing the associated alarm. Log event filtering, throttling and discarding of events during overload do not affect Facility Alarm processing. Log events are processed by the Facility Alarm module before they are discarded in all cases.

Figure 14 illustrates the relationship of log events, alarms and the LEDs.

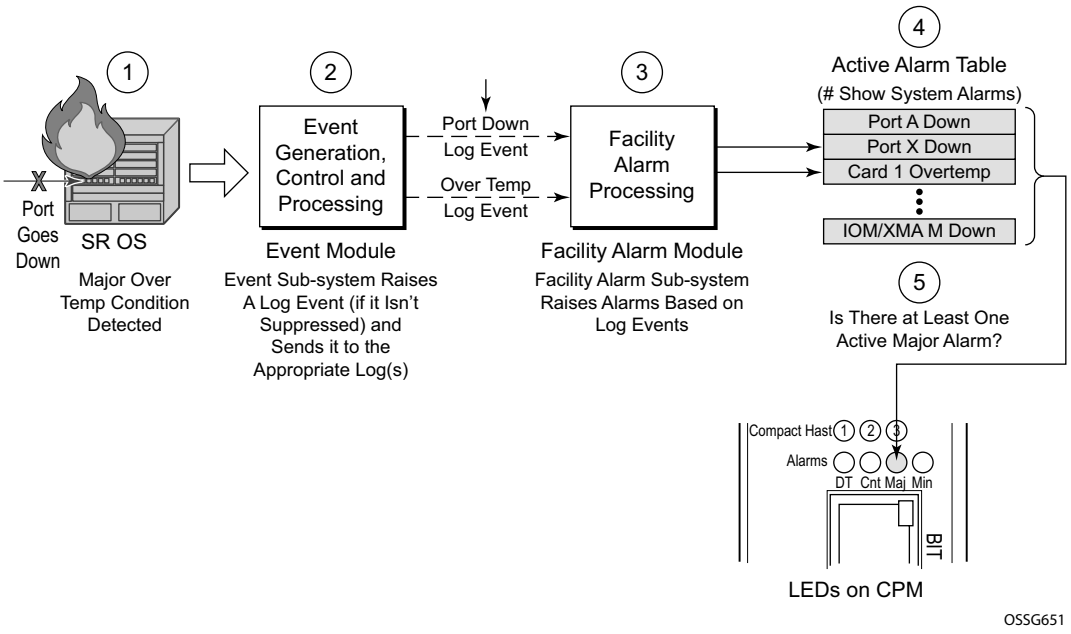


Figure 14: Log Events, Alarms and LEDs

Facility Alarms are different and independent functionality from other uses of the term *alarm* in SR-OS such as:

- Log events that use the term **alarm** (tmnxEqPortSonetAlarm)
- **configure card fp hi-bw-mcast-src** [**alarm**]
- **configure mcast-management multicast-info-policy bundle channel source-override video analyzer alarms**
- **configure port ethernet report-alarm**
- **configure system thresholds no memory-use-alarm**
- **configure system thresholds rmon no alarm**
- **configure system security cpu-protection policy alarm**

Facility Alarm Severities and Alarm LED Behavior

The Alarm LEDs on the CPM/CCM reflects the current status of the Facility Alarms:

- The Critical Alarm LED is lit if there is 1 or more active Critical Facility Alarms
- Similarly with the Major and Minor alarm LEDs
- The OT Alarm LED is not controlled by the Facility Alarm module

The supported alarm severities are as follows:

- Critical (with an associated LED on the CPM/CCM)
- Major (with an associated LED on the CPM/CCM)
- Minor (with an associated LED on the CPM/CCM)
- Warning (no LED)

Alarms inherit their severity from the raising event.

Log events that are a raising event for a facility alarm configured with a severity of *indeterminate* or *cleared* will result in those alarms not being raised (but clearing events are processed in order to clear alarms regardless of the severity of the clearing event).

Changing the severity of a raising event only affects subsequent occurrences of that event and alarms. Alarms that are already raised when their raising event severity is changed maintain their original severity.

Facility Alarm Hierarchy

Facility Alarms for *children* objects is not raised for failure of a *parent* object. For example, when an MDA/XMA fails (or is *shutdown*) there is not a set of port alarms raised.

When a parent alarm is cleared, children alarms that are still in occurrence on the node appears in the active alarms list. For example, when a port fails there is a port alarm, but if the MDA/XMA is later shutdown the port alarm is cleared (and a card alarm will be active for the MDA/XMA). If the MDA/XMA comes back into service, and the port is still down, then a port alarm becomes active once again.

The supported Facility Alarm hierarchy is as follows (parent objects that are *down* cause alarms in all children to be masked):

- CPM -> Compact Flash
- CCM -> Compact Flash
- IOM/IMM -> MDA -> Port -> Channel
- XCM -> XMA -> Port
- MCM -> MDA -> Port -> Channel

Note that a *masked* alarm is not the same as a *cleared* alarm. The cleared alarm queue does not display entries for previously raised alarms that are currently masked. If the masking event goes away, then the previously raised alarms will once again be visible in the active alarm queue.

Facility Alarm List

The following table(s) show the supported Facility Alarms.

Table 55: Alarm, Alarm Name/Raising Event, Sample Details String and Clearing Event

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Sample Details String	Clearing Event
7-2001-1	tmnxEqCardFailure	Class MDA Module: failed, reason: Mda 1 failed startup tests	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2003-1	tmnxEqCardRemoved	Class CPM Module: removed	tmnxEqCardInserted
7-2004-1	tmnxEqWrongCard	Class IOM Module: wrong type inserted	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2005-1	tmnxEnvTempTooHigh	Chassis 1: temperature too high	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2006-1	tmnxEqFanFailure	Fan 2 failed	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2007-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureOvt	Power supply 2 over temperature	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2008-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureAc	Power supply 1 AC failure	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2009-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureDc	Power supply 2 DC failure	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2011-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyRemoved	Power supply 1, power lost	tmnxEqPowerSupplyInserted
7-2017-1	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingHoldover	Synchronous Timing interface in holdover state	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingHoldoverClear
7-2019-1	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1Alarm with attribute tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm == 'los(1)'	Synchronous Timing interface, alarm los on reference 1	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1AlarmClear
7-2019-2	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1Alarm with attribute tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm == 'oof(2)'	Synchronous Timing interface, alarm oof on reference 1	same as 7-2019-1
7-2019-3	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1Alarm with attribute tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm == 'oopir(3)'	Synchronous Timing interface, alarm oopir on reference 1	same as 7-2019-1
7-2021-x	same as 7-2019-x but for ref2	same as 7-2019-x but for ref2	same as 7-2019-x but for ref2
7-2030-x	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS input	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS input	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS input
7-2033-1	tmnxChassisUpgradeInProgress	Class CPM Module: software upgrade in progress	tmnxChassisUpgradeComplete

Table 55: Alarm, Alarm Name/Raising Event, Sample Details String and Clearing Event (Continued)

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Sample Details String	Clearing Event
7-2050-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureInput	Power supply 1 input failure	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2051-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureOutput	Power supply 1 output failure	tmnxChassisNotification Clear
7-2073-x	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS2 input	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS2 input	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS2 input
7-2092-1	tmnxEqPowerCapacityExceeded	The system has reached maximum power capacity <x> watts	tmnxEqPowerCapacityExceededClear
7-2094-1	tmnxEqPowerLostCapacity	The system can no longer support configured devices. Power capacity dropped to <x> watts	tmnxEqPowerLostCapacityClear
7-2096-1	tmnxEqPowerOverloadState	The system has reached critical power capacity. Increase available power now.	tmnxEqPowerOverloadStateClear
7-4001-1	tmnxInterChassisCommsDown	Control communications disrupted between the Active CPM and the chassis	tmnxInterChassisCommsUp
7-4003-1	tmnxCpmIcPortDown	CPM Interconnect Port is not operational. Error code = invalid-connection	tmnxCpmIcPortUp
7-4007-1	tmnxCpmANoLocalIcPort	CPM A can not reach the chassis using its local CPM interconnect ports	tmnxCpmALocalIcPortAvail
7-4008-1	tmnxCpmBNoLocalIcPort	CPM B can not reach the chassis using its local CPM interconnect ports	tmnxCpmBLocalIcPortAvail
7-4017-1	tmnxSfmIcPortDown	SFM interconnect Port is not operational. Error code = invalid-connection to Fabric 10 IcPort 2	tmnxSfmIcPortUp
59-2004-1	linkDown	Interface intf-towards-node-B22 is not operational	linkUp
64-2091-1	tmnxSysLicenseInvalid	Error - <reason> record. <hw> will reboot the chassis <timeRemaining>	None
64-2092-1	tmnxSysLicenseExpiresSoon	The license installed on <hw> expires <timeRemaining>.	None

Table 56: Alarm Name/Raising Event, Cause, Effect and Recovery

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Cause	Effect	Recovery
7-2001-1	tmnxEqCardFailure	Generated when one of the cards in a chassis has failed. The card type may be IOM (XCM), MDA (XMA), SFM, CCM, CPM, Compact Flash, etc. The reason is indicated in the details of the log event or alarm, and also available in the tmnxChassisNotifyCardFailure Reason attribute included in the SNMP notification.	The effect is dependent on the card that has failed. IOM (XCM) or MDA (XMA) failure will cause a loss of service for all services running on that card. A fabric failure can impact traffic to/from all cards.	Before taking any recovery steps collect a tech-support file, then try resetting (clear) the card. If that doesn't work then try removing and then re-inserting the card. If that doesn't work then replace the card.
7-2003-1	tmnxEqCardRemoved	Generated when a card is removed from the chassis. The card type may be IOM (XCM), MDA (XMA), SFM, CCM, CPM, Compact Flash, etc.	The effect is dependent on the card that has been removed. IOM (XCM) or MDA (XMA) removal will cause a loss of service for all services running on that card. A fabric removal can impact traffic to/ from all cards.	Before taking any recovery steps collect a tech-support file, then try re-inserting the card. If that doesn't work then replace the card.
7-2004-1	tmnxEqWrongCard	Generated when the wrong type of card is inserted into a slot of the chassis. Even though a card may be physically supported by the slot, it may have been administratively configured to allow only certain card types in a particular slot location. The card type may be IOM (XCM), MDA (XMA), SFM, CCM, CPM, Compact Flash, etc.	The effect is dependent on the card that has been incorrectly inserted. Incorrect IOM (XCM) or MDA (XMA) insertion will cause a loss of service for all services running on that card.	Insert the correct card into the correct slot, and ensure the slot is configured for the correct type of card.
7-2005-1	tmnxEnvTempTooHigh	Generated when the temperature sensor reading on an equipment object is greater than its configured threshold.	This could be causing intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	Remove or power down the affected cards, or improve the cooling to the node. More powerful fan trays may also be required.

Table 56: Alarm Name/Raising Event, Cause, Effect and Recovery (Continued)

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Cause	Effect	Recovery
7-2006-1	tmnxEqFanFailure	Generated when one of the fans in a fan tray has failed.	This could be cause temperature to rise and resulting intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	Replace the fan tray immediately, improve the cooling to the node, or reduce the heat being generated in the node by removing cards or powering down the node.
7-2007-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureOvt	Generated when the temperature sensor reading on a power supply module is greater than its configured threshold.	This could be causing intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	Remove or power down the affected power supply module or improve the cooling to the node. More powerful fan trays may also be required. The power supply itself may be faulty so replacement may be necessary.
7-2008-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureAc	Generated when an AC failure is detected on a power supply.	Reduced power can cause intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	First try re-inserting the power supply. If that doesn't work, then replace the power supply.
7-2009-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureDc	Generated when an DC failure is detected on a power supply.	Reduced power can cause intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	First try re-inserting the power supply. If that doesn't work, then replace the power supply.
7-2011-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyRemoved	Generated when one of the chassis's power supplies is removed.	Reduced power can cause intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	Re-insert the power supply.

Table 56: Alarm Name/Raising Event, Cause, Effect and Recovery (Continued)

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Cause	Effect	Recovery
7-2017-1	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingHoldover	Generated when the synchronous equipment timing subsystem transitions into a holdover state.	Any node-timed ports will have very slow frequency drift limited by the central clock oscillator stability. The oscillator meets the holdover requirements of a Stratum 3 and G.813 Option 1 clock.	Address issues with the central clock input references.
7-2019-1	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1Alarm with attribute tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm == 'los(1)'	Generated when an alarm condition on the first timing reference is detected. The type of alarm (los, oof, etc) is indicated in the details of the log event or alarm, and is also available in the tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm attribute included in the SNMP notification. The SNMP notification will have the same indices as those of the tmnxCpmCardTable.	Timing reference 1 cannot be used as a source of timing into the central clock.	Address issues with the signal associated with timing reference 1.
7-2019-2	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1Alarm with attribute tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm == 'oof(2)'	same as 7-2019-1	same as 7-2019-1	same as 7-2019-1
7-2019-3	tmnxEqSyncIfTimingRef1Alarm with attribute tmnxSyncIfTimingNotifyAlarm == 'oopir(3)'	same as 7-2019-1	same as 7-2019-1	same as 7-2019-1
7-2021-x	same as 7-2019-x but for ref2	same as 7-2019-x but for the second timing reference	same as 7-2019-x but for the second timing reference	same as 7-2019-x but for the second timing reference
7-2030-x	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS input	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS timing reference	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS timing reference	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS timing reference

Table 56: Alarm Name/Raising Event, Cause, Effect and Recovery (Continued)

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Cause	Effect	Recovery
7-2033-1	tmnxChassisUpgradeInProgress	The tmnxChassisUpgradeInProgress notification is generated only after a CPM switchover occurs and the new active CPM is running new software, while the IOMs/XCMs are still running old software. This is the start of the upgrade process. The tmnxChassisUpgradeInProgress notification will continue to be generated every 30 minutes while at least one IOM/XCM is still running older software.	A software mismatch between the CPM and IOM/XCM is generally fine for a short duration (during an upgrade) but may not allow for correct long term operation.	Complete the upgrade of all IOMs/XCMs.
7-2050-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureInput	Generated when an input failure is detected on a power supply.	Reduced power can cause intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	First try re-inserting the power supply. If that doesn't work, then replace the power supply.
7-2051-1	tmnxEqPowerSupplyFailureOutput	Generated when an output failure is detected on a power supply.	Reduced power can cause intermittent errors and could also cause permanent damage to components.	First try re-inserting the power supply. If that doesn't work, then replace the power supply.
7-2073-x	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS2 input	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS 2 timing reference	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS 2 timing reference	same as 7-2019-x but for the BITS 2 timing reference
7-2092-1	tmnxEqPowerCapacityExceeded	Generated when a device needs power to boot, but there is not enough power capacity to support the device.	A non-powered device will not boot until the power capacity is increased to support the device.	Add a new power supply to the system, or change the faulty power supply with a working one.
7-2094-1	tmnxEqPowerLostCapacity	Generated when a power supply fails or is removed which puts the system in an overloaded situation.	Devices are powered off in order of lowest power priority until the available power capacity can support the powered devices.	Add a new power supply to the system, or change the faulty power supply with a working one.

Table 56: Alarm Name/Raising Event, Cause, Effect and Recovery (Continued)

Alarm *1	Alarm Name/Raising Event	Cause	Effect	Recovery
7-2096-1	tmnxEqPowerOverloadState	Generated when the overloaded power capacity can not support the power requirements and there are no further devices that can be powered off.	The system runs a risk of experiencing brownouts while the available power capacity does not meet the required power consumption.	Add power capacity or manually shutdown devices until the power capacity meets the power needs.
59-2004-1	linkDown	A linkDown trap signifies that the SNMP entity, acting in an agent role, has detected that the ifOperStatus object for one of its communication links is about to enter the down state from some other state (but not from the notPresent state).	The indicated interface is taken down.	If the ifAdminStatus is down then the interface state is deliberate and there is no recovery. If the ifAdminStatus is up then try to determine that cause of the interface going down: cable cut, distal end went down, etc.
64-2091-1	tmnxSysLicenseInvalid	Generated when the license becomes invalid for the reason specified in the log event/alarm.	The system will reboot at the end of the time remaining.	Configure a valid license file location and file name.
64-2092-1	tmnxSysLicenseExpiresSoon	Generated when the license is due to expire soon.	The system will reboot at the end of the time remaining.	Configure a valid license file location and file name.

The linkDown Facility Alarm is supported for the following objects (note that all objects may not be supported on all platforms):

Table 57: linkDown Facility Alarm Support

Object	Supported?
Ethernet Ports	Yes
Sonet Section, Line and Path (POS)	Yes
TDM Ports (E1, T1, DS3) including CES MDAs/CMAs	Yes
TDM Channels (DS3 channel configured in an STM-1 port)	Yes
ATM Ports	Yes
Ethernet LAGs	No

Table 57: linkDown Facility Alarm Support (Continued)

Object	Supported?
APS groups	No
Bundles (MLPPP, IMA, etc)	No
ATM channels, Ethernet VLANs, Frame Relay DLCIs	No

Standards and Protocol Support

Note: The information presented is subject to change without notice.

Alcatel-Lucent assumes no responsibility for inaccuracies contained herein.

ANCP/L2CP

RFC 5851, *Framework and Requirements for an Access Node Control Mechanism in Broadband Multi-Service Networks*

draft-ietf-ancp-protocol-02, *Protocol for Access Node Control Mechanism in Broadband Networks*

ATM

AF-ILMI-0065.000, *Integrated Local Management Interface (ILMI) Version 4.0*

AF-PHY-0086.001, *Inverse Multiplexing for ATM (IMA) Specification Version 1.1*

AF-TM-0121.000, *Traffic Management Specification Version 4.1*

AF-TM-0150.00, *Addendum to Traffic Management v4.1 optional minimum desired cell rate indication for UBR*

GR-1113-CORE, *Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) and ATM Adaptation Layer (AAL) Protocols Generic Requirements, Issue 1*

GR-1248-CORE, *Generic Requirements for Operations of ATM Network Elements (NEs), Issue 3*

ITU-T I.432.1, *B-ISDN user-network interface - Physical layer specification: General characteristics (02/99)*

ITU-T I.610, *B-ISDN operation and maintenance principles and functions (11/95)*

RFC 1626, *Default IP MTU for use over ATM AAL5*

RFC 2684, *Multiprotocol Encapsulation over ATM Adaptation Layer 5*

BGP

RFC 1772, *Application of the Border Gateway Protocol in the Internet*

RFC 1997, *BGP Communities Attribute*

RFC 2385, *Protection of BGP Sessions via the TCP MD5 Signature Option*

RFC 2439, *BGP Route Flap Damping*

RFC 2545, *Use of BGP-4 Multiprotocol Extensions for IPv6 Inter-Domain Routing*

RFC 2858, *Multiprotocol Extensions for BGP-4*

RFC 2918, *Route Refresh Capability for BGP-4*

RFC 3107, *Carrying Label Information in BGP-4*

RFC 3392, *Capabilities Advertisement with BGP-4*

RFC 4271, *A Border Gateway Protocol 4 (BGP-4)*

RFC 4360, *BGP Extended Communities Attribute*

RFC 4364, *BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)*

RFC 4456, *BGP Route Reflection: An Alternative to Full Mesh Internal BGP (IBGP)*

RFC 4486, *Subcodes for BGP Cease Notification Message*

RFC 4659, *BGP-MPLS IP Virtual Private Network (VPN) Extension for IPv6 VPN*

RFC 4684, *Constrained Route Distribution for Border Gateway Protocol/MultiProtocol Label Switching (BGP/MPLS) Internet Protocol (IP) Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)*

RFC 4724, *Graceful Restart Mechanism for BGP* (Helper Mode)

RFC 4760, *Multiprotocol Extensions for BGP-4*

RFC 4798, *Connecting IPv6 Islands over IPv4 MPLS Using IPv6 Provider Edge Routers (6PE)*

RFC 4893, *BGP Support for Four-octet AS Number Space*

RFC 5004, *Avoid BGP Best Path Transitions from One External to Another*

RFC 5065, *Autonomous System Confederations for BGP*

RFC 5291, *Outbound Route Filtering Capability for BGP-4*

RFC 5575, *Dissemination of Flow Specification Rules*

RFC 5668, *4-Octet AS Specific BGP Extended Community*

draft-ietf-idr-add-paths-04, *Advertisement of Multiple Paths in BGP*

draft-ietf-idr-best-external-03, *Advertisement of the best external route in BGP*

Circuit Emulation

MEF-8, *Implementation Agreement for the Emulation of PDH Circuits over Metro Ethernet Networks, October 2004*

RFC 4553, *Structure-Agnostic Time Division Multiplexing (TDM) over Packet (SAToP)*

RFC 5086, *Structure-Aware Time Division Multiplexed (TDM) Circuit Emulation Service over Packet Switched Network (CESoPSN)*

RFC 5287, *Control Protocol Extensions for the Setup of Time-Division Multiplexing (TDM) Pseudowires in MPLS Networks*

Ethernet

IEEE 802.1AB, *Station and Media Access Control Connectivity Discovery*

IEEE 802.1ad, *Provider Bridges*

IEEE 802.1ag, *Connectivity Fault Management*

IEEE 802.1ah, *Provider Backbone Bridges*

IEEE 802.1ak, *Multiple Registration Protocol*

IEEE 802.1aq, *Shortest Path Bridging*

IEEE 802.1ax, *Link Aggregation*

IEEE 802.1D, *MAC Bridges*

IEEE 802.1p, *Traffic Class Expediting*

IEEE 802.1Q, *Virtual LANs*

IEEE 802.1s, *Multiple Spanning Trees*

IEEE 802.1w, *Rapid Reconfiguration of Spanning Tree*

IEEE 802.1X, *Port Based Network Access Control*

IEEE 802.3ab, *1000BASE-T*

IEEE 802.3ac, *VLAN Tag*

IEEE 802.3ad, *Link Aggregation*

IEEE 802.3ae, *10 Gb/s Ethernet*

IEEE 802.3ah, *Ethernet in the First Mile*

IEEE 802.3ba, *40 Gb/s and 100 Gb/s Ethernet*

IEEE 802.3i, *Ethernet*

IEEE 802.3u, *Fast Ethernet*

IEEE 802.3x, *Ethernet Flow Control*

IEEE 802.3z, *Gigabit Ethernet*

ITU-T G.8031, *Ethernet Linear Protection Switching*

ITU-T G.8032, *Ethernet Ring Protection Switching*

ITU-T Y.1731, *OAM functions and mechanisms for Ethernet based networks*

EVPN

RFC7432, *BGP MPLS-Based Ethernet VPN*

draft-ietf-bess-evpn-overlay-01, *A Network Virtualization Overlay Solution using EVPN*

draft-ietf-bess-evpn-prefix-advertisement-01, *IP Prefix Advertisement in EVPN*

draft-ietf-bess-evpn-vpls-seamless-integ-00, *(PBB-)EVPN Seamless Integration with (PBB-)VPLS*

draft-ietf-l2vpn-pbb-evpn-10, *Provider Backbone Bridging Combined with Ethernet VPN (PBB-EVPN)*

draft-snr-bess-evpn-proxy-arp-nd-00, *Proxy-ARP/ND function in EVPN networks*

Fast Reroute

RFC 5286, *Basic Specification for IP Fast Reroute: Loop-Free Alternates*

RFC 7490, *Remote Loop-Free Alternate (LFA) Fast Reroute (FRR)*

draft-ietf-rtgwg-lfa-manageability-08, *Operational management of Loop Free Alternates*

draft-katran-mofrr-02, *Multicast only Fast Re-Route*

Frame Relay

ANSI T1.617 Annex D, *DSS1 - Signalling Specification For Frame Relay Bearer Service*

FRF.1.2, *PVC User-to-Network Interface (UNI) Implementation Agreement*

FRF.12, *Frame Relay Fragmentation Implementation Agreement*

FRF.16.1, *Multilink Frame Relay UNI/NNI Implementation Agreement*

FRF.5, *Frame Relay/ATM PVC Network Interworking Implementation*

FRF2.2, *PVC Network-to-Network Interface (NNI) Implementation Agreement*

ITU-T Q.933 Annex A, *Additional procedures for Permanent Virtual Connection (PVC) status management*

IP — General

RFC 768, *User Datagram Protocol*

RFC 793, *Transmission Control Protocol*

RFC 854, *TELNET Protocol Specifications*

RFC 951, *Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP)*

RFC 1034, *Domain Names - Concepts and Facilities*

RFC 1035, *Domain Names - Implementation and Specification*

RFC 1350, *The TFTP Protocol (revision 2)*

RFC 1534, *Interoperation between DHCP and BOOTP*

RFC 1542, *Clarifications and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol*

RFC 2131, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*

RFC 2347, *TFTP Option Extension*

RFC 2348, *TFTP Blocksize Option*

RFC 2349, *TFTP Timeout Interval and Transfer Size Options*

RFC 2428, *FTP Extensions for IPv6 and NATs*

RFC 2865, *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)*

RFC 2866, *RADIUS Accounting*

RFC 2867, *RADIUS Accounting Modifications for Tunnel Protocol Support*

RFC 2868, *RADIUS Attributes for Tunnel Protocol Support*

RFC 3046, *DHCP Relay Agent Information Option (Option 82)*

RFC 3315, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)*

RFC 3596, *DNS Extensions to Support IP version 6*

RFC 3768, *Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP)*

RFC 4250, *The Secure Shell (SSH) Protocol Assigned Numbers*

RFC 4251, *The Secure Shell (SSH) Protocol Architecture*

RFC 4254, *The Secure Shell (SSH) Connection Protocol*

RFC 5880, *Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)*

RFC 5881, *Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) IPv4 and IPv6 (Single Hop)*

RFC 5883, *Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) for Multihop Paths*

RFC 7130, *Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) on Link Aggregation Group (LAG) Interfaces*

draft-grant-tacacs-02, *The TACACS+ Protocol*

draft-ietf-vrrp-unified-spec-02, *Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol Version 3 for IPv4 and IPv6*

IP — Multicast

RFC 1112, *Host Extensions for IP Multicasting*

RFC 2236, *Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 2*

RFC 2375, *IPv6 Multicast Address Assignments*

RFC 2710, *Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) for IPv6*

RFC 3306, *Unicast-Prefix-based IPv6 Multicast Addresses*

RFC 3376, *Internet Group Management Protocol, Version 3*

RFC 3446, *Anycast Rendevous Point (RP) mechanism using Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) and Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP)*

RFC 3590, *Source Address Selection for the Multicast Listener Discovery (MLD) Protocol*

RFC 3618, *Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP)*

RFC 3810, *Multicast Listener Discovery Version 2 (MLDv2) for IPv6*

RFC 3956, *Embedding the Rendezvous Point (RP) Address in an IPv6 Multicast Address*

RFC 4601, *Protocol Independent Multicast - Sparse Mode (PIM-SM): Protocol Specification (Revised)*

RFC 4604, *Using Internet Group Management Protocol Version 3 (IGMPv3) and Multicast Listener Discovery Protocol Version 2 (MLDv2) for Source-Specific Multicast*

RFC 4607, *Source-Specific Multicast for IP*

RFC 4608, *Source-Specific Protocol Independent Multicast in 232/8*

RFC 4610, *Anycast-RP Using Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM)*

RFC 5059, *Bootstrap Router (BSR) Mechanism for Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM)*

RFC 5384, *The Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) Join Attribute Format*

RFC 5496, *The Reverse Path Forwarding (RPF) Vector TLV*

RFC 6037, *Cisco Systems' Solution for Multicast in MPLS/BGP IP VPNs*

RFC 6513, *Multicast in MPLS/BGP IP VPNs*

RFC 6514, *BGP Encodings and Procedures for Multicast in MPLS/IP VPNs*

RFC 6515, *IPv4 and IPv6 Infrastructure Addresses in BGP Updates for Multicast VPNs*

RFC 6516, *IPv6 Multicast VPN (MVPN) Support Using PIM Control Plane and Selective Provider Multicast Service Interface (S-PMSI) Join Messages*

RFC 6625, *Wildcards in Multicast VPN Auto-Discover Routes*

RFC 6826, *Multipoint LDP In-Band Signaling for Point-to-Multipoint and Multipoint-to-Multipoint Label Switched Path*

RFC 7246, *Multipoint Label Distribution Protocol In-Band Signaling in a Virtual Routing and Forwarding (VRF) Table Context*

RFC 7385, *IANA Registry for P-Multicast Service Interface (PMSI) Tunnel Type Code Points*

draft-dolganow-l3vpn-mvpn-expl-track-00, *Explicit tracking in MPLS/BGP IP VPNs*

IP — Version 4

RFC 791, *Internet Protocol*

RFC 792, *Internet Control Message Protocol*

RFC 826, *An Ethernet Address Resolution Protocol*

RFC 1519, *Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR): an Address Assignment and Aggregation Strategy*

RFC 1812, *Requirements for IPv4 Routers*

RFC 2401, *Security Architecture for Internet Protocol*

RFC 3021, *Using 31-Bit Prefixes on IPv4 Point-to-Point Links*

IP — Version 6

RFC 1981, *Path MTU Discovery for IP version 6*

RFC 2460, *Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) Specification*

RFC 2464, *Transmission of IPv6 Packets over Ethernet Networks*

RFC 2529, *Transmission of IPv6 over IPv4 Domains without Explicit Tunnels*

RFC 3587, *IPv6 Global Unicast Address Format*

RFC 3633, *IPv6 Prefix Options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) version 6*

RFC 3646, *DNS Configuration options for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)*

RFC 3736, *Stateless Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Service for IPv6*

RFC 3971, *SEcure Neighbor Discovery (SEND)*

RFC 3972, *Cryptographically Generated Addresses (CGA)*

RFC 4007, *IPv6 Scoped Address Architecture*

RFC 4193, *Unique Local IPv6 Unicast Addresses*

RFC 4291, *Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Addressing Architecture*

RFC 4443, *Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMPv6) for the Internet Protocol Version 6 (IPv6) Specification*

RFC 4861, *Neighbor Discovery for IP version 6 (IPv6)*

RFC 4862, *IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration* (Router Only)

RFC 4941, *Privacy Extensions for Stateless Address Autoconfiguration in IPv6*

RFC 5007, *DHCPv6 Leasequery*

RFC 5095, *Deprecation of Type 0 Routing Headers in IPv6*

RFC 5952, *A Recommendation for IPv6 Address Text Representation*

RFC 6106, *IPv6 Router Advertisement Options for DNS Configuration*

RFC 6164, *Using 127-Bit IPv6 Prefixes on Inter-Router Links*

IPsec

RFC 2401, *Security Architecture for the Internet Protocol*

RFC 2406, *IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)*

RFC 2409, *The Internet Key Exchange (IKE)*

RFC 2560, *X.509 Internet Public Key Infrastructure Online Certificate Status Protocol - OCSP*

RFC 3706, *A Traffic-Based Method of Detecting Dead Internet Key Exchange (IKE) Peers*

RFC 3947, *Negotiation of NAT-Traversal in the IKE*

RFC 3948, *UDP Encapsulation of IPsec ESP Packets*

RFC 4210, *Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate Management Protocol (CMP)*

RFC 4211, *Internet X.509 Public Key Infrastructure Certificate Request Message Format (CRMF)*

RFC 5996, *Internet Key Exchange Protocol Version 2 (IKEv2)*

RFC 5998, *An Extension for EAP-Only Authentication in IKEv2*

draft-ietf-ipsec-isakmp-mode-cfg-05, *The ISAKMP Configuration Method*

draft-ietf-ipsec-isakmp-xauth-06, *Extended Authentication within ISAKMP/Oakley (XAUTH)*

IS-IS

ISO/IEC 10589:2002, Second Edition, Nov. 2002, *Intermediate system to Intermediate system intra-domain routeing information exchange protocol for use in conjunction with the protocol for providing the connectionless-mode Network Service (ISO 8473)*

RFC 1195, *Use of OSI IS-IS for Routing in TCP/IP and Dual Environments*

RFC 2973, *IS-IS Mesh Groups*

RFC 3359, *Reserved Type, Length and Value (TLV) Codepoints in Intermediate System to Intermediate System*

RFC 3719, *Recommendations for Interoperable Networks using Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS)*

RFC 3787, *Recommendations for Interoperable IP Networks using Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS)*

RFC 4971, *Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS) Extensions for Advertising Router Information*

RFC 5120, *M-ISIS: Multi Topology (MT) Routing in IS-IS*

RFC 5130, *A Policy Control Mechanism in IS-IS Using Administrative Tags*

RFC 5301, *Dynamic Hostname Exchange Mechanism for IS-IS*

RFC 5302, *Domain-wide Prefix Distribution with Two-Level IS-IS*

RFC 5303, *Three-Way Handshake for IS-IS Point-to-Point Adjacencies*

RFC 5304, *IS-IS Cryptographic Authentication*

RFC 5305, *IS-IS Extensions for Traffic Engineering TE*

RFC 5306, *Restart Signaling for IS-IS* (Helper Mode)

RFC 5307, *IS-IS Extensions in Support of Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS)*

RFC 5308, *Routing IPv6 with IS-IS*

RFC 5309, *Point-to-Point Operation over LAN in Link State Routing Protocols*

RFC 5310, *IS-IS Generic Cryptographic Authentication*

RFC 6213, *IS-IS BFD-Enabled TLV*

RFC 6232, *Purge Originator Identification TLV for IS-IS*

RFC 6233, *IS-IS Registry Extension for Purges*

RFC 6329, *IS-IS Extensions Supporting IEEE 802.1aq Shortest Path Bridging*

draft-ietf-isis-mi-02, *IS-IS Multi-Instance*

draft-ietf-isis-segment-routing-extensions-04, *IS-IS Extensions for Segment Routing*

draft-kaplan-isis-ext-eth-02, *Extended Ethernet Frame Size Support*

Management

ianaaddressfamilynumbers-mib, *IANA-ADDRESS-FAMILY-NUMBERS-MIB*

ianagmplstc-mib, *IANA-GMPLS-TC-MIB*

ianaiftype-mib, *IANAifType-MIB*

ianaiprouteprotocol-mib, *IANA-RTPROTO-MIB*

IEEE8021-CFM-MIB, *IEEE P802.1ag(TM) CFM MIB*

IEEE8021-PAE-MIB, *IEEE 802.1X MIB*

IEEE8023-LAG-MIB, *IEEE 802.3ad MIB*

LLDP-MIB, *IEEE P802.1AB(TM) LLDP MIB*

SFLOW-MIB, *sFlow MIB Version 1.3 (Draft 5)*

RFC 1157, *A Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

RFC 1215, *A Convention for Defining Traps for use with the SNMP*

RFC 1724, *RIP Version 2 MIB Extension*

RFC 2021, *Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base Version 2 using SMIv2*

RFC 2115, *Management Information Base for Frame Relay DTEs Using SMIv2*

RFC 2138, *Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS)*

RFC 2206, *RSVP Management Information Base using SMIv2*

RFC 2213, *Integrated Services Management Information Base using SMIv2*

RFC 2494, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS0 and DS0 Bundle Interface Type*

RFC 2514, *Definitions of Textual Conventions and OBJECT-IDENTITIES for ATM Management*

RFC 2515, *Definitions of Managed Objects for ATM Management*

RFC 2571, *An Architecture for Describing SNMP Management Frameworks*

RFC 2572, *Message Processing and Dispatching for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

RFC 2573, *SNMP Applications*

RFC 2574, *User-based Security Model (USM) for version 3 of the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMPv3)*

RFC 2575, *View-based Access Control Model (VACM) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

RFC 2578, *Structure of Management Information Version 2 (SMIv2)*

RFC 2579, *Textual Conventions for SMIv2*

RFC 2787, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol*

RFC 2819, *Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base*

RFC 2856, *Textual Conventions for Additional High Capacity Data Types*

RFC 2863, *The Interfaces Group MIB*

RFC 2864, *The Inverted Stack Table Extension to the Interfaces Group MIB*

RFC 2933, *Internet Group Management Protocol MIB*

RFC 3014, *Notification Log MIB*

RFC 3164, *The BSD syslog Protocol*

RFC 3165, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Delegation of Management Scripts*

RFC 3231, *Definitions of Managed Objects for Scheduling Management Operations*

RFC 3273, *Remote Network Monitoring Management Information Base for High Capacity Networks*

RFC 3419, *Textual Conventions for Transport Addresses*

RFC 3498, *Definitions of Managed Objects for Synchronous Optical Network (SONET) Linear Automatic Protection Switching (APS) Architectures*

RFC 3584, *Coexistence between Version 1, Version 2, and Version 3 of the Internet-standard Network Management Framework*

RFC 3592, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Synchronous Optical Network/Synchronous Digital Hierarchy (SONET/SDH) Interface Type*

RFC 3593, *Textual Conventions for MIB Modules Using Performance History Based on 15 Minute Intervals*

RFC 3635, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Ethernet-like Interface Types*

RFC 3637, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Ethernet WAN Interface Sublayer*

RFC 3826, *The Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) Cipher Algorithm in the SNMP User-based Security Model*

RFC 3877, *Alarm Management Information Base (MIB)*

RFC 3895, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS1, E1, DS2, and E2 Interface Types*

RFC 3896, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the DS3/E3 Interface Type*

RFC 4001, *Textual Conventions for Internet Network Addresses*

RFC 4022, *Management Information Base for the Transmission Control Protocol (TCP)*

RFC 4113, *Management Information Base for the User Datagram Protocol (UDP)*

RFC 4220, *Traffic Engineering Link Management Information Base*

RFC 4292, *IP Forwarding Table MIB*

RFC 4293, *Management Information Base for the Internet Protocol (IP)*

RFC 4631, *Link Management Protocol (LMP) Management Information Base (MIB)*

RFC 4878, *Definitions and Managed Objects for Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) Functions on Ethernet-Like Interfaces*

RFC 5101, *Specification of the IP Flow Information Export (IPFIX) Protocol for the Exchange of IP Traffic Flow Information*

RFC 6241, *Network Configuration Protocol (NETCONF)*

RFC 6242, *Using the NETCONF Protocol over Secure Shell (SSH)*

draft-ieft-snmpv3-update-mib-05, *Management Information Base (MIB) for the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)*

draft-ietf-idr-bgp4-mib-05, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Fourth Version of Border Gateway Protocol (BGP-4)*

draft-ietf-isis-wg-mib-06, *Management Information Base for Intermediate System to Intermediate System (IS-IS)*

draft-ietf-mboned-msdp-mib-01, *Multicast Source Discovery protocol MIB*

draft-ietf-mpls-ldp-mib-07, *Definitions of Managed Objects for the Multiprotocol Label Switching, Label Distribution Protocol (LDP)*

draft-ietf-mpls-lsr-mib-06, *Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) Label Switching Router (LSR) Management Information Base Using SMIv2*

draft-ietf-mpls-te-mib-04, *Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) Traffic Engineering Management Information Base*

draft-ietf-ospf-mib-update-08, *OSPF Version 2 Management Information Base*

MPLS — General

RFC 3031, *Multiprotocol Label Switching Architecture*

RFC 3032, *MPLS Label Stack Encoding*

RFC 3443, *Time To Live (TTL) Processing in Multi-Protocol Label Switching (MPLS) Networks*

RFC 4023, *Encapsulating MPLS in IP or Generic Routing Encapsulation (GRE)*

RFC 4182, *Removing a Restriction on the use of MPLS Explicit NULL*

RFC 5332, *MPLS Multicast Encapsulations*

MPLS — GMPLS

RFC 3471, *Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS) Signaling Functional Description*

RFC 3473, *Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS) Signaling Resource ReserVation Protocol-Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) Extensions*

RFC 4204, *Link Management Protocol (LMP)*

RFC 4208, *Generalized Multiprotocol Label Switching (GMPLS) User-Network Interface (UNI): Resource ReserVation Protocol-Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) Support for the Overlay Model*

RFC 4872, *RSVP-TE Extensions in Support of End-to-End Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS) Recovery*

draft-ietf-ccamp-rsvp-te-srlg-collect-04, *RSVP-TE Extensions for Collecting SRLG Information*

MPLS — LDP

RFC 3037, *LDP Applicability*

RFC 3478, *Graceful Restart Mechanism for Label Distribution Protocol* (Helper Mode)

RFC 5036, *LDP Specification*

RFC 5283, *LDP Extension for Inter-Area Label Switched Paths (LSPs)*

RFC 5443, *LDP IGP Synchronization*

RFC 5561, *LDP Capabilities*

RFC 6388, *Label Distribution Protocol Extensions for Point-to-Multipoint and Multipoint-to-Multipoint Label Switched Paths*

RFC 6826, *Multipoint LDP in-band signaling for Point-to-Multipoint and Multipoint-to-Multipoint Label Switched Paths*

draft-ietf-mpls-ldp-ip-pw-capability-09, *Controlling State Advertisements Of Non-negotiated LDP Applications*

draft-ietf-mpls-ldp-ipv6-15, *Updates to LDP for IPv6*

draft-pdutta-mpls-ldp-adj-capability-00, *LDP Adjacency Capabilities*

draft-pdutta-mpls-ldp-v2-00, *LDP Version 2*

draft-pdutta-mpls-multi-ldp-instance-00, *Multiple LDP Instances*

draft-pdutta-mpls-tldp-hello-reduce-04, *Targeted LDP Hello Reduction*

MPLS — MPLS-TP

RFC 5586, *MPLS Generic Associated Channel*

RFC 5921, *A Framework for MPLS in Transport Networks*

RFC 5960, *MPLS Transport Profile Data Plane Architecture*

RFC 6370, *MPLS Transport Profile (MPLS-TP) Identifiers*

RFC 6378, *MPLS Transport Profile (MPLS-TP) Linear Protection*

RFC 6426, *MPLS On-Demand Connectivity and Route Tracing*

RFC 6428, *Proactive Connectivity Verification, Continuity Check and Remote Defect indication for MPLS Transport Profile*

RFC 6478, *Pseudowire Status for Static Pseudowires*

RFC 7213, *MPLS Transport Profile (MPLS-TP) Next-Hop Ethernet Addressing*

MPLS — OAM

RFC 4379, *Detecting Multi-Protocol Label Switched (MPLS) Data Plane Failures*

RFC 6424, *Mechanism for Performing Label Switched Path Ping (LSP Ping) over MPLS Tunnels*

RFC 6425, *Detecting Data Plane Failures in Point-to-Multipoint Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) - Extensions to LSP Ping*

MPLS — RSVP-TE

RFC 2702, *Requirements for Traffic Engineering over MPLS*

RFC 2747, *RSVP Cryptographic Authentication*

RFC 2961, *RSVP Refresh Overhead Reduction Extensions*

RFC 3097, *RSVP Cryptographic Authentication -- Updated Message Type Value*

RFC 3209, *RSVP-TE: Extensions to RSVP for LSP Tunnels*

RFC 3473, *Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS) Signaling Resource ReserVation Protocol-Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) Extensions* (IF_ID RSVP_HOP Object With Unnumbered Interfaces and RSVP-TE Graceful Restart Helper Procedures)

RFC 3477, *Signalling Unnumbered Links in Resource ReSerVation Protocol - Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE)*

RFC 3564, *Requirements for Support of Differentiated Services-aware MPLS Traffic Engineering*

RFC 3906, *Calculating Interior Gateway Protocol (IGP) Routes Over Traffic Engineering Tunnels*

RFC 4090, *Fast Reroute Extensions to RSVP-TE for LSP Tunnels*

RFC 4124, *Protocol Extensions for Support of Diffserv-aware MPLS Traffic Engineering*

RFC 4125, *Maximum Allocation Bandwidth Constraints Model for Diffserv-aware MPLS Traffic Engineering*

RFC 4127, *Russian Dolls Bandwidth Constraints Model for Diffserv-aware MPLS Traffic Engineering*

RFC 4561, *Definition of a Record Route Object (RRO) Node-Id Sub-Object*

RFC 4875, *Extensions to Resource Reservation Protocol - Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) for Point-to-Multipoint TE Label Switched Paths (LSPs)*

RFC 4950, *ICMP Extensions for Multiprotocol Label Switching*

RFC 5151, *Inter-Domain MPLS and GMPLS Traffic Engineering -- Resource Reservation Protocol-Traffic Engineering (RSVP-TE) Extensions*

RFC 5712, *MPLS Traffic Engineering Soft Preemption*

RFC 5817, *Graceful Shutdown in MPLS and Generalized MPLS Traffic Engineering Networks*

draft-newton-mpls-te-dynamic-overbooking-00, *A Diffserv-TE Implementation Model to dynamically change booking factors during failure events*

NAT

RFC 5382, *NAT Behavioral Requirements for TCP*

RFC 5508, *NAT Behavioral Requirements for ICMP*

RFC 6146, *Stateful NAT64: Network Address and Protocol Translation from IPv6 Clients to IPv4 Servers*

RFC 6333, *Dual-Stack Lite Broadband Deployments Following IPv4 Exhaustion*

RFC 6334, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6) Option for Dual-Stack Lite*

RFC 6888, *Common Requirements For Carrier-Grade NATs (CGNs)*

OpenFlow

ONF *OpenFlow Switch Specification Version 1.3.1* (OpenFlow-hybrid switches)

OSPF

RFC 1586, *Guidelines for Running OSPF Over Frame Relay Networks*

RFC 1765, *OSPF Database Overflow*

RFC 2328, *OSPF Version 2*

RFC 3101, *The OSPF Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) Option*

RFC 3509, *Alternative Implementations of OSPF Area Border Routers*

RFC 3623, *Graceful OSPF Restart Graceful OSPF Restart* (Helper Mode)

RFC 3630, *Traffic Engineering (TE) Extensions to OSPF Version 2*

RFC 4203, *OSPF Extensions in Support of Generalized Multi-Protocol Label Switching (GMPLS)*

RFC 4222, *Prioritized Treatment of Specific OSPF Version 2 Packets and Congestion Avoidance*

RFC 4552, *Authentication/Confidentiality for OSPFv3*

RFC 4576, *Using a Link State Advertisement (LSA) Options Bit to Prevent Looping in BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)*

RFC 4577, *OSPF as the Provider/Customer Edge Protocol for BGP/MPLS IP Virtual Private Networks (VPNs)*

RFC 4970, *Extensions to OSPF for Advertising Optional Router Capabilities*

RFC 5185, *OSPF Multi-Area Adjacency*

RFC 5187, *OSPFv3 Graceful Restart* (Helper Mode)

RFC 5243, *OSPF Database Exchange Summary List Optimization*

RFC 5250, *The OSPF Opaque LSA Option*

RFC 5309, *Point-to-Point Operation over LAN in Link State Routing Protocols*

RFC 5340, *OSPF for IPv6*

RFC 5709, *OSPFv2 HMAC-SHA Cryptographic Authentication*

RFC 5838, *Support of Address Families in OSPFv3*

RFC 6987, *OSPF Stub Router Advertisement*

draft-ietf-ospf-prefix-link-attr-06, *OSPFv2 Prefix/Link Attribute Advertisement*

draft-ietf-ospf-segment-routing-extensions-04, *OSPF Extensions for Segment Routing*

Policy Management and Credit Control

3GPP TS 29.212, *Policy and Charging Control (PCC) over Gx/Sd Reference Point (Release 11 and Release 12) Gx support as it applies to wireline environment (BNG)*

RFC 3588, *Diameter Base Protocol*

RFC 4006, *Diameter Credit-Control Application*

PPP

RFC 1332, *The PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP)*

RFC 1377, *The PPP OSI Network Layer Control Protocol (OSINLCP)*

RFC 1661, *The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)*

RFC 1662, *PPP in HDLC-like Framing*

RFC 1877, *PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol Extensions for Name Server Addresses*

RFC 1989, *PPP Link Quality Monitoring*

RFC 1990, *The PPP Multilink Protocol (MP)*

RFC 1994, *PPP Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP)*

RFC 2153, *PPP Vendor Extensions*

RFC 2516, *A Method for Transmitting PPP Over Ethernet (PPPoE)*

RFC 2615, *PPP over SONET/SDH*

RFC 2661, *Layer Two Tunneling Protocol "L2TP"*

RFC 2686, *The Multi-Class Extension to Multi-Link PPP*

RFC 2878, *PPP Bridging Control Protocol (BCP)*

RFC 4951, *Fail Over Extensions for Layer 2 Tunneling Protocol (L2TP) "failover"*

RFC 5072, *IP Version 6 over PPP*

Pseudowire

MFA Forum 9.0.0, *The Use of Virtual trunks for ATM/ MPLS Control Plane Interworking*

MFA Forum 12.0.0, *Multiservice Interworking - Ethernet over MPLS*

MFA Forum 13.0.0, *Fault Management for Multiservice Interworking v1.0*

MFA Forum 16.0.0, *Multiservice Interworking - IP over MPLS*

RFC 3916, *Requirements for Pseudo- Wire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3)*

RFC 3985, *Pseudo Wire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3)*

RFC 4385, *Pseudo Wire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3) Control Word for Use over an MPLS PSN*

RFC 4446, *IANA Allocations for Pseudowire Edge to Edge Emulation (PWE3)*

RFC 4447, *Pseudowire Setup and Maintenance Using the Label Distribution Protocol (LDP)*

RFC 4448, *Encapsulation Methods for Transport of Ethernet over MPLS Networks*

RFC 4619, *Encapsulation Methods for Transport of Frame Relay over Multiprotocol Label Switching (MPLS) Networks*

RFC 4717, *Encapsulation Methods for Transport Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) over MPLS Networks*

RFC 4816, *Pseudowire Emulation Edge-to-Edge (PWE3) Asynchronous Transfer Mode (ATM) Transparent Cell Transport Service*

RFC 5085, *Pseudowire Virtual Circuit Connectivity Verification (VCCV): A Control Channel for Pseudowires*

RFC 5659, *An Architecture for Multi-Segment Pseudowire Emulation Edge-to-Edge*

RFC 5885, *Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) for the Pseudowire Virtual Circuit Connectivity Verification (VCCV)*

RFC 6073, *Segmented Pseudowire*

RFC 6310, *Pseudowire (PW) Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) Message Mapping*

RFC 6391, *Flow-Aware Transport of Pseudowires over an MPLS Packet Switched Network*

RFC 6575, *Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) Mediation for IP Interworking of Layer 2 VPNs*

RFC 6718, *Pseudowire Redundancy*

RFC 6829, *Label Switched Path (LSP) Ping for Pseudowire Forwarding Equivalence Classes (FECs) Advertised over IPv6*

RFC 6870, *Pseudowire Preferential Forwarding Status bit*

RFC 7023, *MPLS and Ethernet Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) Interworking*

RFC 7267, *Dynamic Placement of Multi-Segment Pseudowires*

draft-ietf-l2vpn-vpws-iw-oam-04, *OAM Procedures for VPWS Interworking*

Quality of Service

RFC 2430, *A Provider Architecture for Differentiated Services and Traffic Engineering (PASTE)*

RFC 2474, *Definition of the Differentiated Services Field (DS Field) in the IPv4 and IPv6 Headers*

RFC 3260, *New Terminology and Clarifications for Diffserv*

RFC 2598, *An Expedited Forwarding PHB*

RFC 3140, *Per Hop Behavior Identification Codes*

RIP

RFC 1058, *Routing Information Protocol*

RFC 2080, *RIPng for IPv6*

RFC 2082, *RIP-2 MD5 Authentication*

RFC 2453, *RIP Version 2*

SONET/SDH

ITU-G.841, *Types and Characteristics of SDH Networks Protection Architecture, issued in October 1998 and as augmented by Corrigendum 1, issued in July 2002*

Timing

GR-1244-CORE, *Clocks for the Synchronized Network: Common Generic Criteria, Issue 3, May 2005*

GR-253-CORE, *SONET Transport Systems: Common Generic Criteria. Issue 3, September 2000*

ITU-T G.781, *Synchronization layer functions, issued 09/2008*

ITU-T G.813, *Timing characteristics of SDH equipment slave clocks (SEC), issued 03/2003*

ITU-T G.8261, *Timing and synchronization aspects in packet networks, issued 04/2008*

ITU-T G.8262, *Timing characteristics of synchronous Ethernet equipment slave clock (EEC), issued 08/2007*

ITU-T G.8264, *Distribution of timing information through packet networks, issued 10/2008*

ITU-T G.8265.1, *Precision time protocol telecom profile for frequency synchronization, issued 10/2010*

ITU-T G.8275.1, *Precision time protocol telecom profile for phase/time synchronization with full timing support from the network, issued 07/2014*

RFC 5905, *Network Time Protocol Version 4: Protocol and Algorithms Specification*

Voice and Video Performance

ETSI TS 101 329-5 Annex E, *QoS Measurement for VoIP - Method for determining an Equipment Impairment Factor using Passive Monitoring*

ITU-T G.1020 Appendix I, *Performance Parameter Definitions for Quality of Speech and other Voiceband Applications Utilizing IP Networks - Mean Absolute Packet Delay Variation & Markov Models*

ITU-T G.107, *The E Model - A computational model for use in planning*

ITU-T P.564, *Conformance testing for voice over IP transmission quality assessment models*

RFC 3550 Appendix A.8, *RTP: A Transport Protocol for Real-Time Applications* (Estimating the Interarrival Jitter)

VPLS

RFC 4761, *Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS) Using BGP for Auto-Discovery and Signaling*

RFC 4762, *Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS) Using Label Distribution Protocol (LDP) Signaling*

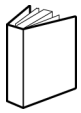
RFC 5501, *Requirements for Multicast Support in Virtual Private LAN Services*

RFC 6074, *Provisioning, Auto-Discovery, and Signaling in Layer 2 Virtual Private Networks (L2VPNs)*

RFC 7041, *Extensions to the Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS) Provider Edge (PE) Model for Provider Backbone Bridging*

RFC 7117, *Multicast in Virtual Private LAN Service (VPLS)*

Customer Documentation and Product Support



Customer Documentation

http://documentation.alcatel-lucent.com

Technical Support

http://support.alcatel-lucent.com

Documentation Feedback

documentation.feedback@alcatel-lucent.com

© 2015 Alcatel-Lucent. All rights reserved.
3HE 09873 AAAB TQZZA 01